Cavalry Drill Regulations, United States Army, 1916

United States. War Dept, United States. War Dept. General Staff

Cavalry Drill Regulations, United States Army, 1916

United States. War Dept, United States. War Dept. General Staff

PAGES 17-50 MISSING FROM THE ORIGINAL FROM WHICH THIS WAS SCANNED.

Nabu Public Domain Reprints:

You are holding a reproduction of an original work published before 1923 that is in the public domain in the United States of America, and possibly other countries. You may freely copy and distribute this work as no entity (individual or corporate) has a copyright on the body of the work. This book may contain prior copyright references, and library stamps (as most of these works were scanned from library copies). These have been scanned and retained as part of the historical artifact.

This book may have occasional imperfections such as missing or blurred pages, poor pictures, errant marks, etc. that were either part of the original artifact, or were introduced by the scanning process. We believe this work is culturally important, and despite the imperfections, have elected to bring it back into print as part of our continuing commitment to the preservation of printed works worldwide. We appreciate your understanding of the imperfections in the preservation process, and hope you enjoy this valuable book.

WAR DEPARTMENT : OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF

CAVALRY DRILL REGULATIONS

UNITED STATES ARMY

1916

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1917

War 1309.16

Harvard College Library
Mar. 10, 1917
From the
United States Government.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
Document No. 561,
Office of the Chief of Staff.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
Washington, October 26, 1916.

The following system of Cavalry Drill Regulations is published for the information and government of the Army and the National Guard of the United States. With a view to insure uniformity throughout the Army, all Cavalry drill formations and evolutions not embraced in this system are prohibited and those herein prescribed will be strictly observed.

By order of the Secretary of War:

H. L. SCOTT,
Major General, Chief of Staff.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Definitions ---------- Pages 13–16
Introduction ---------- Pars. 1–33

PART I. INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION.

	Paragraphs.
General provisions	34–50
School of the trooper, dismounted	51–171
Object, cautions, physical training	54–55
Individual instruction without arms	56–89
Position of trooper at attention, rests, facings, etc	56–67
Steps and marchings	68–89
Individual instruction with arms	90–171
Manual of the rifle	90–120
Loadings and firings	121–140
Target designation	141
The use of cover	142–143
Observation	144
Manual of the pistol	145–156
Employment of the pistol	157–161
Manual of the saber	162–171
School of the trooper, mounted	172–320
Object, cautions, standard required	172–176
Schedule of instruction	176
First period: Preparatory instruction	177–223
Folding and putting on saddle blanket, etc	178–180
Saddling and unsaddling	181–183
Bridling and unbridling, etc	184–190
Mounting and dismounting	191–193
The reins, the aids, suppling, etc	194–223

	Paragraphs.
School of the trooper, mounted—Continued.	
Second period: Work on the snaffle	224–268
Schedule of instruction	224
The walk, the halt, by the flank, and oblique	225–230
General provisions and marching on fixed points	231–232
Circling, trot, gallop, changes of gait and hand	233–240
Suppling, posting, care of horses and saddlery	241–243
Use of arms, mounted	244–255
Inspection of arms and equipment	256–268
Third period: Work on the double snaffle	269–300
Schedule of instruction	269
The about and other individual movements	270–289
Work on varied ground, applications	290–300
Fourth period: Work on the bit and bridoon	301–320
Schedule of instruction	301
Adjustment of and work with double bridle	302–318
Proof of training	319
The trained trooper	320
PART II. ELEMENTARY COLLECTIVE INSTRUCTION.	
General provisions and basic principles	321–339
School of the squad	340–445
Purpose	340–349
Forming, aligning, and leading the squad	350–367
Formations, close and extended order, guide	368–377
Commands and arm signals	378–381
Detailed description of movements	382–416
The mounted attack	417–420
Passing from mounted to dismounted action	421–437
Remounting, passing obstacles, instruction	438–445
PART III. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THE DRILL.	
General provisions	446–447
Leading	448–456
Conducting the march	454–455
Temporary leader	456

	Paragraphs.
Center	457–460
Commands	461–466
Movements in general	467–470
Changes of direction	471
Movements in column of twos and troopers	472
Extended order movements	473–474
Simultaneous movements by platoons, troops, and squadrons	475
Exceptional movements and changes of formation	476–479
Successive formations	480–481
Movements on foot, order	482–485
Miscellaneous	486–488

PART IV. THE TROOP AND ITS SUBDIVISIONS.

General provisions	489–507
Adjustments in platoons and sections	497
Designation of platoons and sections	498
Formation and verification	499–505
Reporting absentees and inspecting	506–507
School of the platoon	508–581
Special provisions	508–511
Platoon formations	512–514
Order	515–516
To form the platoon (mounted)	517–527
Positions of platoon leaders and file closers	528
To mount and dismount	529
To dismiss the platoon	530
Alignment	531
Leading the platoon, guide of the platoon	532–535
Movements executed by the platoon	536–539
Commands and corresponding signals	540
Detailed description of movements, close order	541–548
Double rank	549–555
Extended order	556–560
The rally	561
The charge	562–565
The pistol attack	566–568
Ground scouts and combat patrols	569–571

	Paragraphs.
School of the platoon—Continued.	
Movements for passing from mounted to dismounted action	572–576
Obstacles	577
Combat	578–581
The troop	582–670
Special provisions	582–583
Troop formations	584
Order	585–586
Echeloning of platoons	587
To form the troop (mounted)	588–597
To form the troop (dismounted)	598
Positions of officers, noncommissioned officers, and others out of ranks	599–604
Movements by fours, twos, and troopers	605–607
To mount and dismount	608
Rests, at ease, and route order	609
To dismiss the troop and alignments	610–611
Leading the troop	612
Changes of direction	613
The oblique	614
Obstacles	615
Commands and corresponding arm signals	616
Movements executed by the troop (close order)	617–629
Line or single rank	617–618
Double rank	619–620
Line of double columns	621
Line of platoon columns	622
Column of platoons	623–624
Double column	625–626
Column of fours	627–628
Column of twos or troopers	629
Movements executed by the troop (extended order)	630–634
Line of platoons	632
Foragers	633–634
The assembly	635–637
The rally	638
The mounted attack	639–646
The troop acting alone	639–645
The troop in the squadron	646

The troop—Continued.	Paragraphs.
Passing from mounted to dismounted action	647–649
Dismounted combat	650–670
General considerations	650–653
The fire attack	654–656
Fire	657–661
Fire direction	662
Fire control	663
Fire discipline	664–668
Ranges	669
Reconnaissance before combat	670

PART V. THE SQUADRON AND HIGHER UNITS.

The squadron	671–735
Special provisions	671–673
To form and dismiss the squadron	674–675
Posts of officers, etc	676–678
Squadron formations	679
Commands and signals	680
Evolutions of the squadron (close order)	681–705
Line	682–683
Line of troop columns	684–685
Line of platoon columns	686
Mass	687–688
Platoon mass	689–690
To change direction	691
Double rank	692–694
Column of fours	695–696
Column of platoons	697–698
Double column	699–700
Echelon	701–705
Route marches, assembly, rally	706–708
Extended order	709
Mounted attack	710–715
Dismounted fire action	716–735
General considerations	716–721
Deployment	722
Designation of objective	723
Distribution of fire	724

	Paragraphs.
The squadron—Continued.	
Dismounted fire action—Continued.	
Fire direction and control	725
Firing line, supports, reserves	726
Flanks of line	727
Led horses	728
Orders	729
Reconnaissance	730
Scouts and patrols	731
The fire attack	732–733
The defense	734–735
The regiment	736–762
Special provisions	736
To form and dismiss the regiment	737–738
Posts of officers, etc	739–746
General provisions as to evolutions	747–751
Regimental formations, commands, signals	752–753
Route marches	754
The charge, assembly, and rally	755–757
Extended order	758–759
Dismounted action	760–761
The regiment in brigade	762
The brigade	763–767
Brigade formations	764
Field exercises	765–767
The division	768–771

PART VI. CEREMONIES, INSPECTIONS, AND MUSTER.

Ceremonies	772–876
Prescribed ceremonies	772
General rules for reviews	773–796
To form squadron for ceremonies	797–800
Squadron review	801–809
To form regiment for ceremonies	810–811
Regimental review	812–815
Brigade review	816
Garrison review	817
Parades	818–830
Squadron parade	819–829
Regimental parade	830

Ceremonies—Continued.	Paragraphs.
Escorts	831–855
Escort of honor	831
Funeral escort	832–846
Escort to the standard	847–855
Guard mounting	856–876
Formal guard mounting, mounted	857–865
Relieving the old guard	866–875
Formal guard mounting, dismounted	876
Inspections	877–888
Troop, mounted	877–881
Troop, dismounted	882
Squadron, mounted	883
Regimental, mounted	884
Machine-gun troop	885
Headquarters troop	886–887
Supply troop	888
Muster	889–891
Regimental, squadron, troop	889–891

Part VII. Miscellaneous.

Manuals	892–906
Of the guidon	892–898
Of the standard	899–906
Honors and salutes	907–927
Training remounts	928–964
General provisions	928–935
First period, preliminary, dismounted	936–940
Leading, longe, mounting	936–939
Training to bear saber	940
Second period, conditioning and training	941–944
Mounted work, obedience to aids	941–942
Conditioning, hygiene	943–944
Third period, continuation of second	945–950
Outdoor work, obedience to aids	945–946
Jumping, use of arms	947–950
Fourth period, final conditioning	951–964
Duty in ranks, work with the bit	951–952
Suppleness and mobility	953–958
Conditioning, special training	959–964

	Paragraphs.
Care of horses	965–974
General provisions and rules	965–966
Stable management	967–968
Grooming and watering	969–970
Feeding and exercising	971–972
Sick horses	973
Shoeing	974
Care of saddlery	975
Fitting the saddle	976.
Marches, camps	977–987
General provisions	977
Preparation	978
The march, its length and rate	979
Formations	980
Halts	981
Watering	982
Feeding	983
Camps, location of	984–985
Herding	986
Forced and night marches	987
Signals, arm, whistle, bugle, semaphore	988–997
General provisions	988–989
Arm signals	990
Whistle signals	991
Bugle signals	992–996
Alarm calls	993
Service calls	994
Drill and field calls	995
List of bugle calls	996
Semaphore code	997
Bugle calls, music for	Appendix.

CAVALRY DRILL REGULATIONS.

DEFINITIONS.

Alignment.—The placing of several troopers or units on the same straight line; also the line on which such adjustment is made.

Assembly.—The grouping **in order**, and in a close-order formation, of the elements of a command. The special arrangement and condition that constitute **order** for each unit are explained in the corresponding part of the text. The purpose of the assembly is to bring about a close-order formation **in order.**

Base.—The element on which a formation or movement is regulated. The base may be a trooper, two, four, section, platoon, or larger unit. When the base is a single trooper in ranks, he may also be termed the **guide.**

Center.—The middle point or element of a command. If the number of elements considered be even, the right center element will be meant when the center element is referred to.

Column.—A formation in which the elements of a command are placed one behind the other. The elements here referred to may be troopers, twos, fours, sections, platoons, or larger units. When used in these regulations as a **word of command**, without qualifying words indicating the kind of column (**as of twos, of platoons**, etc.), **column** signifies a **column of fours.** In all other cases the word is to be understood in its general sense unless the context indicates the contrary.

Deployment.—An evolution in which the command extends its front, as in forming line from column or in passing from close order to extended order.

Depth.—The space from front to rear of any formation, including the front and rear elements.

Directing leader.—The leader of a subordinate unit who temporarily conducts the march when the commander is not leading in person. A trooper in the rank of a platoon or

smaller unit who similarly conducts the march is termed a **directing guide.**

Direction of march.—The direction in which the base of the command in question, whether actually in march or halted, is facing at the instant considered.

Disposition.—The distribution of the elements of a command, and the formations and duties assigned to each for the accomplishment of a common purpose.

Distance.—The space between men or bodies of troops measured in the direction of depth. Distance is measured—mounted, from the croup of the horse in front to the head of the horse in rear; dismounted, from the back of the trooper in front to the breast of the trooper in rear.

Dress.—The act of taking a correct alignment.

Drill.—The exercises and evolutions taught on the drill ground and executed in accordance with definitely prescribed methods.

Echelon.—A body of troops is in *echelon* with reference to another when it is more advanced or less advanced and unmasks or uncovers the other body, wholly or in part; units thus placed are called *echelons.*

Element.—One of the component subdivisions of a command. As used in these regulations the term *element* is a general one and may mean a single trooper, a set of twos, a four, section, platoon, or larger unit according to the command and formation that are being considered. The expression **elements of the column** refers to the several troopers, fours, platoons, or other units that are placed successively, one behind another, in any column formation.

Evolutions.—Movements by which a command changes its position or passes from one formation to another.

File closers.—Officers or noncommissioned officers placed out of ranks, whose duty it is to supervise the men in ranks and see that the orders of the commander are carried out. For convenience, this term is applied to any man posted as a file closer.

Flank.—The right or left of a command in line or column.

In speaking of the enemy the term right flank or left flank is used to designate the flank that would be so designated by him.

Flank guard.—An element of a command disposed with a view to protecting a flank.

Foragers.—Mounted troopers distributed in line in extended order; also the formation in which the troopers are so distributed.

Formation.—The arrangement of the elements of a command in line, column, or echelon.

Gait.—One of the special movements of the horse, as the walk, the trot, or the gallop.

Gait of march.—The gait at which the base of the command in question is moving at the instant considered.

Horse length.—A term of measurement. For convenience in estimating space, a horse length is considered as 3 yards; by actual measure it is about 8 feet.

Interval.—The lateral space between the elements or fractions of a command. Interval is measured: Mounted, from the left knee of the man at the right of the open space to the right knee of the man at the left of the open space; dismounted, interval is measured on similar principles, but from elbow to elbow.

Line.—A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other. When the elements are in column the formation is called a line of columns.

Maneuvers.—Operations against an outlined or actual force under a separate commander, who, within the limits of the assumed situation, is free to adopt any formations and make any movements he chooses.

Order.—An indication of the will of the commander in whatever form conveyed. An order may be given orally, by signal, or in any manner that is intelligible to those for whom it is intended. The expression, **in order,** has no reference to this definition, but is used to indicate a special arrangement and condition of the elements of a command.

Order, close.—This includes formations in which the intervals and distances between elements are habitually based upon those required for forming the normal line formation of each unit of the formation.

Order, extended.—The formation in which the troopers, or the subdivisions, or both, are separated by intervals or distances greater than in close order.

Pace.—Used with reference to gait, pace signifies the rate of speed of the gait. Used as a unit of measure, pace signifies a step of 30 inches.

Patrol.—A group detached from a command and operating with specific mission, usually related to security or information. The term is ordinarily applied to groups varying in size from two men to a platoon. They are frequently designated by special names connected with their principal mission or their composition; as, **reconnoitering patrols, combat patrols, visiting patrols, officer's patrols.**

Ployment.—An evolution in which the command diminishes its front, as in passing from line to column, or from extended order to close order.

Rally.—The rapid grouping behind the leader of the elements of a command, without reference to their previous situation or formation.

The object of the rally is to reestablish cohesion with a view to immediate action, or to form line in a new direction when the regular method of forming line would be slow or complicated. It is executed in the order of arrival of the elements of the command without regard to their normal order. The formation in which each unit is rallied is fixed in the drill instructions of that unit.

Rank.—Two or more troopers placed side by side.

Scouts.—Individual troopers detached from their commands and operating with a definite mission related to security or information.

Skirmishers.—Dismounted troopers in line in extended order; also the formation in which the troopers are so placed.

Successive formation.—A formation in which the elements take their places successively.

Tactical exercise.—An operation against an outlined or represented enemy whose movements are restricted with a view to illustrating some particular tactical principle.

Cease firing is used for long pauses to prepare for changes of position or to steady the men.

140. Commands for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the preparatory command for firing whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

TARGET DESIGNATION.

141. In the training of men in the mechanism of the firing line, they should be practiced in repeating to one another target and aiming point designations and in quickly locating and pointing out a designated target. They should be taught to distinguish, from a prone position, distant objects, particularly troops, both with the naked eye and with field glasses.

Owing to the invariable custom of attempting to conceal fire trenches, it is necessary to have some ready method of indicating the exact location of an indistinct pit or trench occupied or supposed to be occupied by an enemy in order that effective fire may be opened. The so-called clock system furnishes one of the simplest devices for so doing. Two methods of applying this system are indicated below.

First method: That in which an imaginary clock dial is assumed to be horizontal, its center at the *firing point* and the center-XII line of the dial perpendicular to the front of the firing line.

To designate a target the commander announces, for example: **Target at 11 o'clock, range 800 yards, a trench.** Each man looks along the center-11 o'clock line of his imaginary dial, estimates the distance (800 yards) along that line, and thereby locates the trench.

In this method it is necessary that the target be visible to the naked eye and that each man be able to estimate distances with fair accuracy.

Second method: That in which an imaginary clock dial is assumed to be vertical, its center being at a **prominent, distant point** selected by the commander and called the **reference point.**

To designate a target the commander announces, for example: **Reference point, that clump of trees on hill crest.** When the men have located the reference point he announces: **Target at 4 o'clock, 2 finger widths, range 1,000 yards, a gun**

pit. By a finger width is meant the distance on the face of the assumed vertical clock (actually on the landscape) intercepted by the breadth of a man's finger held perpendicularly to his hand and arm, the latter being fully extended in the direction of the reference point.

Each man looks along the center-4 o'clock line of the imaginary (vertical) dial, measures, on this line, a point distant 2 finger-widths from the reference point (the center of the dial), and thus locates the gun pit.

A combination of the two methods may be necessary when, in using the second method, the reference point is not readily identified. Thus, in the case mentioned, it may, for example, be necessary to say: **Reference point at 1 o'clock, clump of trees on hill crest.**

In both methods the sequence of commands laid down should be observed.

Various devices for pointing out indistinct targets may be improvised and used.

THE USE OF COVER.

142. The recruit should be given careful instruction in the individual use of cover.

It should be impressed upon him that, in taking advantage of natural cover, he must be able to fire easily and effectively upon the enemy; if advancing on an enemy, he must do so steadily and as rapidly as practicable, taking advantage of any available cover while setting the sights, firing, or advancing.

To teach him to fire easily and effectively, at the same time concealing himself from the view of the enemy, he is practiced in simulated firing in the prone, sitting, kneeling, and crouching positions, from behind hillocks, trees, heaps of earth or rocks, from depressions, gullies, ditches, doorways, or windows. He is taught to fire around the right side of his concealment whenever practicable, or, when this is not practicable, to rise enough to fire over the top of his concealment.

When these details are understood, he is required to select cover with reference to an assumed enemy and to place himself behind it in proper position for firing.

143. The disadvantage of remaining too long in one place, however good the concealment, should be explained. He should be taught to advance from cover to cover, selecting cover in advance before leaving his concealment.

It should be impressed upon him that a man running rapidly toward an enemy furnishes a poor target. He should be trained in springing from a prone position behind concealment, running at top speed to cover and throwing himself behind it. He should also be practiced in advancing from cover to cover by crawling, or by lying on the left side, rifle grasped in the right hand, and pushing himself forward with the right leg.

He should be taught that when fired on while acting independently, he should drop to the ground, seek cover, and then endeavor to locate his enemy; also that in the sun he is visible to a much greater degree than when in the shade.

The instruction of the recruit in the use of cover is continued in the combat exercises of the squad and platoon, but he must then be taught that the proper advance of the platoon or troop and the effectiveness of its fire is of greater importance than the question of cover for individuals *should the two considerations conflict*. He should also be taught that he may not move about or shift his position in the firing line except to get a better view of the target.

OBSERVATION.

144. In order to develop the faculty of rapid and accurate observation, which is of great importance in campaign, the recruit should be trained in taking notice of his surroundings, at first from selected positions and later at the various gaits.

He should be practiced under various conditions of weather in recognizing colors and forms; in pointing out and naming military features of the ground; in observing the effect of the direction of light on distinctness of objects; in recognizing at gradually increasing distances the animate and inanimate objects ordinarily met with in the field; in counting distant objects; and in estimating the size of groups, such as herds of animals and bodies of troops.

MANUAL OF THE PISTOL.

145. Instruction under this head is first given on foot, the recruit having previously been made familiar with the mechanism of the pistol, the names of the principal parts, and the method of cleaning, assembling, and operating it.

When a lanyard is used the snaps are attached to the butt of the pistol and the magazine, the lanyard is passed over the head, and the sliding loop drawn snug against the right armpit. The lanyard should then be of just such length that the arm can be extended without constraint.

For dismounted instruction with the pistol the troopers may be formed with or without intervals.

During *instruction* in the manual of the pistol given when dismounted *with intervals* each trooper terminates the first execution of **raise pistol** by carrying his right foot 24 inches to the right and placing his left hand in the position of his bridle hand. This position is then retained until **return pistol** is executed, when the position of **attention** is resumed.

At *all other times* when movements in the manual of the pistol are executed dismounted the left hand is raised to the position of the bridle hand whenever used to manipulate the mechanism and is then dropped again to the side.

146. Except in the act of firing, the automatic pistol, when actually on the person, whether loaded or unloaded, will be carried cocked and locked. At all other times the hammer will be lowered *fully down.*

FIG. 20, par. 147.

147. The pistol being in the holster, to raise pistol: 1. **Raise,** 2. **PISTOL.**

Raise: Unbutton the flap of the holster with the right hand and grasp the stock, back of the hand outward.

PISTOL: Draw the pistol from the holster; reverse it, muzzle up, the hand holding the stock with the thumb and last three fingers, forefinger outside the guard, barrel to the rear and inclined to the front at an angle of 30°, hand as high as the neck and 6 inches in front of the point of the right shoulder. **This is the position of raise pistol.** (Fig. 20.)

148. Being at **raise pistol**, to inspect pistol: 1. **Inspection**, 2. **PISTOL.**

(*a*) **When a magazine is in the pistol:** Push down the safety lock and lower the right hand to within easy reach of the left, pistol pointed upward and to the right front at an angle of about 30°; grasp the corrugations of the slide with the left thumb and forefinger, thumb to the right; thrust upward with the right hand, thus drawing back the slide until the slide stop is engaged (fig. 23); resume **raise pistol** (fig. 21).

FIG. 21, par. 148 (*a*).

(*b*) **When no magazine is in the pistol:** Push down the safety lock and lower the pistol to the left hand, rotating the pistol so that the sights move to the left, barrel pointing downward and to the left front, stock pointing upward and to the right front; with the left thumb and forefinger grasp the corrugations of the slide, back of the left hand down (fig. 22); change the grasp of the right hand slightly until the thumb presses against the rounded surface of the slide stop; thrust downward and to the left front with the right hand, thus drawing back the slide, and at the same time press the slide stop with the right thumb against the slide until it engages; resume **raise pistol.**

FIG. 22, par. 148 (*b*).

Inspection pistol is never executed with a loaded pistol or with a loaded magazine in the pistol.

149. 1. **Return**, 2. **PISTOL.**

(*a*) Being at **raise pistol**; lock the pistol, if not locked; lower the pistol to the holster, reversing it, muzzle down, back of the hand to the right; raise the flap of the holster with the right thumb; insert the pistol in the holster and thrust it home; button the flap of the holster with the right hand.

(*b*) **Being at inspection pistol;** (with a magazine in the pistol) lower the pistol to the left hand and grasp the slide as prescribed for inspection pistol without magazine (par. 148–*b*, fig. 22); thrust downward and to the left front with the right

hand, thus relieving the pressure on the slide stop, and at the same time disengage the slide stop with the right thumb; release the slide; reverse and lock the pistol; place it in holster as prescribed in (*a*). If there is no magazine in the pistol, lower it to the bridle hand as in **load** (par. 151); draw back the slide and release it; lock the pistol and place it in the holster.

When the last shot is fired the slide stop engages automatically. **Return pistol** is then executed as from inspection pistol (*b*).

150. Being at raise pistol, to insert a magazine in the pistol: 1. **Insert,** 2. **MAGAZINE,** or 2. **LOADED MAGAZINE.**

(*a*) When a magazine is in the pistol: Lower the pistol into the left hand, rotating it so that the sights move to the left; grasp the slide with the left hand, back of the hand down, barrel pointing downward to the left front, stock pointing upward to the right front; release the magazine catch with the middle finger of the left hand; withdraw the magazine with the right hand; insert the designated magazine and resume **raise pistol.** If there be no empty space in the magazine pocket when the magazine is withdrawn from the pistol, the magazine may be held between the left thumb and the stock of the pistol until the magazine has been taken from the pocket and inserted; the magazine withdrawn from the pistol is then inserted in the magazine pocket.

Whenever the magazine catch is released, the right hand should be so placed as to limit the motion of the magazine and prevent its falling out.

(*b*) **When no magazine is in the pistol:** Lower the pistol into the left hand and grasp it as before; insert the designated magazine and resume **raise pistol.**

A loaded magazine will never be inserted without specific command.

FIG. 23, par. 151.

151. Being at **raise pistol** with a loaded magazine in the pistol, to load: **LOAD:** Push down the safety lock and lower the pistol to the bridle hand as prescribed for inspection pistol when a magazine is in the pistol (par. 148 (*a*)); operate the slide; engage the safety lock with the right thumb and raise pistol. (Fig. 23.)

To simulate loading for instruction, first withdraw the empty magazine.

The command load may be given in connection with the insertion of the magazine, for example: 1. **Insert,** 2. **LOADED MAGAZINE;** 3. **LOAD.**

After inserting magazine, reverse the pistol and load as above prescribed.

152. Being in any position, to eject the cartridge from the receiver: **UNLOAD.**

Pass the pistol into the left hand as in **insert magazine;** release the magazine catch with the middle finger of the left hand, slightly disengaging the magazine; push down the safety lock with the right thumb; operate the slide to eject the cartridge; engage the magazine; raise and lock the pistol.

153. Being in any position, to withdraw the magazine from the pistol: **WITHDRAW MAGAZINE.**

Handle the pistol as in **insert magazine;** release the magazine catch; withdraw the magazine and execute **raise pistol.**

Recruits are taught the motions of loading and firing without cartridges, and preferably without a magazine in the pistol, to avoid wear on the magazine lips. Loading and pointing practice should be had at all gaits.

154. The hammer is always lowered preparatory to placing the pistol in the arm rack or other place of deposit.

155. Being at **raise pistol,** to lower the hammer:

(*a*) **Using both hands:** Push down the safety lock; assume the position of **load;** seat the right thumb firmly on the hammer and hold it there; raise the left hand to the right and press the grip safety with the left thumb; insert the forefinger inside the trigger guard; press the trigger and carefully let the hammer down with the right thumb. Resume **raise pistol.**

(*b*) **Using but one hand:** Raise the right hand until the muzzle of the pistol is well above the head; disengage the safety lock; seat the ball of the right thumb firmly on the hammer; bear down the grip safety by pressure on the hammer; press the trigger and carefully let down the hammer with the right thumb.

156. To charge the magazine: Hold the magazine in the left hand, open end up, rounded side to the right. Take the cartridge in the right hand, thumb on the rim, bullet end pointing

to the right; place the rim on the end of the magazine follower; force down the magazine spring and slip the cartridge to the left of the magazine. The next cartridge is similarly slipped in by placing it on the cartridge just inserted and forcing down the spring.

The magazine may be charged with any number of cartridges from one to seven.

Before dismissing the squad, pistols will be inspected, and if found loaded, will be unloaded and magazines withdrawn to prevent loaded or partially loaded magazines being left in the pistol. Except at target practice, on guard duty, or active service, the pistol is habitually carried unloaded with empty magazine.

EMPLOYMENT OF THE PISTOL.

157. The pistol is primarily a weapon for use at very close range. Its characteristic employment by cavalry is in mounted firing from a horse moving at a rapid gait. Under such conditions its effectiveness is almost negligible at ranges over 25 yards against individuals or over 50 yards against a line in close order except in the hands of exceptionally skilled shots, and the effectiveness rapidly decreases at ranges over 5 to 10 yards. These limitations on the use of the pistol are due not to its short range as a weapon but to the difficulties of directing it accurately under the conditions of use. While the pistol is a weapon employing fire action, its tactical employment is more nearly analogous to that of either the saber or bayonet than to that of the rifle.

158. From the preceding paragraph it results that there is no need, in connection with the employment of the pistol as a weapon of mounted combat, for commands that purport to designate a target or to indicate range or other details for the direction of fire. The only commands ordinarily needed are those required for instruction purposes. (See Small-Arms Firing Manual.)

159. The effectiveness of the individual trooper in mounted pistol combat depends upon:

(*a*) Thorough familiarity with the weapon and facility in manipulating its mechanism under all conditions. This is acquired by training in the **Manual of the Pistol.** Constant practice is necessary in rapidly drawing the pistol from its

holster, loading it, withdrawing magazine, and inserting magazine, at first at a halt, later in motion, and finally at rapid gaits.

(*b*) Skill in firing the pistol. This is acquired by actual practice in the preliminary exercises and range firing as prescribed in the **Small-Arms Firing Manual.**

(*c*) Control of the horse. This is acquired in the **School of the Trooper.**

(*d*) The thorough inculcation in the trooper of the habit of *withholding his fire until within close range.* This can well be accomplished in individual training by exercises in firing or simulating fire at one or more silhouette targets. The trooper approaches at a gait graduated in accordance with his state of training and is required to withhold his fire until he passes a certain line.

160. The other elements that enter into effective use of the pistol as a mounted weapon relate to the formations and tactics employed rather than to individual training. They pertain, therefore, to collective rather than individual instruction.

161. If any command be required in connection with the characteristic use of the pistol in mounted combat, it consists simply of an indication of the moment at which fire may begin. For this purpose the command **COMMENCE FIRING** may be employed in any case for which a command may be desirable.

MANUAL OF THE SABER, DISMOUNTED.

162. For this instruction, dismounted, the saber in the scabbard is carried in the left hand.

In the position of attention the saber will be held upright by the side, guard to the front, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground close to the left foot and just in front of the heel. The left arm will be extended, the fingers and thumb grasping the scabbard, back of the hand outward.

In the necessary movements on foot with the saber in hand the saber is carried with the hilt to the front and higher than the shoe of the scabbard.

Officers, dismounted, may carry the saber in the hollow of the left arm, elbow bent, forearm horizontal, guard of the saber to the front, blade vertical. An officer or noncommissioned officer habitually draws saber before giving any com-

mands involving the use of that weapon by those under him. Officers and noncommissioned officers out of ranks draw saber only on occasions when the men draw saber unless otherwise prescribed. The saber may be drawn for signaling.

163. The saber is intended for mounted combat. The instructor will impress upon the recruit from the first that the use of the saber in war is ordinarily limited to occasions of mounted combat, and that instruction on foot in its use is merely preliminary to the mounted training which the recruit will receive later.

164. For dismounted instruction, if the squad is in ranks, the instructor causes intervals or distances (pars. 85–88) to be taken before drawing saber.

165. 1. **Draw,** 2. **SABER.**

At the command **draw,** grasp the scabbard with the left hand about 4 inches from the mouth, place the left hand against the thigh, and carry the hilt to the front; turn the head slightly to the left without deranging the position and glance at the saber knot; engage the right wrist in the saber knot and give it two turns inward to secure it; grasp the hilt with the right hand and draw the saber about 6 inches from the scabbard and look to the front.

At the command **saber,** draw the saber quickly, raising the arm to the front and upward to its full length, saber in prolongation of the arm. Make a short pause with the saber raised, then bring it down with the blade against the hollow of the right shoulder, guard to the front, right hand at the hip, the third and fourth fingers on the back of the grip and the elbow back.

The left hand holds the scabbard as at attention.

This is the position of **carry saber dismounted.**

166. 1. **Return,** 2. **SABER.**

At the command **return,** grasp the scabbard as in draw saber and carry the opening to the front. Carry the saber to the front with arm half extended until the thumb is about 6 inches in front of the chin, the blade vertical, guard to the left, the thumb extended along the side of the grip, the little finger joined with the others.

At the command **saber,** move the wrist to opposite the left shoulder, lower the blade and pass it across and along the left arm, point to the rear. Turn the head to the left, fixing

the eyes upon the opening of the scabbard; raise the right hand and insert the blade in the scabbard and push it home. Disengage the wrist from the saber knot and resume the position of attention.

167. Being at **carry saber**: 1. **Present**, 2. **SABER.**

Without changing the position of the left hand, execute at the command **saber** what is prescribed in par. 166 at the command **return**, except that the grip is held in the full grasp. The saber is said to be held in the full grasp when all four fingers grasp the grip, the thumb extending along the back in the groove, the fingers pressing the back of the grip against the heel of the hand.

Officers at the command: 1. **Present**, execute **present saber** as described above; at the command: 2. **SABER**, they lower the saber until the point is 12 inches from the ground and directed to the front, guard to the left, right arm straight, hand beside the thigh. **Mounted**, the point is lowered to the level of the stirrup.

168. Being at **carry saber**: 1. **Port**, 2. **SABER.**

Carry the right foot about 24 inches to the right, bring the left hand to the position of the bridle hand and raise the saber to a vertical position, guard to the front, grip held in the full grasp, right hand about 12 inches in front of the shoulder.

To resume the **carry**: 1. Carry, 2. **SABER.**

169. Being at **carry saber**, or in any position: **GUARD.**

Carry the right foot about 24 inches to the right and bend knees to simulate the position mounted. Incline the body to the front from the waist (not the hips). Let the blade fall to the front to a position nearly horizontal, elbow well away from the body, forearm and saber forming one straight line, guard to the right, point at the height of the ad-

FIG. 24, par. 169.

versary's breast, the left hand in the position of the bridle hand. (Fig. 24.)

170. Being at **carry saber: 1. Inspection, 2. SABER.**

Carry the right hand upward, arm half extended until the thumb is at the height of the chin, grip held in the full grasp, blade vertical, guard to the left. Make a slight pause, then loosen the grasp on the grip and turn the saber with the guard to the right. Again make a slight pause, then resume the first position and return to the carry.

171. Saber exercise is conducted, and instruction given, as prescribed in the **Saber Exercise.** For **Manual of the Saber, Mounted,** *see* par. 245.

SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, MOUNTED.

General Provisions.

172. *Object.*—The primary object of this school is to train the trooper in horsemanship and in the ready use of his weapons while mounted.

173. *The instructor.*—It is essential that the instructor (par. 37) be a skilled and experienced horseman, properly mounted. He should always supplement the original explanation of a movement by executing it himself, so that the recruits may actually see the result that is desired and the means by which it is effected.

174. *Cautions to instructors.*—The instructor must first develop the confidence of the recruit, give him a proper seat, and make him supple on the horse. Progress should be suited to his capacity and exempt him as far as practicable from falls or other accidents. Instruction in the use of the aids and in the means employed to train the horse to obey them will follow.

When the recruit has acquired confidence in his ability to ride and control his horse he will be instructed in the use of arms mounted.

Instruction is given individually; every new movement is made the object of a particular lesson given to each trooper in turn.

During the exercise the instructor avoids general remarks and (in so far as possible) unfamiliar terms; in the correction of faults he addresses by name those committing them.

He passes frequently from one trooper to another repeating advice and endeavoring to impress upon the troopers the principles embodied in the regulations. In doing this he need not use the language of the text.

The instructor may be on foot or mounted. For the first lessons it is advantageous to remain on foot so as better to explain movements and correct faults.

Steady, well-trained horses are selected for the first lessons. The troopers exchange horses from time to time during the lesson on indication from the instructor.

There should be frequent rests, especially with recruits. During these rests advantage may be taken of the opportunity to question the troopers respecting the instruction they have received.

In all exercises the instructor varies the gait so as not to weary the troopers or the horses. The instruction is conducted without hurry. The daily work begins and ends at the walk.

175. *The standard required of troopers.*—To be a good military horseman each trooper should—

(*a*) Have a strong seat.

(*b*) Be able to apply correctly the aids by which a horse is controlled.

(*c*) Be capable of covering long distances on horseback with the least possible fatigue to his horse and to himself.

(*d*) Be able to use his horse to the utmost advantage in a mounted fight.

(*e*) Be capable of riding across country.

(*f*) Under proper directions, be able to train an unbroken horse in garrison and in the field, understand how to detect and treat the minor ailments to which the horse is liable, and be a good groom.

All officers, in addition to being good military horsemen and instructors in riding, must be able to train remounts and to direct their training.

176. *Periods.*—For convenience in imparting instruction, and in order that it may progress in a natural sequence, the school of the trooper is divided into—

(*a*) First period, or preparatory exercises and explanations.

(*b*) Second period, or work on the snaffle.

(*c*) Third period, or work on the double snaffle.

(*d*) Fourth period, or work on the bit and bridoon.

First Period, or Preparatory Exercises and Explanations.

General provisions (par. 177).
To fold the saddle blanket (par. 178).
To put on the blanket and surcingle (par. 179).
To put on and take off the watering bridle (par. 180).

To saddle (pars. 181, 182).
To unsaddle (par. 183).
To put on and take off the bit and bridoon bridle (pars. 184–186).
Stand to horse (par. 187).
To lead out (pars. 188, 189).
Stirrups (par. 190).
To mount (pars. 191–193).
To dismount (pars. 192, 193).
To take the reins in one hand and to separate them (pars. 194–197).
Position of the trooper, or attention, mounted (pars. 198, 199).
The aids (pars. 200–208).
Suppling exercises (pars. 209–217).
To vault into the saddle and to the ground (pars. 218–220).
To rest (par. 221).
To dismiss (par. 222).
Stand to heel (par. 223).

177. *General provisions.*—For the preparatory exercises the horses are saddled and equipped with the snaffle bit only, saddles stripped. Spurs are not worn.

These exercises are conducted at first in a riding hall or on an inclosed course out of doors.

References to the riding hall are to be understood as ordinarily applying equally to any out-of-doors inclosure or to the space included in any course marked off for instruction in equitation (pars. 269, 296).

At first, the troopers, dismounted, lead their horses to the riding hall and return them to the stable in the same manner. When they have received sufficient instruction they go and return mounted.

As soon as the instruction has advanced sufficiently to permit the use of such commands and methods, the instructor will confine himself to the commands and means prescribed in the School of the Trooper.

TO FOLD THE SADDLE BLANKET.

178. The blanket, after being well shaken, will be folded into six thicknesses, as follows: Hold it well up by the two cor-

ners, the long way up and down; double it lengthwise (so the fold will come between the "U" and "S"), the folded corner (middle of blanket) in the left hand; take the folded corner between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, thumb pointing to the left; slip the left hand down the folded edge two-thirds its length and seize it with the thumb and second finger; raise the hands to the height of the shoulders, the blanket between them extended; bring the hands together, the double fold falling outward; pass the folded corner from the right hand into the left hand, between the thumb and forefinger, slip the second finger of the right hand between the folds and seize the double folded corner; turn the left (disengaged) corner in and seize it with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, the second finger of the right hand stretching and evening the folds; after evening the folds grasp the corners and shake the blanket well in order to smooth the folds; raise the blanket and place it between the chin and breast; slip the hands down half way, the first two fingers outside, the other fingers and thumb of each hand inside, seize the blanket with the thumbs and first two fingers and let the part under the chin fall forward; hold the blanket up, arms extended, even the lower edges, seize the middle points between the thumbs and forefingers, and flirt the outside part over the right arm; the blanket is thus held before placing it on the horse.

While retaining the general method of folding the blanket as above indicated, troop commanders will require the blanket to be refolded frequently with a view to equalizing the wear on the different sections of the blanket.

TO PUT ON THE BLANKET AND SURCINGLE.

179. The instructor commands: **BLANKET.**

Approach the horse on the near (left) side, with the blanket folded and held as just described; place it well forward on his back by tossing the part of the blanket over the right arm to the off (right) side of the horse, still keeping hold of the middle points; slide the blanket once or twice from front to rear to smooth the hair. Being careful to raise the blanket in bringing it forward, place the blanket with the forefinger of the left hand on the withers and the forefinger of the right

hand on the backbone, the blanket smooth; it should then be well forward with the edges on the left side; remove the locks of mane that may be under it; pass the buckle end of the surcingle over the middle of the blanket and buckle it on the near side a little below the edge of the blanket.

TO PUT ON AND TAKE OFF THE WATERING BRIDLE.

180. The instructor commands: **BRIDLE.**

Take the reins in the right hand, the bit in the left; approach the horse on the near side, slip the reins over the horse's head and let them rest on his neck; reach under and engage the snap in the right halter ring; insert the left thumb in the side of the horse's mouth above the tush and press open the lower jaw; insert the bit and engage the snap in the left halter ring. The bit should hang so as to touch, but not draw up, the corners of the mouth. At the command **unbridle**, pass the reins over the horse's head and disengage the snaps.

TO SADDLE.

181. (*a*) (McClellan saddle.) For instruction the saddle may be placed four yards in rear or front of the horse. The stirrups are crossed over the seat, the right one uppermost; then the cincha and cincha strap are crossed above the stirrups, the strap uppermost. The blanket having been placed as previously explained, the instructor commands: **SADDLE.**

Seize the pommel of the saddle with the left hand and the cantle with the right, approach the horse on the near side from the direction of the croup and *place the center of the saddle on the middle of the horse's back*, the end of the side bar about three-finger widths behind the point of the shoulder blade; let down the cincha strap and cincha, pass to the off side, adjust the cincha and straps, and see that the blanket is smooth; return to the near side, raise the blanket slightly under the pommel arch so that the withers may not be compressed; take the cincha strap in the right hand, reach under the horse and seize the cincha ring with the left hand, pass the end of the strap through the ring from underneath (from inside to outside), then up and through the upper ring from the outside; if necessary, make another fold in the same manner.

The strap is fastened as follows: Pass the end through the upper ring to the front; seize it with the left hand, place the fingers of the right between the outside folds of the strap, pull from the horse with the right hand and take up the slack with the left; cross the strap over the folds, pass the end of it with the right hand underneath and through the upper ring back of the folds, then down and under the loop that crosses the folds and draw it tightly; weave the ends of the strap into the strands of the cincha.

Another method of fastening the cincha strap is as follows: Pass the end through the upper ring to the rear; seize it with the right hand; place the fingers of the left hand between the outer folds of the strap; pull from the horse with the left hand and take up slack with the right; pass the end of the strap underneath and draw it through the upper ring until a loop is formed; double the loose end of the strap and push it through the loop and draw the loop taut. The free end should be long enough to be seized conveniently with the hand.

Having fastened the cincha strap, let down the right stirrup and then the left.

The surcingle is then buckled over the saddle, and should be a little looser than the cincha.

The cincha when first tied should admit a finger between it and the belly. After exercising for a while the cincha will be found too loose and should be tightened.

(*b*) (Service saddle, model of 1912.) Troops equipped with this model will saddle as prescribed for the McClellan saddle with the following modifications:

Place the saddle on the blanket so that the front edge of the side bar approaches the shoulder blade without pressing upon it. After the saddle has been so placed, let down the girth; pass to the off side, adjust the girth and saddle skirt, and see that the blanket is smooth, return to the near side and push the blanket well up into the pommel arch; reach under the horse, seize the girth with the left hand and bring up its free end to the near side of the saddle; with the right hand raise the saddle skirt and buckle the girth straps to the corresponding buckles of the girth, beginning with the forward strap, lower the saddle skirt and let down the stirrups begin

ning with the right stirrup. The girth should ordinarily be about 4 inches in rear of the point of the elbow.

182. To approximate the length of the stirrup straps before mounting, they are adjusted so that the length of the stirrup strap, including the stirrup, is about 1 inch less than the length of the arm, fingers extended.

TO UNSADDLE.

183. The instructor commands: **UNSADDLE.**

(*a*) (McClellan saddle.) Stand on the near side of the horse; unbuckle and remove the surcingle; cross the left stirrup over the saddle; loosen the cincha strap and let down the cincha; pass to the off side, cross the right stirrup, then the cincha; pass to the near side, cross the cincha strap over the saddle; grasp the pommel with the left hand, the cantle with the right, and remove the saddle over the croup and place it in front or rear of the horse as may be directed, pommel to the front; grasp the blanket at the withers with the left hand and at the loin with the right, remove it in the direction of the croup, the edges falling together, wet side in, and place it on the saddle, folded edge on the pommel.

If in the stable, place the saddle on its peg when taken off the horse.

(*b*) (Service saddle, model of 1912.) Stand on the near side of the horse; cross the left stirrup over the saddle; raise the saddle skirt with the left hand, and with the right unbuckle the girth straps, beginning with the rear strap; let down the girth; pass to the off side; cross the right stirrup and then the girth over the saddle; pass to the near side, grasp the pommel with the left hand, the cantle with the right, and remove and dispose of the saddle as prescribed in (*a*).

The service saddle, model 1912, should be hung on a bracket sufficiently wide for the saddle to rest on its side bars. If a narrower support is used, the saddle will rest on the low point in the leather seat and become misshapen.

TO PUT ON AND TAKE OFF THE BIT AND BRIDOON BRIDLE (MODEL 1909).

184. Before bridling the curb chain is unhooked on the near side. The instructor commands: **BRIDLE.**

Take the reins in the right, the crownpiece in the left hand; approach the horse on the near side, passing the right hand along his neck; slip both reins over his head and let them rest on his neck; take the crownpiece in the right hand and the lower left branch of the curb bit in the left hand, the forefinger against the mouthpiece, the snaffle bit above and resting on the mouthpiece of the curb bit; bring the crownpiece in front of and slightly below its proper position; insert the thumb into the side of the mouth above the tush; press open the lower jaw and insert the bits by raising the crownpiece; with the left hand draw the ears gently under the crownpiece, beginning with the left ear; arrange the forelock, secure the throatlatch, and hook up the curb chain on the near side below the snaffle bit.

The bridle is adjusted as prescribed in par. 302.

The throatlatch should admit four fingers between it and the throat.

185. At the discretion of the instructor, the halter may be taken off before bridling, the reins being first passed over the neck; the hitching strap, if not left at the manger or picket line, is tied around the horse's neck; if the horse be saddled, in the near pommel ring.

186. The instructor commands: **UNBRIDLE.**

Stand on the near side of the horse; pass the reins over the horse's head, placing them on the bend of the left arm; unhook the curb chain on the near side; unbuckle the throatlatch, grasp the crownpiece with the right hand and, assisting with the left hand, gently disengage the ears; gently disengage the bits from the horse's mouth with the left hand by lowering the crownpiece; place the crownpiece in the palm of the left hand, take the reins in the right hand, pass them together over the crownpiece, make two or three turns around the bridle, then pass the bight between the brow band and crownpiece and draw it snug.

The bridle is hung up by the reins or placed across the saddle on the blanket.

If the horse has no halter on, unbridle and push the bridle back so that the crownpiece will rest on the neck behind the poll until the halter is replaced.

187. Stand to horse: At this command each trooper places himself, facing to the front, on the near side of the horse, oppo-

site his head, and takes the position of **attention**, except that the right hand, nails down, grasps the reins, the forefinger separating them, about 6 inches from the bit. The bights of the reins rest on the neck near the pommel of the saddle.

188. To lead out: The troopers being at **stand to horse**, to leave the stable or picket line, the instructor commands: **LEAD OUT.**

Each trooper, holding his right hand well up and firm, leads his horse, without looking at him, to the place designated by the instructor.

189. Upon entering the riding hall or inclosure the instructor disposes the troopers upon a line at intervals of 3 yards, the troopers at **stand to horse**, the horses correctly disposed and perpendicular to the line of troopers.

A horse is correctly disposed when he stands squarely on all four feet, having his head, neck, and body in line.

190. Stirrups: The stirrups are properly adjusted when, the trooper being properly seated with the feet removed from the stirrups and the legs falling naturally, the tread of the stirrups is about 1 inch above the top of the heel of the shoe.

The stirrups should bear only the weight of the lower leg; about one-third of the foot should be inserted in the stirrup, so that the ball of the foot rests on the tread, the heel lower than the toe.

The flat of the stirrup strap should rest against the leg of the mounted trooper. To accomplish this the trooper's toe should be so inserted in the stirrup as to place the front branch of the latter on the outside. By the front branch of the stirrup is meant the forward branch as the stirrup hangs before the trooper mounts.

Placing too much weight on the stirrup disturbs the seat and contracts the leg, hindering its freedom of action.

If the toe is not inserted far enough the trooper risks losing his stirrup; if inserted too far suppleness is diminished.

The heel is carried naturally lower than the toe if the ankle joint is not rigid.

For the extended gallop, in the charge, for the use of weapons, and for leaping obstacles the foot is inserted fully in the stirrup.

191. To mount: Being at **stand to horse, MOUNT.**

(*a*) Face to the right, drop the right rein, grasp the left rein in the right hand, take two steps to the right, sliding the hand along the left rein, make a half face to the left when opposite the girth; with the aid of the left hand take both reins in the right, forefinger between the reins, the right hand on the pommel, the reins coming into the hand on the side of the forefinger, and held so as to feel lightly the horse's mouth, the bight falling on the off side. Place the left foot in the stirrup, assisted by the left hand if necessary, and bring the left knee against the saddle; grasp a lock of the mane with the left hand, lock coming out between the thumb and forefinger.

(*b*) Spring from the right foot, keeping the hands firmly in place, the left knee bent and pressed against the saddle, bring the right foot by the side of the left, body inclining slightly forward; pass the right leg, knee bent, over the croup without touching it, sit down lightly in the saddle; let go of the mane; insert the right foot in the stirrup, assisted by the right hand if necessary; take a rein in each hand, the rein coming into the hand under the little finger and passing out over the second joint of the forefinger, the thumbs closed on the reins, the bight of the reins falling to the right.

The reins should be so held that the trooper feels lightly the horse's mouth, the fingers closed until the nails lightly touch the palms of the hands; the reins well up in the crotch of the fingers; the backs of the hands vertical and in prolongation of the forearm; the wrists flexible; the elbows near the body and low, so that the forearms will be in prolongation of the reins; the hands about 9 inches apart.

The instructor takes care that the recruit in adjusting the reins provokes no movement of the horse and deranges in no manner the position of the horse's head.

The instructor cautions the trooper to avoid touching the horse with the left toe in mounting; this fault begets nearly all the resistance of horses to standing quietly while being mounted.

The modifications incident to mounting and dismounting a horse equipped with the double snaffle or bit and bridoon are indicated in pars. 271, 303, and 307. The troopers are also trained to mount on the right side.

192. To dismount: Being halted, **DISMOUNT.**

(*a*) Seize the reins with the right hand in front of and near the left, forefinger between the reins, the reins entering the hand from the side of the forefinger; drop the reins with the left hand; place the right hand on the pommel; grasp a lock of the mane with the left hand, the lock coming out between the thumb and forefinger; take the right foot out of the stirrup.

(*b*) Rise upon the left stirrup, pass the right leg, knee bent over the croup without touching the horse, and bring the right foot by the side of the left, the left knee against the saddle, the upper part of the body inclined slightly forward; descend lightly to the ground and take the position of **stand to horse.**

The troopers are also trained to dismount on the right side.

193. Commanding officers may authorize the following alternative method of mounting and dismounting by officers and enlisted men on all occasions except those when it is required that mounting and dismounting be executed in unison at the corresponding command (par. 354). Instruction in the methods authorized in this paragraph is optional.

Being at **stand to horse,** at the command **MOUNT,** face to the right, drop the right rein, take a step to the right to be opposite the shoulder of the horse; at the same time seize the bights of the reins in the right hand and pull them taut enough to give a gentle, even bearing on the horse's mouth; grasp the reins with the left hand, with the little finger between them, and the bight coming out between the thumb and forefinger, which also hold a lock of the mane. Place the left foot in the stirrup, assisted by the right hand if necessary, and bring the left knee against the saddle.

Place the right hand upon the cantle, rise by an effort of the right leg, aided by the arms, the left knee bent and pressed against the saddle, the upper part of the body inclined slightly forward to keep the saddle from turning; bring the right foot by the side of the left; change the right hand to the pommel, pass the right leg, knee bent, over the croup without touching it, and sit down lightly in the saddle. Put the right foot in the stirrup, assisted by the right hand if necessary.

At the command **DISMOUNT,** pass the right rein into the left hand and grasp with this hand a lock of the mane, place

the right hand on the pommel, and remove the right foot from the stirrup; pass the right leg, knee bent, over the croup without touching the horse and bring the right foot by the side of the left, the left knee against the saddle, the upper part of the body inclined slightly forward, right hand on the cantle. Descend lightly to the ground and take the position of stand to horse.

194. To take the reins in one hand and to separate them: At the command **IN LEFT HAND TAKE REINS**, place the left hand opposite the middle of the body, pass the right rein into the left hand, separating it from the left rein by the little finger; let the right hand fall by the side.

195. At the command **IN BOTH HANDS TAKE REINS**, grasp the right rein with the right hand and replace the hands 9 inches apart.

The reins are taken in the right hand and again separated in a similar manner.

196. To adjust the reins the trooper brings the wrists together and grasps with one hand, above and near the opposite thumb, the rein that he desires to shorten.

197. The instructor causes the reins to be dropped and retaken by the commands **DROP REINS** and **REINS.**

At the first command, the trooper drops the reins behind the pommel and lets the hands fall by the side.

The reins are dropped as an exceptional measure, and always with precaution against accident.

198. Position of the trooper, or attention (mounted): The position described below should be considered a standard toward which all troopers should gradually approximate.

The buttocks bearing equally upon and well forward in the middle of the saddle.

The thighs turned without constraint upon their flat side, clasping the horse evenly and stretched only by their own weight and that of the lower legs.

The knees bent and flexible.

The lower legs falling naturally, the calves in contact with the horse without pressure, the toes dropping naturally when the trooper is without stirrups.

The back supple and never hollowed.

The upper part of the body easy, free, and erect.

The shoulders thrown back evenly.

The arms free, the elbows falling naturally.

The head erect and turned to the front, but without stiffness.

Eyes alert, well up, and directed to the trooper's front.

The reins held as heretofore prescribed.

This position may be modified by the instructor to suit varying conditions and unusual conformations. When not at attention, the head and eyes are directed so as best to favor alertness and observation. In other respects the position should be practically unchanged.

199. The body and lower legs are movable and should be under the control of the trooper, either acting intermittently as aids for guiding the horse or as a means of binding the rider to the horse while following his movements.

The thighs, on the other hand, should remain fixed immovably to the saddle, except while posting at the trot. This fixity should be obtained not by the pressure of the knees but by the clinging of the buttocks, which is secured by the suppleness of the loins and the relaxation of the thighs. It is acquired very rapidly by daily "*rotation of the thighs*," which gradually presses the large thigh muscles to the rear and permits the femur to rest solidly against the saddle.

The trooper should sit with his buttocks well under the upper part of his body, and especially avoid bowing the back by thrusting the buttocks to the rear and the lower part of the spine to the front. Sitting well forward in the middle of the saddle will tend to assist the trooper in avoiding the defect just referred to. If the buttocks are thrust back too much, the trooper can not conform to the movements of the horse and carries forward the upper part of his body.

If the thigh is too nearly horizontal, the trooper is doubled up and his power of action diminished; if the thigh is too nearly vertical, the trooper is on the crotch and lacks ease.

To sum up: The trooper should take a relaxed sitting position, squarely on his buttocks, with the thighs inclined downward.

The various defects of position are overcome by suitable suppling exercises (pars. 209–220).

200. *The aids.*—The legs, the reins, and the weight are the means of controlling the horse in riding. They are called the aids.

201. **The legs:** The legs serve to urge the horse forward, to increase his pace or gait, and to engage the hind quarters or move them laterally. The legs act by the pressure of the calves. If pressure alone is insufficient the trooper increases the action by blows with his calves.

It is essential to obtain from the horse perfect obedience to the action of the legs. He should respond to the simultaneous and equal action of both legs by engaging his hindquarters and moving forward; to the predominant action of one leg by moving his haunches to the opposite side.

202. **The reins:** The reins serve to prepare the horse to move, to decrease or increase his pace, to change the gait, or to change direction.

Contact is a light bearing of the mouth of the horse on the hand of the rider. It should be constantly maintained.

The reins are held in the full hand, the thumb pressing them lightly upon the second joint of the forefinger. By means of closing and relaxing the fingers and flexing the wrist, arm, and shoulder, the trooper, while maintaining contact and keeping the reins taut, follows easily the movements of the head of the horse without anticipating or interfering with these movements. The hand is then said to be passive. It is kept so as long as the trooper is not required to change the pace, gait, or direction.

203. **The direct rein:** When the trooper, with the hands separated and the reins adjusted, closes his fingers upon the reins without raising the hands he exercises an action from front to rear, called the effect of the direct reins. This effect, when on one rein only, is called that of the **right (or left) direct rein.**

204. **The leading rein:** When the trooper carries the right hand to the right and forward in a manner to preserve contact but not to increase pressure on the bit the effect is called that of the **right leading rein.**

The back of the hand should remain vertical, the wrist in prolongation of the forearm, the elbow remaining near the body.

The horse's head and neck are drawn to the right, the shoulders follow, and he turns to the right.

205. **The bearing rein:** When the trooper carries the right hand forward, upward, and to the left in a manner to pre

serve contact, but not to increase pressure on the bit, the effect is said to be that of the **right bearing rein.**

The back of the hand should remain vertical, the wrist in prolongation of the forearm.

The horse's head is **turned slightly to the right,** but the effect is to the left; the neck bends and is convex to the left and is followed by the shoulders. The horse turns to the left.

The action of the bearing rein is much more powerful than that of the leading rein, and is used to the exclusion of the latter to turn the horse when riding with the reins in one hand.

206. The indirect rein of opposition: When the trooper carries the right hand to the left in a manner to press the shoulders to the left and to produce a diagonal traction on the rein in the direction of the left shoulder or haunch the effect is called that of the **right indirect rein of opposition.**

Its effect may be produced **in front of the withers** if the hand be slightly raised; **in rear of the withers** if the hand be slightly lowered. It is frequently used by the trooper when riding with one hand (as he must do in order to use his weapons), and its effect should be studied and practiced from the beginning.

207. Manner of applying the aids: The action of the reins and legs and weight should not be continuous. The trooper alternately closes and relaxes the fingers, the hands preserving contact in the intervals between the actions. In the same manner he uses the legs, neither gripping nor releasing altogether, but preserving light contact in the intervals between the blows with the calves. The weight likewise is used in a similar manner, being quickly applied to the front, to the rear, or to a side, alternating with returns to the normal position.

If an action of the aids is prolonged the horse has opportunity to establish the corresponding resistance, but if produced by **repeated applications** the effect is very marked.

All action of the aids should diminish in intensity when obedience begins and cease entirely as soon as the desired result is secured.

Troopers must be thoroughly trained in riding with the **reins in one hand.**

208. The instructor, in teaching troopers to avail themselves of their legs and reins, is governed by the preceding considerations, and from the first watches vigilantly the action of the aids.

The hand should always be kept low. The most thoughtful care should be exercised in the combined application of the aids, so that they may not be opposed to each other in their action; that is, one favoring the intended movement, the other opposing it.

The instructor impresses upon the troopers that their hands must be kept still; that is, free from bobbing up and down, and pulling, and from giving and taking when there is no reason therefor.

Likewise their legs should remain in light contact with the horse's sides and the heels not be used to kick the horse constantly in a nervous manner.

Moreover, that the effects of the aids may be perfectly clear, and that there may be no contradiction between them, **there should never be simultaneous action of the direct reins demanding slowing up or halting and of the legs provoking a forward movement.** This condition is essential for preserving the composure indispensable to the horses of the troop.

209. *Suppling exercises.*—Before the suppling exercises are given at the various gaits they should be thoroughly explained and practiced at the halt.

These exercises, if understood and intelligently applied, produce rapid results.

They are given daily throughout the entire course of instruction of the trooper with a view to—

(*a*) Strengthening the muscles used in riding.

(*b*) Assuring the correct seat.

(*c*) Giving the trooper balance and inspiring him with confidence in his ability to maintain his seat, while inducing general suppleness and relaxation of the body.

(*d*) Accustoming him to keep the thighs constantly pressed against the horse.

(*e*) Leading him to acquire independence in the use of the aids.

The exercises herein indicated are recommended as the most useful, but they are not the only ones in which the troopers may be exercised.

Instructors may add other suitable exercises for the purpose of varying the work and adding to its interest.

210. To execute the suppling exercises a movement is announced and begun without further command. The movement is then continued and repeated until the command: **AS YOU WERE.**

The troopers take the reins in one or both hands, drop and retake them, as necessary, without command.

211. **Flexion of the loins:** At the command **BEND TO THE RIGHT AND LEFT**, the trooper, without deranging the position of the hands or of the part of the body below the waist, slowly inclines the upper part of the body to the right; then, returning slowly through the initial position, makes a corresponding movement to the left.

At the command **STROKE YOUR HORSE ON THE RIGHT FLANK**, sit down in the saddle by pushing the buttocks forward, turn the body at the hips without deranging the position of the legs and, leaning backward but not to the side, place the right hand as low as possible on the horse's flank.

212. **Rotation of the loins:** At the command **STROKE YOUR HORSE ON THE LEFT HAUNCH WITH THE RIGHT HAND**, turn in the saddle without deranging the seat or the position of the thighs and stroke the horse on the left haunch with the right hand, taking care to avoid opening out the left elbow or pulling on the reins.

213. **Rotation of the arm:** At the command **ROTATE THE RIGHT ARM VERTICALLY**, extend the arm upward, palm to the front; then drop the arm to the rear and describe slowly and with uniform movement a vertical circle, keeping the head erect and high while the arm is descending.

214. **Rotation of the thigh:** At the command **ROTATE THE RIGHT THIGH**, remove the knee from the saddle and carry it back, straightening the leg; turn the knee in as much as possible and then, replacing the thigh flat upon the saddle, draw it forward to its normal position with much friction in order to press the thick muscles to the rear and to permit the femur to rest solidly against the saddle.

215. **Raising the thighs:** At the command **RAISE THIGHS**, raise the knees only so much as is necessary to detach the thighs and lower legs from the saddle, and incline the upper part of the body slightly backward. If the trooper is sitting

too far back in the saddle, the instructor directs him to draw himself forward by grasping the pommel.

This position compels the trooper to supple his body in order to keep his seat.

When his equilibrium is well established the trooper gently replaces his thighs upon the saddle, being careful to keep his loins in the same position as during the movement.

This exercise fixes the loins in place and puts them in proper position to maintain the balanced seat. It is executed only at a walk, slow trot, or canter.

216. **Flexion of the leg:** At the command **FLEX THE RIGHT LEG**, bend the leg slowly without deranging the position of the knee or that of the body.

217. **Flexion of the ankle:** At the command **CIRCLE THE RIGHT FOOT**, trace with the toe of the designated foot, by a slow and uniform movement, a vertical circle from outward inwardly, and from below upward, without disturbing the position of the leg. The circle with the right foot is made clockwise, with the left foot contraclockwise.

218. **To vault into the saddle and to the ground:** At the command **VAULT INTO THE SADDLE**, take position as prescribed in (*a*) of paragraph 191, except that the left foot is not inserted in the stirrup; spring upward and forward, bearing the weight upon the extended arms; remain a moment in this position, then throw the right leg, knee bent, over the croup without touching it and sit down lightly in the saddle. Take a rein in each hand.

219. **To vault to the ground:** At the command **VAULT TO THE GROUND**, take position as prescribed in (*a*) of par. 192. Rise upon the extended arms; pass the right leg, knee bent, over the croup without touching it; carry it to the side of the left; remain a moment in this position and come lightly to the ground, the heels joined, the knees bent. Take the position of stand to horse.

220. To vault to the ground and into the saddle without pause the instructor commands: **VAULT TO THE GROUND AND INTO THE SADDLE.**

The troopers are frequently exercised in vaulting into the saddle and to the ground. and to the ground and into the saddle from both sides.

During the early lessons these movements are to be executed only at the halt.

When the instruction is well advanced the recruits will be trained to vault into the saddle and to the ground while the horse is in motion, worked on the longe by the instructor. During the exercises at the trot and gallop the trooper when dismounted keeps pace with the horse at the shoulder by means of the **galloping step**, which he executes (keeping one hand on the withers) by a succession of leaps, rising and alighting with the rise and fall of the forehand of the horse, keeping the left or right foot in advance, according as he is on the left or right side of the horse, and supporting his weight on the balls of the feet. Frequent short rests should be given in order not to strain or unduly fatigue men who are not accustomed to the exercises.

The vault into the saddle while the horse is in motion is executed as prescribed from the halt, except that the trooper is at the galloping step; that he springs forward faced to the front, and that as he drops into his seat he catches against the side with his leg to avoid passing over the horse.

Vaulting to the ground is executed as prescribed from the halt, except that when the legs are joined the trooper presses the leg against the side of the horse to push his body clear and alights on the ground faced to the front and takes the galloping step.

221. To rest: Being at **stand to horse**, the command **rest** is executed as in the school of the trooper dismounted, except that the troopers hold the reins and keep their horses in place.

Being mounted, at the halt, at the command **REST**, or being in march, at the command **ROUTE ORDER**, the men are permitted to turn their heads, to talk, and to make slight changes of position, but not to lounge on their horses or to lose their relative places.

Being at **stand to horse**, the command **AT EASE** is executed as in the school of the trooper dismounted.

Being mounted, at the command **AT EASE** the men are permitted to turn their heads or to make slight changes of position, but preserve silence.

To resume the attention: 1. **Squad,** 2. **ATTENTION.**

Each trooper if dismounted takes the position of **stand to horse**; if mounted, he takes the position of the trooper mounted (par. 198).

222. To dismiss: The troopers being dismounted, in **column of troopers,** at the command **FALL OUT** the leading trooper leads his horse directly to the stable or picket line. The other troopers follow in their existing order at 4 feet distance until near their places in the stable or on the line, when they leave the column and move directly to their respective places.

The troopers being dismounted, in line with intervals (par. 189), at the commands: 1. **By the right (left),** 2. **FALL OUT,** the right trooper leads directly to the stable or picket line. The other troopers follow and complete the execution of the command as indicated above. If the troopers are facing their respective positions on the picket line, the command **FALL OUT** may be given. Each trooper then moves directly to his place. Under the direction of the instructor each trooper removes his equipment, cares for and secures his horse, cleans his equipment, and places the latter as prescribed.

The instructor satisfies himself by inspection that the horses and equipments are properly cared for and that the precautions required on the return from exercise have been observed. The men are then ordered to fall in, marched to the troop parade, and are there dismissed as prescribed in the school of the trooper dismounted.

223. Stand to heel: At this command each man stands at attention 1 yard in rear of and facing his horse.

Second Period, or Work on the Snaffle.

General provisions (par. 224).
The walk (par. 225).
To gather the horse (par. 226).
To move forward (par. 227).
To halt (par. 228).
By the right or left flank (par. 229).
The oblique by trooper (par. 230).
General provisions regarding work on the track (par. 231).
Marching on fixed points and upon a designated objective (par. 232).

Circling (par. 233).
The trot (par. 234).
The gallop (pars. 235–237).
The gallop depart (par. 238).
Changes of gait (par. 239).
To change hands (par. 240).
Suppling exercises with the horse in motion (par. 241).
Posting (par. 242).
Care of horses and saddlery (par. 243).
The use of arms, mounted (pars. 244–255).
Inspection of arms and equipment, mounted (pars. 256–268).

224. General provisions: These exercises, in connection with the suppling exercises, embrace all that is necessary to give the recruit confidence, to make him supple, to give him steadiness in the saddle, and to prepare him to benefit by instruction in the first principles of equitation.

The recruits are disposed on the track behind a leader, or mounted upon well-broken horses held on the longe, or each recruit is accompanied by an old trooper, who holds the horse of the recruit by a strap buckled to the snaffle.

The instructor determines the order in which the various exercises are to be employed, according to the aptitudes and defects of the recruits under his charge. He must keep in mind that these various exercises are for the purpose of teaching the trooper his correct position on horseback at the different gaits and of preparing him to acquire independence in the use of the aids, instruction in which will be given in subsequent lessons.

In order to inspire confidence in the troopers and to enable them as soon as possible to remain long on horseback without weariness they should be permitted to use the stirrups in the first lessons. They are taught to ride without them (first at a walk and then at the faster gaits) only after they have become accustomed to the movement of the horse.

The instructor mounts the recruits outside the riding hall or inclosure as soon as their progress warrants it. Each of the horses may at first be held in check by an old trooper, as previously indicated.

225. The walk: The walk is a gait in which the feet are raised successively and planted in the order in which raised; for example, right front, left hind; left front, right hind.

The walk should be free. Its speed is about 117 yards per minute, or 4 miles per hour.

226. To gather the horse: Having a light pressure of the bit against the horse's mouth and a light feel of the lower legs against his sides, increase the pressure of the lower legs, heels well down, and slightly increase the pressure of the bit against the bars by squeezing the fingers on the reins.

This is called **gathering the horse.** It serves as a signal to attract the attention of the horse and to prepare him to respond promptly to the subsequent application of the aids. The **gather** should be employed at the preparatory command whenever the corresponding command of execution is to involve response on the part of the horse to the application of the aids. This preparatory signal to the horse should always be the same whatever may be the movement that is to be executed and whatever the gait at which the horse may be moving.

227. To move forward: Being at a halt, at the command: 1. **Forward,** gather the horse. At the command: 2. **MARCH,** close the legs (already in contact with the horse) with a quick, sharp pressure, the hand remaining passive (par. 202). If the horse does not respond at once by moving forward continue until the horse moves forward at a walk (par. 239) a succession of similar leg pressures, each quick, distinct, and given with a degree of force graduated to the sensitiveness of the horse. A long continued squeezing effect with the legs is particularly to be avoided.

228. To halt: Being at the walk, at the command: 1. **Squad,** gather the horse. At the command: 2. **HALT,** sit well down in the saddle and carry the weight of the body upward and backward and act by the **direct reins** until the horse stops (pars. 203, 207).

229. By the right flank: 1. **By the right flank,** 2. **MARCH.** At the first command gather the horse. At the second command carry both hands to the right until the horse has turned through an arc of 90°, and then replace the hands and move straight in the new direction. During the movement the legs maintain impulsion and hold the horse's body so that it follows the curve on which he is turning; that is, if the horse tends to carry his haunches to the inside of the curve, the action of the inside leg should predominate; if he tends to

carry his haunches to the outside of the curve, then the action of the outside leg should predominate.

When the trooper holds the reins in both hands he makes use simultaneously of the **leading rein** and the **bearing rein.** With the reins in one hand he makes use of the **bearing rein** only.

The action of the reins in turning is governed by the principles explained in paragraphs 204 and 205. The trooper carries the hands in the direction toward which he wishes to turn and displaces them only to the extent necessary. Eventually the turn should be made on the arc of a circle whose radius is 2 yards at the walk, 4 yards at the trot, and 6 yards at the gallop .

230. The **oblique by trooper** involves a change of direction of 45° to the right or left, executed by each trooper. The commands are: 1. **Troopers, right (left) oblique,** 2. **MARCH.**

The movement is executed as in par. 229, except that each trooper turns his horse through an arc of only 45°. To resume the original direction of march by similar means: 1. **Forward,** 2. **MARCH.**

231. Provisions regarding work on the track.—The trooper is said to march to the **right hand** or to the **left hand** according as he has his right or left side toward the inner side of the track.

At the command **TAKE THE TRACK TO THE RIGHT HAND,** each trooper directs his horse straight toward the track, and arriving there turns toward the right.

The troopers are distributed over the whole circumference of the track. They endeavor to keep their horses collected and moving straight to the front, and to preserve a free and even gait.

The instructor observes that the troopers maintain the gait ordered while turning at the corners and that they approach the corners closely at the walk and trot; he permits a larger radius at the gallop.

To give oral instruction to all the troopers at the same time the instructor may command: **RIDE IN.** The troopers, moving at the gait at which they were riding, or at the designated gait, and by the shortest line, group themselves about the instructor. To resume the ride, the instructor commands: **CLOSE ON (SUCH TROOPER).** The trooper designated (by name) takes the track and gait as indicated by the instructor.

The other troopers move by the shortest line and place themselves on the track, one behind the other, with 4 feet distance from head to croup.

As soon as the collective instruction is sufficiently advanced the commands and methods indicated in the school of the squad may be employed to group the troopers near the instructor and to cause them to take the track again.

As soon as the troopers understand the principles of controlling their horses, the instructor frequently commands: **RIDE AT WILL.** The troopers scatter out in the interior of the riding hall or rectangle or over a larger designated area out of doors, and riding at the gait ordered execute the exercises on their own initiative.

When troopers meet each keeps to the right.

There should be much work on the track without regard to distance between troopers in which the troopers are absolutely independent of each other, the only obligation being to maintain the gait and to march to the hand directed when on the track. If the column becomes crowded, individual troopers are permitted to turn out at will and take the track at a convenient place on the opposite side. They should move straight across the hall, maintaining the gait.

The commands do not involve immediate compliance. Each trooper conforms to them when his place on the track and the state of preparation of his horse puts him in proper position to execute steadily the movement directed. Each should choose his ground so as to avoid interfering with his neighbors.

232. Marching upon fixed points and upon a designated objective: The instructor also exercises the troopers in riding the horses at a designated gait upon a distant object. This exercise is begun as soon as possible and is continued during the whole course of instruction and combined progressively with the jumping of obstacles and the use of arms. To assist in the earlier phases of this instruction distinctive marks are placed on the walls of the riding hall or outside the rectangle to serve as points of direction. Proficiency in this exercise is essential to the satisfactory execution of collective movements, and instruction in it must be correspondingly thorough.

233. Circling: The troopers being on the track, at the command **IN CIRCLE**, the leader, followed by the other troopers rides on a circle between the two tracks.

At the command **TAKE THE TRACK**, the leader takes the track to the hand toward which he is marching, and is followed by the other troopers.

234. The trot: The trot is a gait in which the horse springs from one diagonally disposed pair of feet to the other; between the beats all the feet are in the air. The rate of the maneuvering trot is 8 miles per hour or 235 yards per minute. For the purposes of individual instruction the rate may be reduced to 6 miles per hour by the command: 1. **Slow trot**, 2. **MARCH.** At the command: 1. **Trot**, 2. **MARCH**, the rate of 8 miles per hour is resumed.

The trot alternating with the walk is the gait best adapted for long road marches.

When trotting without stirrups the trooper endeavors to reduce the shock by suppling his back; when with stirrups, by posting.

235. *The gallop.*—The gallop is the most rapid of the gaits. It must not be used unnecessarily over long distances, particularly on hard roads and when the saddle is packed. However, when the rapidity of the regulation trot is not sufficient the trooper out of ranks should take the gallop in preference to increasing the speed of the trot.

236. The varieties of the gallop are:

The **maneuvering gallop**, which is at the rate of 12 miles per hour, or 352 yards per minute.

The **extended gallop** which is at the rate of 16 miles per hour, or 469 yards per minute.

The **school gallop**, which is at the rate of about 8 miles per hour.

The horse is said to gallop with the right lead when the right fore is planted in front of the left fore and the right hind in front of the left hind.

When the feet are planted in the inverse order the horse is said to gallop with the left lead.

The gallop is marked by three beats and a period of suspension.

If the horse be galloping with the right lead, the first beat is marked by the left hind foot, the second by the nearly

simultaneous placing of the right hind the left fore feet, and the third by the placing of the right fore foot.

In galloping with the left lead the beats are right hind, left hind and right fore, left fore.

A horse gallops **true** when he gallops with the right lead in turning to the right and with the left lead in turning to the left.

He gallops **false** when he gallops with the left lead in turning to the right, or conversely.

A horse is **disunited** when he gallops with the right lead with his fore feet and with the left lead with his hind feet, or conversely.

237. The gallop should be begun on the circle because the horse thus starts off more calmly and the trooper is enabled to regulate the pace by describing a circle of greater or less radius.

As soon as the horse breaks into the gallop the trooper moves in cadence with his horse. The back and legs unite in the rhythm of the gait, the hands accompany gently and without exaggeration the movements of the head and the neck.

During the gallop the command **at ease** is frequently given. The troopers execute the suppling exercises which have been indicated as necessary in each case; they abandon themselves completely to the motion of the horse and thus acquire ease and flexibility. Prolonged periods at the gallop on calm and free-moving horses are most favorable for easily obtaining this result.

238. The gallop depart: The aids used to cause the horse to take the gallop with the right lead (par. 236) are: Left direct rein, to restrain the left shoulder; left leg a little in rear of the girth, to push the haunches a little to the right; weight slightly on the left buttock; right leg on the girth; right rein taut to prevent bending the neck too much to the left; both legs thus placed used vigorously to push the horse into the gallop. Corresponding aids are used to obtain the gallop depart with the left lead.

With some old horses that have been habitually galloped with one lead it will be very difficult to get the other lead.

In these cases, or when time is too limited to practice proper methods, the following rough method will serve the purpose:

If the horse habitually gallops with lead left and a lead right is desired, take a good extended trot on the right hand, approach the knee guard of the riding hall at an angle of about 45°, with the horse well up against the bit, and just as the horse reaches the guard kick hard with the left heel and let him move along the track to the right at the gallop. In all probability the lead right will be had; if so, maintain it for some time, using the correct aids. A few of these lessons will be sufficient.

239. Changes of gait: To pass from the halt or the walk to the trot or the gallop, the means prescribed for passing from the halt to the walk are employed and continued until the desired gait is taken (par. 227).

To pass from the gallop to the trot, the trot to the walk, or to halt, the means prescribed for passing from the walk to the halt are employed and continued until the desired gait is taken or the horse has stopped (par. 228).

The commands are: 1. **Trot**, 2. **MARCH**; 1. **Gallop**, 2. **MARCH**; 1. **Walk**, 2. **MARCH**; and 1. **Squad**, 2. **HALT.**

Changes of gait are habitually made progressively, the walk being taken from the halt, the trot from the walk, the gallop from the trot, and vice versa. For instruction purposes and when necessary in service an increase or decrease of gait may be made more abruptly.

A change from the halt to the walk, from the walk to the trot, from the trot to the gallop, or vice versa, is to be understood when reference is made in these regulations to a change of gait of one degree.

240. To change hands: At the command **CHANGE HANDS**, each trooper after having passed the corner and marched a horse length on the long side directs himself toward the diagonal corner so as to take the track to the opposite hand and at about two horse lengths from the corner. Troopers pass those going in an opposite direction by keeping to the right.

241. Suppling exercises with the horse in motion: The exercises which have been taught at the halt are repeated at the different gaits, except as indicated.

To put the squad in march the instructor designates a trooper to act as leader and causes him to take the track; he then causes the recruits to take their places in column of troopers behind the leader.

The instructor limits his explanations to the essential principles for putting the horse in motion and stopping him.

The troopers are restricted to letting their horses follow those in front.

The instructor is especially careful that the movement of one part of the body does not react on any other part; for example, that an exercise of the right arm does not disturb the left arm nor the position of loins or legs.

Any movement is proper which engages the trooper's attention and leads him to forget that he is on horseback and thereby brings about relaxation.

The end desired is attained by the frequency and variety of the exercises; the instructor must carefully avoid prolonging a movement to weariness, which inevitably brings on rigidity.

He must likewise avoid any movement that would result in lifting the buttocks from the saddle or in sinking the loins and hollowing the back.

At first the gait should be the walk or the slow trot. The 8-mile trot should not be used. The gallop should be employed very early in the instruction; it is the most favorable gait for suppling the loins.

As soon as the troopers have acquired a fair security of seat at the trot and have grown accustomed to a fast gait the instructor begins to train them at the gallop. The first lessons are given on a large circle so that the horses will have less tendency to pull. The troopers retain their stirrups until they have gained confidence. The instructor causes them to abandon the stirrups when he believes that sufficient progress has been made.

As soon as the instructor causes the trooper to take the reins he teaches him to keep touch with the mouth of the horse, while leaving the horse the free use of his neck. To do this it is necessary for the trooper to follow with his hands the movements of the horse's neck.

The cadence at the increased gaits is easy to follow with the reins lightly held. In a short time the hand follows instinctively the movement of the neck.

Constant effort should be made to overcome stiffness of the arms and shoulders, which is the usual cause of a heavy hand.

242. Posting: Posting is habitually employed when the troopers have stirrups and understand their use.

It is executed as follows: The horse moving at a trot, the trooper inclines the upper part of his body forward, then supporting himself on the stirrups while maintaining the clinging of his knees he rises under the impulsion of the horse, maintains his position detached from the saddle while the succeeding impulse is produced, again sits down in the saddle, and continues in this way, avoiding alternate impulses.

At the beginning the mechanism of posting is made easier to the trooper by causing him to stroke the horse's neck or to grasp a lock of the mane with either hand, thus determining the forward inclination of the body.

Its proper execution requires that the seat be raised moderately, that contact with the saddle be resumed gently and without shock, that the full support of the stirrup be obtained while keeping the lower leg steady, that the ankle joint be supple, and that the heel be kept lower than the toe.

243. Care of horses and saddlery: The recruits will be given talks and practical illustrations in every phase of the care of horses and the care of saddlery. This in addition to their daily attention to those subjects as a matter of routine.

244. *The use of arms, mounted.*—During the period in which the instruction in the school of the trooper is held, there must be thorough instruction in the use of arms mounted. After the first few drills there should be daily instruction in some phase of this important part of the trooper's training. Progress in the more advanced steps of this instruction must necessarily depend upon the trooper's progress in horsemanship; but by making the dismounted instruction thorough and keeping it well in advance of the corresponding parts of the mounted program, many difficulties will be obviated and much time saved. Success with the pistol and saber will be dependent upon that familiarity with their use that can be gained only by daily practice extending over a considerable period. The dismounted instruction already prescribed in connection with the use of the weapons must be supplemented by thorough mounted work at all gaits, when passing obstacles, etc. The trooper must learn to control his horse thoroughly with one

hand while carrying and using his weapon in the other; he must learn to handle his weapon mounted with a minimum of danger to himself, his comrades, or his horse. The principal drill on at least one day of each week during the entire period devoted to the **school of the trooper** should ordinarily be devoted to the above instruction, thus supplementing and testing the results accomplished in the shorter daily drills. At this weekly drill the troopers should habitually appear fully armed and equipped, the saddles being packed as for field service.

The employment of the saber mounted is taught as prescribed in the **Saber Exercise**; the use of the pistol in firing mounted, as prescribed in the **Small-Arms Firing Manual.**

245. Manual of the Saber, Mounted: The saber suspended from the *left* side of the saddle—

1. **Draw,** 2. **SABER.** Pass the right hand over the reins and execute with it rapidly what is prescribed for drawing the saber on foot; place the pommel near the hip and resting on top of the thigh, flat of the blade against the point of the shoulder. This is the position of **carry saber, mounted.**

246. The saber suspended from the *right* side of the saddle—

1. **Draw.** Turn the head to the right without deranging the position of the body and glance toward the hilt; engage the right wrist in the saber knot; pull the hilt forward; seize the grip in the full hand, nails to the right; draw the blade 6 inches from the scabbard, and look to the front.

2. **SABER.** Draw the saber as prescribed on foot and take the position of carry saber.

247. The troopers are also exercised in drawing the saber as quickly as possible at the single command: **DRAW SABER.**

248. To return saber: The scabbard suspended from the *left* side of the saddle—

1. **Return.** Execute as prescribed on foot.

2. **SABER.** Execute as prescribed on foot, supporting the back of the blade against the left forearm until the point is engaged in the scabbard.

This command is given only at a halt or when marching at a walk.

249. The scabbard suspended on the right—

1. **Return.** Execute as prescribed on foot.

2. **SABER.** Carry the wrist opposite the right shoulder; lower the blade to the right of the horse's neck; let the grip

turn in the hand so that the hand grasps the guard at the pommel, back of the hand up; turn the head to the right and fix the eyes on the opening of the scabbard; raise the hand; insert the blade and push it home; disengage the wrist from the saber knot; and turn the head to the front.

When the saber is carried on the right the return saber is executed, so far as possible, at the halt.

250. Inspection saber and **present saber** are executed as when dismounted.

251. *Guard.*—Thrust the feet home in the stirrups and crouch slightly in the saddle, bending forward from the waist. Otherwise as explained dismounted.

In the charge in close order the trooper (in single rank) assumes the position indicated in par. 297, the body almost in a horizontal line over the horse's neck, the arm fully extended to the front, the saber, in the full grasp, in prolongation of the arm, guard up, finger nails to the right, point at the height of the eye. When difficult ground is encountered the trooper takes the position of **guard** while passing it.

If charging in double rank, the front-rank troopers conform to the positions indicated for single rank. Those troopers who are in the rear rank or who are directly in rear of others, take the position of **port saber.**

In the mêlée the troopers take the position of guard toward the nearest enemy, crouching slightly in the saddle and alive to all possible attacks.

MANUAL OF THE PISTOL, MOUNTED.

252. The modifications of the dismounted manual, incident to the employment of the pistol mounted are explained in the corresponding paragraphs of the **Manual of the Pistol, Dismounted** (pars. 145–156).

THE RIFLE.

(For troops armed with the Cavalry Equipment, Model of 1912.)

253. Before standing to horse the trooper attaches his rifle to his belt by passing the muzzle up through the belt ring and engaging the snap hook of the belt ring into the trigger guard.

Being at stand to horse, upon any preparatory command, except for mounting or securing horses, unsling the rifle from the belt ring and take the position of order arms, removing the snaffle reins from the horse's neck and passing the right arm through them if necessary.

If a command to secure horses is given, link or couple first and then unsling the rifle.

To mount, proceed as without the rifle. When seated in the saddle, grasp the rifle at the bolt with the left hand, barrel to the front, place the butt of the rifle in the bucket, steadying the latter with the left foot if necessary and take the position of the trooper mounted.

To dismount: At the preparatory command, seize the rifle at the bolt with the left hand, give it a quick, forcible pull, lifting the butt from the bucket, and let the rifle hang from the belt.

(For troops armed with equipment corresponding to the McClellan saddle.)

254. At **stand to horse**, the rifle is held on the left side of the trooper in a position corresponding to **order arms** (par. 93), as modified by substituting the word **left** for **right** wherever the latter occurs.

In leading out, and on all occasions when the trooper leads his horse for short distances, the rifle is carried at the **left trail** (par. 108) unless otherwise prescribed.

255. In mounting, the rifle is inserted in the scabbard after the trooper steps back opposite the girth and before he takes the reins in his right hand (par. 191).

On dismounting, each trooper, after placing the bights of the reins on the horse's neck, and before stepping forward to take the position of stand to horse (par. 192), takes the rifle from the scabbard and assumes the **left trail.** A modification of this provision applies when the trooper dismounts for inspection. The rifle is never carried on the saddle when the trooper is dismounted, except as specially authorized at inspections, with the equipment corresponding to the McClellan saddle (par. 262).

256. *Inspection of arms and equipment, mounted.*—It is assumed that the troopers before being formally inspected mounted and under arms, will have advanced in elementary collective instruction to a point when they can be formed and

aligned as a mounted squad (par. 350). Should this not be the case, the instructor will place the troopers in line with intervals in advance of the inspection. References to the guide and to alignment will then be disregarded and the command **front** will be omitted.

The inspection is described below upon the assumption that all arms are inspected. The inspection of pistols is explained for both the mounted and dismounted execution. The necessary modification in case the inspection of any weapon be omitted is indicated in par. 266.

257. When arms are inspected mounted they are always inspected in the order: Saber, pistol. When inspected dismounted they are always inspected in the order: Rifle, pistol. Sabers are not inspected dismounted, nor are rifles inspected mounted. Pistols may be inspected either mounted or dismounted.

258. The troopers being mounted and fully armed and in line: 1. **Prepare for inspection,** 2. **MARCH,** 3. **FRONT.**

At the second command all align themselves on the guide. The inspector, having verified the alignment, takes position 3 yards to the right and front of the right trooper, facing to the left, and commands: **FRONT,** followed by: 1. **Draw,** 2. **SABER** (par. 165).

259. If it is not intended to inspect the pistols mounted, the inspector cautions **PISTOLS WILL NOT BE INSPECTED MOUNTED,** and approaches the right of the rank.

260. As the inspector approaches, the first two troopers execute the first motion of inspection saber (par. 170), the first trooper, as the inspector comes in front of him, executes the second and third motions of inspection saber; the second trooper, as the inspector comes in front of him, executes the second and third motions of inspection saber, the first trooper at this instant resuming the carry and the third trooper executing the first motion of inspection saber. The first trooper then returns saber. As the inspector comes in front of the other troopers the movements are executed successively as just explained.

261. The inspector, having completed the inspection of sabers, passes in rear from the left to the right of the rank. As he approaches the right of the rank the first two troopers **(in the absence of indication to the contrary)** (par. 259) exe-

cute **inspection pistol** (par. 148). Each of the other troopers, in order from right to left, successively executes **inspection pistol** in time to complete the execution just before the inspector arrives in front of him. Each trooper executes **return pistol** as the inspector passes to the trooper next on his left.

262. To inspect the rifles, to inspect the pistols dismounted, or to inspect the dress and equipment of the squad more minutely, the inspector dismounts the squad without forming rank.

Troopers when dismounted following the command **prepare for inspection** take a special position; and a special exception is made in this case to the rule requiring the rifle (if not slung) to be taken from the scabbard upon dismounting (par. 255). Upon dismounting while at **prepare for inspection** each trooper takes the snaffle reins off the horse's neck, passes the right arm through the reins (the bight of the reins resting on the shoulder) and takes a position similar to **stand to horse.** The rifle is not unslung (or removed from the scabbard) unless it has been specially designated for inspection; it is then reslung or returned to the scabbard as soon as its inspection is completed.

A trooper dismounted at **prepare for inspection,** if his right hand be free, grasps the reins as in **stand to horse.** The snaffle reins once taken from the neck as above are not replaced until the first command for mounting.

The above position is habitually terminated by the first command for mounting or by **stand to horse.**

263. If the inspector wishes to inspect the *arms* after dismounting, he cautions, *immediately following the commands for dismounting:* **RIFLES AND PISTOLS** (*or* **RIFLES,** *or* **PISTOLS) WILL BE INSPECTED.**

Each trooper at once unslings his rifle (or takes it from the scabbard) and resumes his position similar to **stand to horse,** his rifle at the **order,** the reins as described in par. 262.

264. As the inspector approaches the right of the rank the trooper on the right executes **inspection arms** (par. 112).

The inspector takes the piece, grasping it with his right hand just above the rear sight, the man dropping his hands. The inspector inspects the piece, and, with the hand and piece in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man,

who takes it with the left hand at the balance, executes **port arms**, and slings the rifle or places it in the scabbard, according to his equipment.

As the inspector returns the piece the next man executes **inspection arms**, and so on through the troop.

Should the piece be inspected without handling, each man proceeds as above as soon as the captain passes to the next man.

265. As the inspector approaches the right of the rank of odd numbers, after completing the inspection of the rifles of the even numbers, the first two troopers of the rank execute **inspection pistol.**

To inspect the pistol closely the inspector grasps it with his left hand above the trooper's hand, makes such examination as is desired, and hands the pistol back to the trooper in the same position as that in which the inspector took the weapon. The trooper takes the pistol with the right hand as in **inspection pistol** and executes **return pistol.** Should the pistols be inspected without handling, each man executes **return pistol** as the inspector passes to the next trooper.

266. If no indication be given for the inspection of rifles they *remain slung or in the scabbard,* according to the equipment carried. If only rifles are ordered inspected, pistols are not presented for inspection and rifles are slung or returned to the scabbard as soon as inspected.

If only pistols are ordered inspected, they are presented by the two troopers on the right when the inspector approaches the rank the first time after dismounting.

267. During the inspection of arms the inspector observes the appearance of the men, horses, equipment, and clothing.

After the inspection of arms is completed he makes such further inspection of equipment, clothing, etc., as he may consider desirable. During this part of the inspection the troopers may be permitted to stand **at ease.**

268. If an inspection of arms of a detailed character be made in connection with a *dismounted* formation it is conducted by the above commands and in accordance with the above methods in so far as applicable. Rifles are presented for inspection as described without special indication when the

inspector approaches the rank after commanding **FRONT** (par. 258). Except when rifles are slung as provided in the next sentence, each trooper executes **order arms** as soon as his rifle is returned to him. Should the troopers be armed with both rifle and pistol, each trooper slings his rifle as soon as inspected if the equipment in use so permits; otherwise the rifles are stacked (par. 115) by command after being inspected. The pistols are then inspected, after which **take arms** (par. 116) is executed before the troopers are dismissed.

Third Period, or Work on the Double Snaffle.

General provisions (par. 269).
To adjust the double snaffle (par. 271).
The about (par. 272).
Broken lines (par. 273).
Serpentines (par. 274).
The figure of eight (par. 275).
Circling individually (par. 276).
The half turn (par. 277).
The half turn in reverse (par. 278).
Increasing and decreasing the pace (par. 279).
To back and halt (par. 280).
Use of the aids (par. 281).
To leave the ranks (par. 282).
The false gallop (par. 283).
Jumping obstacles (par. 284–289).
Exercises on varied ground (par. 290, 291).
Employment of the spur (par. 292).
Work at fixed distances (par. 293).
Changing the diagonal in posting (par. 294).
Work on long lines (par. 295–298).
Bit and bridoon (par. 299).
Duty in the ranks of the troop (par. 300).

269. General provisions: When the troopers have become familiar with the movements of the horse at each gait and have begun to find and keep a seat in the saddle, the instructor advances then to work on the double snaffle for the purpose of teaching them the use of the aids, increasing their confidence and suppleness, and confirming them in their seats.

The exercises indicated for the work on the double snaffle depend for their effect upon very simple actions, the only ones the recruits need be taught.

It is important that in these exercises the recruits ride only docile and well-trained horses.

The instructor returns frequently to the suppling exercises and causes each trooper to execute during rests the movements that he has indicated to him as especially adapted to correct his faults of position.

The horses are equipped with the double snaffle bit and bare saddles and, at first, the troopers are without spurs.

The exercises are conducted in the riding hall or outside in a rectangle, the corners of which are marked by elevated and conspicuous objects. These rectangles are of sufficient dimensions to enable the troopers to exercise with freedom while remaining under the eye of the instructor and within reach of his voice. The instructor changes the ground as soon as the tracks are worn to the extent that the horses follow them mechanically. He avoids placing the rectangle parallel to adjacent rectangles, roads, paths, or fences so that from the first the trooper is compelled to direct his horse.

270. The troopers are usually marched to and from the riding hall in column of twos or fours. The instructor avails himself of the opportunity to instruct them in the movements indicated in the school of the squad.

271. To adjust the double snaffle: The bits should be adjusted and the reins held, etc., as explained for the bit and bridoon (*see* par. 302), the snaffle corresponding to the curb being attached to the outside cheek pieces of the bridle.

The instructor will show the recruits how to hold the reins with both hands, to change into the left hand and the right hand, and how to use the two bits for relaxing the jaw by vibrations and divisions of support (par. 958).

272. The about: At the command: 1. **Troopers right (left) about,** 2. **MARCH,** each trooper turns his horse until he finds himself facing in the opposite direction and then moves to his new front.

Eventually the turn should be made on the arc of a circle whose radius is 2 yards at a walk, 4 yards at a trot, and 6 yards at a gallop.

273. Broken lines: The broken line consists of departures from and returns to the long side of the track by obliques. The command is: **BROKEN LINE, ONCE (TWICE, or THREE TIMES).** As the trooper enters the long side he leaves the track by an oblique and, having marched the indicated distance, returns to the track by an oblique in the opposite direction. This is repeated the number of times specified; at the other end of the long side the trooper retakes the track.

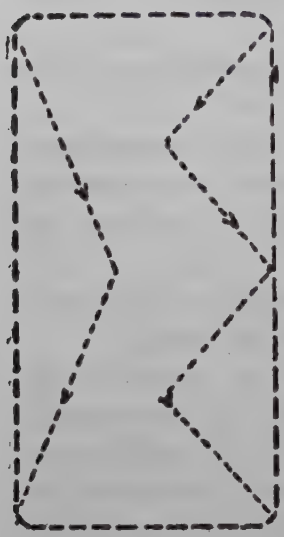


FIG. 25, par. 273.

This exercise has for its object teaching the rider to make rapid changes out of doors, at the walk, trot, or gallop, especially at the latter gait. It leads to work on serpentines, and eventually to figures of eight at the gallop without changing the lead. (Fig. 25.)

274. Serpentines: The serpentine consists of successive abouts executed perpendicularly to the track and tangent to each other, as indicated in the figure.

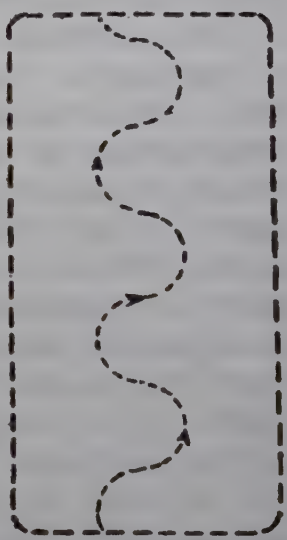


FIG. 26, par. 274.

The rider causes the horse to make the turns slightly on the haunches, or slightly on the forehand, or with the body naturally following the curvature of the line, at the walk and slow trot, and eventually, when well advanced in the use of the aids, at the gallop without changing the lead. (Fig. 26.)

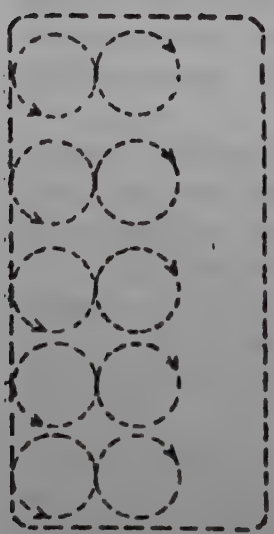


FIG. 27, par. 275.

275. The figure of eight: This exercise consists in describing the figure eight, at first perpendicular to the long sides of the track and tangent to them. Later, with dimensions progressively reduced, as the riders become more skillful in the use of the aids. (Fig. 27.)

276. Circling individually: At the command: 1. **Troopers circle to the right (left),** 2. **MARCH,** each trooper describes, in accordance with the principles explained in par. 229, a complete circle tangent to the track, with a radius less than half the length of the short side, and retakes the track at the point where he left it.

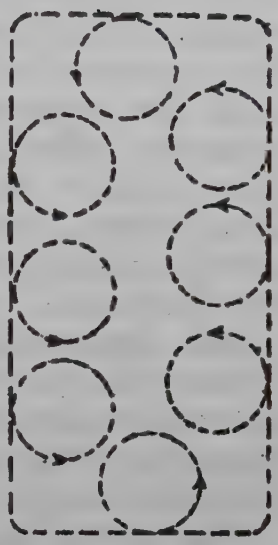


FIG. 28, par. 276.

The trooper moves his horse **true on the circle,** to the right hand, for example, by the means prescribed for moving by the right flank; **slightly on the forehand,** by using the right direct rein and right leg; **slightly on the haunches,** by using the left indirect rein of opposition in front of the withers and left leg.

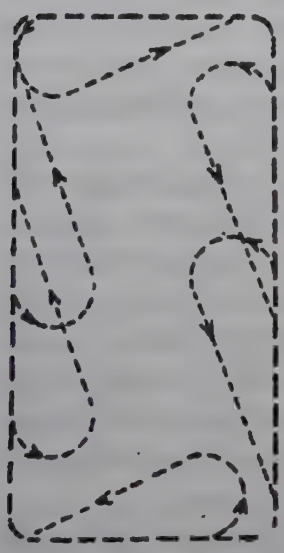


FIG. 29, par. 277.

The first is the usual means of turning; the second, as the radius of the circle is reduced, leads eventually to the about on the forehand; the third, to the about on the haunches. The second must not be used at the gallop. (Fig. 28.)

277. The half turn: The half turn consists of an **about** followed by an oblique.

Being on the track to the left hand, at the command: 1. **Half turn,** 2. **MARCH,** the rider describes an about and then by an oblique regains the track.

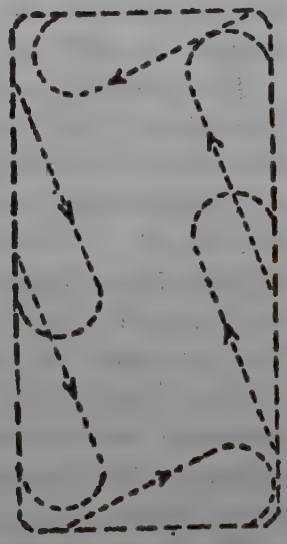


FIG. 30, par. 278.

At the moment the horse starts the about the rider accentuates the pressure of the right leg and right indirect rein of opposition in front of the withers, which should have the effect of swinging the shoulders about the haunches. The horse then turns slightly on the haunches. The limit, eventually gained as the radius is decreased, is the about on the haunches. (Fig. 29.)

278. The half turn in reverse: The half turn in reverse consists of an oblique, followed by an about.

Being on the track to the left hand, at the command: **1. Half turn in reverse, 2. MARCH**, the rider places his horse on the oblique and then, after moving in that direction 5 or 6 yards, by an about to the right regains the track.

At the moment the horse starts the about the rider accentuates the effect of the right leg and right direct rein, which should have the effect of pushing the haunches to the left. The horse then turns slightly on the forehand. The limit, eventually gained as the radius is decreased, is the about on the forehand. (Fig. 30.)

279. Increasing and decreasing the pace: To increase or decrease the pace or speed of the gait the trooper employs the means prescribed for passing from the halt to the walk or from the walk to the halt to the extent necessary to obtain the desired result.

The horse in extending the walk increases the amplitude of the movement of his head and neck to the same degree as he increases the length of his step; he accelerates the movement of the head and neck as he increases the cadence of his step.

The trooper aids these movements by yielding the hand and giving the horse greater freedom of movement. He maintains contact with the bit so that he can exercise a gradual restraining influence with the direct reins when he feels the horse is about to spring into the trot.

To decrease the pace at a walk the trooper makes use of the same aids as in coming to the halt. The step is shortened and the cadence decreased.

To increase or decrease the pace at the trot the same means are used. The exercises in increasing and decreasing the pace afford excellent practice for the trooper in the use of the aids and good training for the horse in obeying them; but the trooper out of ranks should use only the regulation gaits.

The instructor may cause the speed of the gallop to be increased or decreased in the riding hall, but the maneuvering gallop and the extended gallop only should be used in work on long lines.

To increase or decrease the pace at any time the caution may be given: **FASTER PACE** or **SLOWER PACE.** The commands: 1. **Walk**, 1. **Slow trot**, 1. **Trot**, 1. **Gallop**, 2. **MARCH**, indicate, respectively, the walk as described in par. 225, the slow trot as described in par. 234, the maneuvering trot as

described in par. 234, and the maneuvering gallop as described in par. 236. The extended gallop and the school gallop (par. 236) are taken at the respective cautions: **EXTENDED GALLOP** and **SCHOOL GALLOP.**

280. To back and halt: 1. Backward, 2. MARCH. At the first command gather the horse as usual (par. 226); at the second command use the direct reins until the horse commences to back, then relax the fingers and continue to use the direct reins intermittently to cause the horse to continue to back.

At the command: 1. **Squad,** 2. **HALT,** cease the action of the hands.

The trooper carefully avoids raising the horse's head. An elevated position of the head, by constraining the muscles of the loins, renders the backward movement much more difficult for the horse.

281. *Use of the aids:* The training of the trooper in the use of the aids is effected partly by changes of gait, partly by increase and decrease of pace, and partly by the exercises herein described. When the troopers have learned to use the aids correctly, the instructor causes them to execute changes of direction combined with changes of gait.

282. To leave the ranks: The instructor forms the troopers in line near one end of the riding hall. To do this he may caution: **FORM LINE** (par. 350). The troopers move by the shortest line at the walk, or at the gait ordered, and form in line 3 yards in rear of the instructor.

The instructor then causes them to leave the rank individually by calling them by name.

The designated trooper, gathering his horse and avoiding abrupt means, rides quietly to the front and moves forward on a line perpendicular to the front of the squad. He takes the track on reaching it, to the hand designated, or halts at a designated spot.

This movement can be executed while the squad is marching at any gait. When the squad is halted, the trooper always leaves the rank at the walk, the faster gait, if one is taken, not being begun until the horse has completely left the rank.

The troopers are also practiced in going through the rank both in the direction of its march and in the opposite direction.

The instructor avoids forming the squad parallel to the sides of the riding hall or on well-marked lines. He thus inculcates in the trooper the habit of placing himself in the direction of his leader and then directing his horse independently.

283. The false gallop: This exercise, of so much value in training remounts and so constantly used in drill and service, should be practiced from the beginning—on wide turns at first, and at last on serpentines, large circles, and figures of eight of small dimensions. The false gallop is maintained by the same aids as produce the gallop with that lead.

If the gallop becomes disunited, the trooper must return to the trot and then again to the gallop *true*.

284. *Jumping obstacles.*—The object of this instruction is to train the trooper to clear obstacles of every nature, so that he may when riding alone or with other men over a route presenting difficulties be able to continue an uninterrupted advance at any gait upon the objective in view.

Jumping is also an excellent means of confirming the seat, increasing the pliancy of the hand and arm, strengthening the legs, and developing boldness and steadiness.

The work over obstacles should be begun early and continued during the whole course of instruction.

Progress must be regulated prudently and methodically; undue haste is liable to destroy the confidence of the trooper and the willingness of the horse.

This instruction comprises two distinct parts: (*a*) The gymnastics of the jump; (*b*) conducting the horse to, over, and beyond the obstacle.

285. The gymnastics of the jump: The troopers are familiarized with the gymnastics of jumping by first placing bars on the ground across the track and later low obstacles about 10 feet apart and causing the troopers to ride their horses over them without concerning themselves with the conduct of the horse. The instructor endeavors in this exercise to cause the troopers to maintain their seats and remain in their saddles by the suppleness of their backs, and above all to keep their hands low and passive, thus permitting the horse to use his head and neck in keeping balance.

The horse that in going over an obstacle has the free use of his head and neck jumps willingly, calmly, and without

fatigue. The trooper endeavors to keep in unison with his horse whatever changes in rhythm or speed the latter may make.

The jump is made as follows: On arriving near the obstacle grasp the horse with the legs, keeping the body upright, the hands low and passive; at the moment the horse rises bend the upper part of the body forward at the waist, the buttocks remaining in the saddle; as the horse alights sit well down in the saddle without displacing the hands.

During this work the suppling exercises may be practiced with excellent results.

286. Conducting the horse to the obstacle, etc.: When the troopers are sufficiently familiar with the gymnastics of jumping and with the use of the aids the instructor teaches them to conduct their horses over obstacles by causing them to jump, individually, obstacles placed off the track.

In general, the horse should jump at the gait at which he approaches the obstacle.

On approaching the obstacle the trooper selects the point at which he wishes to jump and conducts his horse straight toward it, the reins separated, the legs close to maintain the forward movement.

If the horse hesitates on approaching the obstacle, anticipate his resistance by stimulating him vigorously with the legs.

If the horse avoids the obstacle, stop him, quiet him, then place him directly in front of the obstacle, and at a suitable distance from the latter, and urge him with the legs to make him jump.

If the horse stops short in front of the obstacle, ride back and put him at it again.

If the horse halts or gets out of hand, pull him up without, however, hampering him when he takes the leap.

All horses lacking in calmness or willingness should be put back in training over small obstacles.

The reins must be long but taut before, during, and after the jump—long in order that the horse may have free use of his head and forehand; taut that he may have constant support and guidance without jerks on the mouth.

If necessary, but only when necessary, the trooper must let the reins slide through the fingers.

287. Jumping is first practiced with stirrups. When the troopers have become accustomed to it, have confidence in themselves, and are sufficiently sure of their hands, they are made to jump frequently without stirrups in order that they may acquire a secure seat and avoid being thrown when deprived of the habitual means of support.

288. Obstacles for jumping are of two classes:

(*a*) Broad jumps—those which require a leap of breadth only, such as ditches, water jumps, etc.

(*b*) High jumps—those which require a leap of height, such as hedges, fences, walls, etc.

The dimensions of the obstacles are increased in proportion to the progress of the troopers. They should be limited to 8 feet for broad jumps and 3 feet for high jumps.

Artificial obstacles should have a sufficient width of front to prevent the horses avoiding them easily.

High jumps are as a rule taken at a gallop of moderate speed and broad jumps at an extended gallop. For broad jumps it is important that the speed should be increased as the obstacle is approached.

289. The troopers are prepared for jumping in formed bodies by jumping first in pairs, then in fours, separated by considerable distances.

The preservation in this exercise of the distances separating the groups, while not habitually enforced in service, is a means of verifying the individual training of men and horses.

290. *Exercises on varied ground.*—The exercises on varied ground have for their object the training of the troopers in riding their horses across country, in making them familiar with obstacles which they will encounter in campaign, and in regulating their gait so as to husband the strength of their horses in covering great distances.

This work is begun at an early period of the training; its difficult features, such as jumping obstacles, are graduated to fit the progress of the trooper, the end being to increase his confidence and skill.

The instructor conducts his class across fields, through woods, and in general over the most varied terrain at his disposal.

He may divide the squad into small groups, each under a corporal, who conducts the group and regulates the gait over a route designated by the instructor.

The instructor inculcates in the troopers the principles which should govern them when left to their own devices. They are as follows:

On leaving the stable, move at a walk for a short time in order to obtain a good circulation in the feet and legs.

Vary the gaits, but do not depart from the regulation pace prescribed for each.

Choose for the rapid gaits nearly level ground. Going uphill rapidly necessitates great effort on the part of the horse, and going downhill at a rapid gait exposes him to injuries from the saddle and equipment and is hard on his forelegs.

Extend progressively the period at the faster gaits.

Regulate the periods spent at the intermediate gaits by the degree of rapidity with which the total distance must be covered.

Seek under all circumstances soft footing to save the horse's legs and keep him, therefore, on the edge of metaled roads rather than in the middle.

Choose hard ground when smooth and level in preference to ground that is heavy or uneven.

Finish at a walk, more or less prolonged in accordance with the length and conditions of the ride or march, so that the horse shall always come in with a dry skin and normal respiration.

291. To these general principles, which must be practically demonstrated, the instructor adds such counsel as his experience dictates and such remarks as the nature and state of the terrain may render advisable.

The following rules cover the majority of circumstances that will arise:

To ascend a steep slope, yield the hand as soon as the horse has been given his direction; carry forward the upper part of the body and seize a lock of the mane near the middle of the neck over the reins.

To descend a steep slope, let the reins slip through the hand and give the horse complete liberty of action; lean back, and if necessary grasp the cantle with the right hand.

Troopers should be practiced in crossing a V-shaped ditch, about 18 feet wide and 10 feet deep, so that they go down one side and up the other. This is a valuable exercise, as no horse will face the opposite bank unless the head is left free.

Long, steep slopes should be ascended slowly and quietly.

All slopes should be descended directly; short, steep slopes should be ascended obliquely if the surface is not slippery.

In difficult ground the horse should be allowed to take the initiative; his instincts are a more reliable guide than the aids of the trooper.

If marshy ground must be crossed go slowly and avoid following in trace. If the horse goes down and becomes nervous and begins to plunge, dismount and lead.

The trooper must seek every means to spare his horse, above all when carrying the full pack. Where possible to pass natural obstacles without jumping, this should be done; the heavily loaded horse crosses many obstacles; for example, wide ditches, with greater security and less effort by climbing than by jumping.

When the bottom of the ditch is boggy it will generally be preferable to jump from bank to bank.

In particularly difficult places the trooper should dismount and lead, the horse following. All horses should be trained in this method of passing obstacles. A little of this training makes it easy to cross considerable obstructions on foot.

292. Employment of the spur: The spur is an aid which augments the effect produced by the leg.

The trooper employs it in rear of and near the girth by touching the horse with it, once or oftener, according to his sensitiveness and degree of submission.

The spur is used only when necessary to add to the effect of the action of the leg, and its use ceases as soon as obedience is obtained.

Its application should not be continuous but quick, and repeated if necessary.

293. Work at fixed distances: The work in the riding hall at fixed distances comprises the movements executed in the individual instruction, but the movements are executed in unison at command and the troopers follow and conform to movements of the leader.

. The work therefore requires of the troopers more precision and exactness in the use of the aid and serves to prepare them for work in ranks.

For the instructor it is a check on the results accomplished.

The instructor forms the troopers in one or two squads; when there are two squads he designates that one of the two leaders upon whom the other will regulate.

The troopers follow in the trace of their respective leaders, maintaining distances of 4 feet from head to croup.

294. Changing the diagonal in posting: The right fore foot and the left hind foot constitute the right diagonal; the left fore and the right hind feet the left diagonal.

In posting, the trooper is said to post on the right diagonal when after rising he sits down in the saddle at the instant the right fore foot comes to the ground.

It is important to instruct the trooper to post for a time on one diagonal and then change to the other, so that the diagonal pairs will each perform the same amount of work and the chance of injury from the equipment be reduced.

To automatically insure that the posting is done as much on one diagonal as on the other, the troopers should be required to post on the right diagonal when riding to the left hand on the track and on the left diagonal when to the right hand.

The instructor occasionally requires each trooper to inform him on which diagonal he is posting.

To change the diagonal the trooper diminishes the weight borne on the stirrups and retains his seat in the saddle for two successive beats of the horse's feet instead of one; he then rises as before.

The trooper will then find himself posting on the diagonal opposite to the one on which he was posting before.

295. *Work on long lines.*—This work is carried out in a rectangle of large dimensions.

The troopers are there exercised at all gaits, but with the movements restricted to changes of direction, pace, or gait.

The end sought is complex: To confirm the horse in moving on a straight line; to increase his willingness to leave the other horses; to regulate his gaits; to familiarize the trooper with the regulation and extended gallop; to exercise the troopers in moving two and four abreast and accustom them to following a leader so as to prepare them for work in the squad

and platoon; finally, to cause the troopers to acquire the calmness that is indispensable in the faster gaits.

The troopers are dispersed at large distances over the whole of the track. When two or more troopers march abreast one of them (habitually the center or right center trooper) is designated to act as guide. The other troopers regulate on the guide.

The instructor limits his commands to indicating the gait or the movement to the trooper or squad which is passing in front of him. The others observe and conform.

296. The angles of the rectangle are marked by elevated objects easily distinguished.

To permit the instructor to control the gaits the dimensions of the rectangle should be 236 by 118 yards. These two distances represent approximately the distances covered by the horse in one minute at the trot and at the walk, respectively. The sum of a side and end, taking into consideration the shortening of the distance traveled due to rounding the corner, represents approximately the distance covered by a horse in one minute at the regulation gallop.

To represent the approximate distance which a horse is required to cover in one minute at the extended gallop one side and two ends are used.

In the work at the gallop the instructor must devote his efforts to securing that calmness and regularity of speed required in prolonged drills or exercises.

When the horses move calmly at the regulation gallop they are exercised in the extended gallop.

297. The troopers are next prepared to participate in the charge by exercising them in galloping at full speed over a distance of 60 to 75 yards. The movement is executed successively by the troopers. Each trooper when his name is called gradually yields the hand sufficiently to give the horse the necessary liberty in extending his neck while maintaining support, and increases the gallop to full speed.

In charging the trooper bends the body forward, pushes his feet fully into the stirrups and supporting his weight upon the latter. He gives his horse, if necessary, a touch of the spur, and holds him in the direction indicated.

The exercises are facilitated at first by grouping the troopers by twos.

To pass from the charge to the gallop employ the means prescribed for decreasing the gait.

In order not to fatigue the horse by repeated charges or by charges executed on hard ground, the individual charge should be made a part of each of several instruction hours and should always be executed on a track or piece of ground specially adapted to this work.

As soon as the trooper is sufficiently advanced in the instruction without arms he must be practiced in the use of arms (par. 298) in connection with the exercises with the saddles packed as for the field.

298. The work in the large rectangles should be completed by work in **open order.**

In this work the troopers are formed in successive lines of four troopers each, with distances and intervals of 3 or 4 yards.

The instructor causes the troopers thus formed to move in all directions and at all gaits and causes them to execute the movements prescribed in the work on the snaffle and bit with and without arms, with saddles both stripped and packed as for field service.

Satisfactory execution of this work requires that each trooper shall keep his place exactly with reference to the others and that the movements shall be executed with precision and in unison.

299. Bit and bridoon: At convenient opportunities the horses should be equipped for a few days only with the curb bit and snaffle in order that the recruits may in case of war or other emergency be not unfamiliar with their use. (*See* pars. 302–310, inclusive.)

300. Duty in the ranks of the troop: In time of peace the recruits may now habitually at the expiration of about three months be returned to duty with the troops to which they are assigned and participate in the drills, marches, and maneuvers incident thereto. Their individual instruction and training in horsemanship will be continued to completion as indicated in the succeeding period at such time as conditions may permit. It will be resumed not later in any case than the date of the beginning of the next period of garrison training.

In case of war or other emergency, before their training can be so completed, the recruits should be able to render

good service. In such a case commanders must neglect no opportunity that conditions of service present to carry forward to completion the instruction and training of the recruits.

Fourth Period, or Work on the Bit and Bridoon.

Adjustment of the double bridle (par. 302).
Holding and handling the reins (pars. 303–307).
Use and effect of the bit and snaffle (pars. 308–310).
Repetition with the bit of the work on the snaffle (par. 311).
Changes of direction (par. 312).
The turn in place (pars. 313–317).
The gallop departs with the horse straight (par. 318).
Proof of training (par. 319).
The trained trooper (par. 320).

301. Work on the bit is the most important element of the instruction in equitation. The instructor causes this work to be taken up as soon as the troopers have acquired a fair seat and a sufficient knowledge of the use of the aids.

302. Adjustment of the double bridle: The bits should be of sufficient width to fit the horse's mouth, the branches of the curb touching lightly the outer surfaces of the lips.

The snaffle should touch lightly the upper corners of the lips.

The curb should rest just below the snaffle.

The curb chain should lie flat in the chin groove and be of such length as to cause the reins when stretched from the pommel of the saddle, to form a right angle with the branches of the curb.

If the bit is placed high, it is less severe; if placed low, it becomes very powerful.

It should not be placed so low as to strike the teeth.

When horses are restive it is generally due to faulty adjustment of the bits and curb chain.

303. *Holding and handling the reins.*—The normal method of holding the reins for military riders is to take both reins in the left hand. The bit reins are separated by the third (ring) finger, the right snaffle rein between the first and second fingers, the left snaffle rein under the little finger, all of the reins passing out of the hand over the second joint

of the first finger, upon which the thumb presses them with sufficient force to hold them in place; the bight falls to the right of the horse's neck. The elbow falls naturally, the wrist and hand in line with the forearm, the finger nails toward the body.

Since the trooper in mounted combat needs the right hand for his weapon (sword or pistol) he must be thoroughly trained in riding with the reins in one hand and in riding on the curb bit.

304. The instructor explains to the troopers that they can—

(*a*) Ride the horse on the bit, relaxing the snaffle reins, which is the normal method in combat.

(*b*) Ride the horse on the snaffle, releasing the bit reins, an exceptional method used with horses that carry the neck arched or that have especially sensitive mouths.

(*c*) Ride the horse on both reins, supporting the horse with both snaffle and bit. This is the normal method used at drill and on the march, at rest and in jumping.

305. When the trooper is not called upon to make immediate use of his weapons it is usually advantageous to hold the reins in both hands. In this case he can use the right hand for holding either the right snaffle rein or both right reins.

To take the right snaffle rein in the right hand, the trooper seizes that rein in front of the left hand with right hand, the little finger next to the rein, and holds it as when riding with one rein. He places his right hand on a level with the left hand, the bight of the rein coming out under the thumb.

When the trooper wishes to take both right reins in the right hand he holds them in the full grasp, the reins separated by the little finger, snaffle rein underneath. This method is preferably employed in riding across country, in jumping over obstacles, in galloping a horse, etc.

During the rests and at route order the troopers alternate in taking the reins in the right hand, the left hand, and both hands. They thus avoid becoming fatigued, advancing the shoulder, or by carrying the reins to one side, giving to the horse a false carriage of the head and neck.

The method for holding the reins in the right hand is similar to that for reins in the left hand.

To allow his horse to ease his head and neck at the walk or at the halt, the trooper opens his fingers without changing the position of his hand so as to permit complete relaxation.

When the trooper has the saber or pistol in hand he may use the right hand to adjust his reins or to separate them momentarily, but he must exercise great care to keep the point of his sword or the muzzle of his pistol elevated to avoid wounding his neighbors.

306. To adjust the reins seize them with the thumb and first finger of the right hand above the left thumb; slightly open the fingers of the left hand, raise the right hand, feel lightly and evenly the horse's mouth with both reins, and close the fingers of the left hand on the reins.

The troopers are exercised frequently in changing from both reins to the snaffle reins and the reverse.

To shorten the reins seize the rein or reins to be shortened between the thumb and first finger of the right hand above the left thumb. To lengthen the reins seize the rein or reins to be lengthened between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand below the left hand.

In executing these movements the hands should be displaced as little as possible.

307. The trooper at stand to horse (par. 187) and in leading out (par. 188) holds both reins with the right hand as prescribed for the snaffle rein. The reins are in neither case removed from the horse's neck.

In mounting (par. 191) and dismounting (par. 192) the trooper manipulates both reins as has been prescribed for the snaffle. After dismounting, before leading to the stable or picket line, he unhooks the curb chain.

308. Use and effect of the bit and snaffle: The effect of the snaffle is very mild, because it is received more on the lips than on the bars of the mouth. Its action is upward, and it tends to raise the head and neck. It gives a comfortable support, is the bit most efficacious for relaxing the jaw by means of vibrations, and if the horse carries the head too low tends to correct it.

309. The effect of the curb is much more severe than that of the snaffle because it is received almost entirely on the bars of the mouth; the lips and the tongue ameliorate its pressure but little. Its action is downward and it tends to lower the

head and neck. It gives an uncomfortable support if maintained continuously, because the bars of the mouth become deadened to sensation and the curb chain stops circulation. If the horse carries the head too high the curb tends to correct that fault.

310. To demonstrate these effects to the troopers the instructor causes them to take the bit reins alone and execute the same movements. He points out the difference between the two means of control.

The instructor then causes the trooper to take the bit reins alone in the left hand and terminates this instruction by the employment of the four reins in one hand.

311. Repetition with the bit of the work on the snaffle: All the exercises of the work on the snaffle are repeated in the work on the bit. This repetition is for the purpose of perfecting the troopers in the use of the aids and confirming the correctness and regularity of the various gaits.

The movements are executed as prescribed in the work on the snaffle, always keeping in mind the greater power of the bit as compared to the snaffle.

This repetition and review should not be hastened. It should have for its purpose a better understanding of instruction already given, more accurate riding of the gymnastic figures, better control at all gaits out of doors, great skill and boldness over obstacles and varied terrain, and delicacy of coordination in the use of the bit and spur.

312. Changes of direction—The wide turn: This is a change of direction executed on the arc of a rather large circle. It is executed by means of the leading rein and both legs, or of the bearing rein and both legs. Of the two the first is more elementary; the second is more efficacious and is used out of doors and when riding with the reins in one hand.

The short turn: This is a change of direction on the arc of a very small circle. It is executed, in turning to the right, for example, by means of the right direct rein of opposition and the right leg, or by the left indirect rein of opposition in front of the withers and the right leg. Of the two the first is the more elementary; the second more rapid and regular.

313. *The turn in place.*—The turn in place consists in making the horse turn on his own ground, either on the forehand, on the haunches, or on his center.

These exercises should not habitually be practiced as regular gymnastics, because they tend to get the horse behind the bit: to prevent which it is essential to move him forward promptly as soon as the movement is completed.

314. The about on the forehand: Half turns in reverse are executed with radii which are reduced more and more, preparatory to the about on the forehand, when eventually, if the haunches turn from the right to the left, the right front foot becomes the pivot around which the mass turns.

The aids to use are: Both legs to bring the weight on the shoulders; right direct rein and left indirect rein of opposition in front of the withers; to weight the right shoulder and to keep the neck straight; right leg in rear of the girth, to push the haunches to the left; weight of the rider slightly to the left.

315. The about on the haunches: Half turns are executed with radii which are reduced more and more, preparatory to the about on the haunches, when eventually, if the forehand turn from the right to the left, the left hind foot becomes the pivot around which the mass turns.

The aids to use are: Both legs to gather the horse and to prevent his backing; left direct rein and right indirect rein of opposition in front of the withers, to turn the forehand to the left; right leg, if necessary, to prevent the haunches swinging to the right.

This is a very difficult exercise and should not be attempted until the rider has acquired considerable skill in the use of the aids. The horse must under no circumstances be allowed to back.

316. The about on the center: This is of very easy execution and of frequent application. The left indirect rein of opposition in front of the withers carries the shoulders to the right while the right leg behind the girth pushes the haunches rapidly to the left.

317. In order to enable the trooper to grasp the mechanism of the wide turns, short turns, and turns in place, these exercises are executed slowly at first, but the rapidity indispensable for the employment of these movements in individual mounted combat must be obtained by gradual progression.

318. *The gallop departs with the horse straight.*—To be able to demand either lead desired with the horse practically

straight, and to return to the trot and immediately take the gallop again with the opposite lead, marks the limit of training for the trooper in ranks.

He will now be able to manage his horse in all the difficult and varying situations in which he may find himself, at drill, at maneuvers, on the march, and in combat.

Every effort should be made to render him proficient in all the exercises indicated up to this point.

319. *Proof of training.*—The trooper should now demonstrate practically that he measures up satisfactorily to the standard required (*see* par. 175). If so he may be utilized thereafter in the training of remounts and may devote a greater proportion of his time than before to the other kindred subjects that go to make up the total of the education of the trooper in ranks.

320. *The trained trooper.*—The individual instruction on horseback begun with the recruit must be kept up during the trooper's entire service.

For the older troopers prolonged work at the slow trot and gallop without stirrups is of great value. With trained and hardened troopers, capable of withstanding fatigue, it confirms the seat and renders easy the correction of faults of position.

Troop and platoon commanders must exercise the trained troopers in riding across country or on varied terrain at rapid gaits, and thus train them in husbanding the strength of their mounts while using them fully for the end in view; they should perfect them in the use of arms by constant practice on dummies and in combat exercises and endeavor, above all, to make of them fearless horsemen confident in their ability to defeat the enemy in mounted combat.

The individual worth of each trooper, together with his feeling of invincibility, gives to the organization the confidence and audacity which enables the leader to undertake the most daring enterprises.

PART II.—ELEMENTARY COLLECTIVE INSTRUCTION.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

321. The elementary collective instruction of the trooper includes the instruction in the **School of the Squad** and in the mechanism of the movements prescribed in the **School of the Platoon.** This latter instruction is given as prescribed in par. 444.

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF THE DRILL.

322. The following provisions apply generally to the **School of the Squad and to all subsequent drill.** Previous provisions of a similar general character are to be found in pars. 43–49.

323. Leading: A commander leading his unit marches in the direction and at the gait desired. He is followed at a specified distance by the base (Def.), which conforms to his gait and direction. The commander thus controls the movements of the base, and may at any time by his indication conveyed in the most convenient way (as by his own movements, his commands, or signals) cause the base to change its direction or to increase or decrease the pace or gait or to halt, according to the object in view. Elements of the same kind as the base regulate upon the latter conforming to its gait and direction.

324. Directing leader, directing guide: A commander who desires to become temporarily free in his movements may leave his position as leader, first indicating: **DISREGARD** (*see* Signals) for the information of the leader of the base unit, who then becomes the **directing leader** (Def.). The latter then ceases to follow in the trace of the commander and temporarily conducts the march. In the absence of other indication from the leader he maintains the existing direction and gait.

When necessary the conduct of the march of a group (e. g., a platoon) having no subordinate leader may similarly be intrusted to the guide. The latter then becomes the directing guide (Def.).

325. Whenever a change of formation involves a break in the continuity of the leading the leader habitually moves at once to his new position, so as to resume leadership with the least practicable delay. He usually starts at the command of execution for the movement. Should he start for his new position before the command of execution he first cautions or signals: **DISREGARD** for the information of the base.

326. **Change of directing unit (base):** Whenever a change of formation results in a change of the base, the base of the formation from which the movement is executed continues, in the absence of specific indication to the contrary, to be the base until the new base is indicated.

In movements from line by which column is formed directly to a flank, the element of the column on the flank toward which the column is formed is the base upon which other similar elements regulate during the formation of the column as well as after the column is formed.

327. **Changes of direction:** Any movement may be executed either from the halt or when marching, unless otherwise prescribed. If executed from the halt the command **forward** need not be prefixed to any other preparatory command that indicates a direction of march; thus, being at a halt, 1. **Column right**, 2. **MARCH**; but, 1. **Forward, trot**, 2. **MARCH.**

328. To insure certainty of prompt execution, commands (and signals) must be so given that their meaning is unmistakable. The preparatory command must be given at such an interval of time before the command of execution as will admit of the former being properly understood, and should be followed by a distinct pause that properly varies in length with the size of the body of troops that is to execute the movement. The command of execution should be given the instant the movement is to begin.

329. All changes of direction are simply applications of the principle of leading as explained in pars. 323 and 367.

(*a*) **The turn** (par. 386) and **half turn** (par. 388) are *special cases* of the change of direction in line in that they involve a change of direction of *90°* and *45°*, respectively; *as executed*

by the platoon and squad, they differ further from the general case of the change of direction in that the leader follows a *specially prescribed arc* during the turn (par. 387); in the troop and larger units, the leader in each case regulates the arc upon which he moves during the turn in accordance with the length of the front and the requirements of the special case.

(*b*) For a change of direction in any column formation, the elements of the column successively change direction *on the same ground*, the change in each successive element being made in accordance with the principles that regulate the change of direction in line (*a*). In each successive element the leader (if any) and the guide move over the *same path that is followed by the leader at the head of the column.*

330. The principles and methods laid down in the **School of the Trooper** (dismounted and mounted) are, except as may otherwise be indicated, or where clearly applicable only to individual instruction, to be followed in corresponding instruction in the **School of the Squad** and in all subsequent training. The same commands apply unless otherwise stated.

Certain modifications in the execution of some of the movements, incident to their use in collective instruction, are noted in appropriate places in the **School of the Squad.**

331. Column of twos and of troopers: Movements involving the use of column of twos or troopers, although simple in principle, are not adapted to execution as movements of precision, and the details of their execution will be regulated accordingly (pars. 393–400). Familiarity with the practical use of these formations must be insisted upon, but they will be taken in the simplest manner consistent with efficiency in their use.

332. To avoid repetition the detailed descriptions and explanations of collective movements are, as a rule, based only upon the execution of the mounted movements.

333. *Gaits for mounted movements.*—All mounted movements not specially excepted may be executed at the trot or gallop (par. 239).

For the execution of a movement at the **trot** or **gallop** the command **trot** or **gallop** precedes the command **march** unless marching at the gait desired or unless it be otherwise pre-

scribed. When the indication for the trot or gallop is included in the command for the movement it precedes the command **march**; thus, 1. **Forward, trot**; 2. **MARCH.**

334. When the troopers of any element (Def.) move at different gaits, if the gait of such **element** be referred to, the gait of its **base** is to be understood.

335. A gait is said to be **correspondingly faster** or **correspondingly slower** than another gait when there is a difference of one degree between the two (par. 239).

336. In the rules included in pars. 333 to 337 the expression "other elements" (Def.) means in each case elements of the *same kind as the base.*

337. (*a*) In movements from the halt the base moves at the walk unless another gait be stated in the command or indicated by the leader's movements.

(*b*) **In forming line to the front from column** the other elements (par. 336) take, without command, a correspondingly faster gait than the base. If **gallop** be *commanded* at any time, it applies only to the other elements (*f*). The base (leading element) habitually preserves the gait of march (*a*). The leader controls the movements of the base according to the object in view. He may diminish its pace or gait or halt it to hasten the formation. A command to decrease the gait or to halt, given during the execution of the movement, applies only to those elements that have already completed the movement. The leader habitually so controls the base that elements in rear need not move faster than a maneuver gallop in order to execute the movement.

(*c*) **Column to the front is formed from line** on the base at the gait of march (*a*) or at the gait ordered (*e*). The other elements (par. 336) take or maintain a correspondingly slower gait (or, if halted, remain so) until they can move at the gait of the base to take their places in the column. If an increased gait be *commanded* at any time, it is taken at first only by the leader and base or by the leader and those elements that have already moved to enter the column (*f*).

(*d*) In cases not covered by (*b*) or (*c*), if the base and other elements have equal distances to go they move at the gait of march or at that indicated in the command (e. g., 1, **Platoons right turn, trot**; 2. **MARCH**).

(*e*) In cases not covered by (*b*), (*c*), or (*d*) (e. g., **assemble from foragers**, par. 414), or by some special provision in the description of the corresponding movement (e. g., **echelon**, par. 702) the base maintains the gait of march (*a*) or takes that of the leader; the other elements move at a correspondingly faster or slower gait as may be necessary for the execution of the movement and on arriving at their places take the gait of the base (par. 338). If a special gait be commanded, it is taken by the base or by the other elements, in accordance with the principle stated in (*f*).

(*f*) When the commander indicates a special gait, whether in the preparatory command or during the execution of the movement, the effect is always to *hasten the completion of the movement.* This principle will assist in applying the rules in (*b*), (*c*), and (*e*).

(*g*) Changes of gait made by elements, without command, in accordance with the above rules, are, except as specially indicated in the commands, changes of one degree.

338. Any exceptions to the above rules are noted where they occur.

339. *Gaits for movements on foot.*—(*a*) The general principles of gaits for mounted movements apply to movements on foot with the modifications noted in (*b*) to (*g*), below, and such others as are to be readily inferred from the application of the principles of the **School of the Trooper, Dismounted.**

(*b*) No element moves in **double time** unless the movement be executed when marching in **double time** or **double time** be commanded (par. 47) or otherwise indicated by the leader. No trooper increases the length of the step or the cadence unless specially so prescribed.

(*c*) The leader so controls the movements of the base as to facilitate the execution of the movement in accordance with (*b*), above. This will involve halting the base whenever certain movements (e. g., those from column into line) are executed in **quick time.**

(*d*) If **double time** be included in the preparatory command for a movement, the indication is obeyed in accordance with the principles of par. 337.

(*e*) In movements from line into column, and in other similar movements, if executed at **attention**, the troopers while waiting to take their places in the column do not **halt** unless

halt be commanded by a platoon (or troop) commander. They **mark time** instead if necessary for the execution of the movement.

(*f*) In applying the rules for mounted movements to movements on foot **quick time** will be understood where **walk** is referred to and **double time** where any faster gait is referred to.

(*g*) Any exceptions to the above rules are stated where they occur.

THE SCHOOL OF THE SQUAD.

340. As soon as the troopers are sufficiently advanced in their instruction in the **School of the Trooper** they will be grouped into temporary squads for elementary collective instruction. This instruction will be conducted in accordance with the general principles indicated in par. 42; progress therein should be so regulated that no collective movement will be taken up until the trooper, by previous individual instruction, has been properly prepared for its execution.

341. Instruction in the **School of the Squad** is intended primarily to teach recruits the elementary movements upon which the entire drill is based. It may be recurred to whenever necessary in cases where troopers evidence the need of further elementary work.

342. For elementary collective instruction groups of not to exceed six or eight men can be used to best advantage. The actual instruction of each group should be conducted by a noncommissioned officer, but the instruction must be closely supervised by a commissioned officer (par. 37).

343. The system of drill contained in these regulations is based largely upon the actual leading of units by their respective chiefs or commanders. During the elementary instruction of recruits, both mounted and dismounted, leading will be emphasized as indicated in par. 344. Thereafter the application of leading will conform to pars. 448 to 456.

344. The first collective instruction will, therefore, be in conforming to the march of a leader, thus confirming and extending the instruction given in the **School of the Trooper** (pars. 295, 298); *and reasonable proficiency in this instruction must be secured before any attempt is made to utilize either commands or signals in the execution of collective movements*, except as prescribed in par. 363.

345. It is difficult for a leader to lead the squad properly and at the same time to supervise the march and correct the errors of individual troopers. For this reason it is desirable, especially in the earlier collective drills, that the instructor have as an assistant another noncommissioned officer or a well-instructed trooper. The instructor then leads the squad and requires his assistant (who takes the positions best adapted for the purpose in view) to supervise closely the movements of the troopers and to correct errors by means of cautions addressed *quietly by name to the individual man or men concerned.* Later the instructor similarly supervises the execution of the march while requiring his assistant to lead the squad. As the troopers advance in the instruction the instructor should give each of them such practice in leading the squad as the progress of the individual trooper concerned may appear to justify.

346. When instruction in leading (par. 367) has advanced to the point where the guide can preserve his proper distance from the leader and conform promptly and smoothly to the latter's movements, the other troopers meantime preserving their interval and alignment without undue constraint or unnecessarily abrupt changes of gait or pace, the instruction is extended progressively to include, in accordance with the methods prescribed in par. 347, the execution of the movements prescribed for the squad.

347. Throughout the instruction prescribed by par. 346 the squad will continue as before to be *led.* In teaching each new movement the example and movements of the instructor as leader will be supplemented at first by oral commands only, then by oral commands accompanied by the corresponding arm signals for those movements for which such signals are provided (*see* Signals, pars. 988–996), then by signals alone. *The commands and signals will be given by the actual leader.* When the instructor is not actually leading (par. 345) he may either indicate to the leader the movements to be executed or else leave to him the selection of such movements.

348. After the oral commands and arm signals are thoroughly understood the instructor will practice the squad in passing from one formation to another, using oral commands for some movements, signals for some, and causing some (e. g.,

changes of direction) to be executed by conforming to the movements of the leader without the additional indication of either oral commands or signals.

349. The troopers must be accustomed to conforming, *without the assistance of any command or signal given to the squad as a whole*, to simple movements (e. g., movements **front into line**) initiated at the head of a column formation by a command so given as to be heard by only the leading troopers.

With reasonable practice the more essential changes of formation that are executed toward the direction of march can readily be taken by the squad by conforming, without other indication, to the movements of the troopers nearest the leader. As many movements in service must be executed under conditions of noise, dust, etc., that will render it difficult for the commands or signals of the leader to be understood except by those near him, *practice in conforming promptly and intelligently to the movements of the elements nearest the leader is important and must be given careful attention.*

The object ultimately to be sought in the instruction is the quiet, rapid, and effective handling of the squad with a *minimum of either oral commands or signals.* The squad is required to pass rapidly from one formation to another, a new movement being occasionally initiated before the execution of the one preceding it has been completed.

To Form the Squad, Mounted.

350. To form the squad in **line** (par. 368–*a*), the leader (instructor) designates a trooper to act as the base of the formation, indicates to such trooper the point where the right of the squad is to rest and the direction in which the line is to face, takes position at a convenient distance in front of and facing the point where the center of the squad is to rest, and commands: **LEAD INTO LINE.** The base trooper leads out (par. 188) and takes position as indicated; the other troopers lead out so as to approach the line *successively directly from the rear* and in single rank form on the line established by the base trooper, in order from right to left. The troopers form at stand to horse (par. 187) with intervals of 18 inches between horses.

The line having thus formed, the leader calls the roll and commands, **COUNT FOURS** (par. 84).

Where there is an incomplete four the troopers in it are cautioned as to the numbers finally assigned them (par. 368–*b*).

When but a single trooper is available for an incomplete four the four is habitually broken up and a trooper is placed as an extra file closer. This rule may, however, be modified in connection with the instruction of recruits.

The squad having counted fours, the leader causes the squad to mount (par. 358).

351. The formation in column of fours, twos, or troopers (par. 368–*b*, *c*, *d*) is similarly executed. The leader commands: **LEAD INTO COLUMN (COLUMN OF TWOS, COLUMN OF TROOPERS).** The trooper upon whom the formation is based (par. 350) becomes No. 1 of the leading four. The elements of the column form, in order from front to rear, with distances of 4 feet between successive fours, twos, or troopers. In column of fours or twos each four or two forms on its right trooper as in line.

When the formation is in column of *fours* the command **COUNT FOURS** is omitted. The leader cautions: **NOTE YOUR NUMBERS.**

352. The squad may also form in similar manner after the troopers mount. In this case the leader causes the troopers to mount individually after saddling and commands: **RIDE INTO LINE (COLUMN, COLUMN OF TWOS, COLUMN OF TROOPERS).** The interval between the mounted troopers is 6 inches from knee to knee.

To Form the Squad, Dismounted.

353. For the dismounted formation of the squad, in **line**, when not armed with the rifle, the leader designates the trooper to act as the base, indicates the latter's position, and takes his own position as described in par. 350, above. He then commands: **FALL IN.** The troopers form as in pars. 57 and 58. The leader then calls the roll and causes the squad to count fours.

If armed with the rifle, the troopers fall in with rifles at the order. As soon as the line or column is formed the leader commands: 1. Inspection, 2. **ARMS**, 3. Right shoulder, 4. **ARMS**

(par. 91–2d), and calls the roll. Each man, as his name is called, answers **here** and executes **order arms.**

The formation in column of fours, twos, or troopers is conducted in accordance with the modifications indicated. The commands of the leader are: **FALL IN, IN COLUMN (COLUMN OF TWOS, COLUMN OF TROOPERS).** The distance between successive fours is 92 inches; between successive twos, 40 inches; between successive troopers, 14 inches.

To Mount and Dismount.

354. The squad being in line, at stand to horse, the habitual commands for mounting are: 1. **Prepare to mount,** 2. **MOUNT;** 3. **Form,** 4. **RANK.** At the first command the odd numbers lead out 4 yards directly to the front, and all execute the movements and take the final positions prescribed in par. 191–*a*. At the second command all the troopers complete, simultaneously, the movements of mounting as prescribed in par. 191–*b*. At the fourth command the even numbers move up into their intervals in the line. If the squad has dismounted from line and has formed rank (par. 356), the odd numbers stand fast at the command **Prepare to mount** and all mount in place.

If the squad be mounted in **column of fours,** the third and fourth commands are omitted. At the first command the troopers of each four open out fanwise, Nos. 1 and 2 to the right, Nos. 3 and 4 to the left. Nos. 1 and 4 open out a little more than Nos. 2 and 3, all opening only enough to permit the troopers to mount without interfering with each other. The troopers habitually straighten their horses in the column as soon as they have mounted, but this requirement may be relaxed whenever mounting in unison is not required (par. 358). The squad in **column of twos** is mounted by commands and methods conforming to those used for mounting from column of fours.

355. The preparatory oral command for mounting may be omitted. The squad then executes at the command **MOUNT** all the movements prescribed in par. 354 for the commands, **1. Prepare to mount, 2. MOUNT.** The troopers mount promptly, but not in unison.

The preparatory *signal* for mounting, when followed *immediately* by the signal of execution, will be understood as equivalent to the oral command **MOUNT**, and will be executed accordingly.

356. The squad being in line, the habitual commands for dismounting are: 1. **Prepare to dismount**, 2. **DISMOUNT**; 3. **Form**, 4. **RANK**. At the first command the odd numbers ride 4 yards directly to the front, regulating on the right, and all the troopers execute the movements and take the final position prescribed in par. 192–*a*. At the second command the troopers execute, simultaneously, the movements prescribed in par. 192–*b*. At the fourth command the even numbers lead into their intervals in the rank. The third and fourth commands are given only in case it is desired to form rank. The squad may be dismounted and, without forming rank, execute **rest** or at **ease** (par. 359), or be inspected, mounted, or dismissed. The modifications indicated for dismounting in column of fours and column of twos correspond to those prescribed in par. 354 for mounting from the corresponding formation, except that the horses are not habitually straightened in the column after dismounting unless the dismounted squad moves forward (the troopers leading their horses).

357. The preparatory oral command for dismounting may be omitted. The squad then executes at the command **DISMOUNT** all the movements prescribed in par. 356 for the commands: 1. **Prepare to dismount**, 2. **DISMOUNT**. The troopers dismount promptly but not in unison.

The preparatory *signal* for dismounting, when followed *immediately* by the signal of execution will be understood as equivalent to the oral command **DISMOUNT**, and will be executed accordingly.

358. Until the individual instruction of recruits has advanced to a point where they have acquired reasonable proficiency in mounting and dismounting, these movements will be executed at collective as well as at individual instruction by the commands and methods indicated in pars. 355 and 357. After such proficiency has been acquired, mounting and dismounting at close-order drills, at ceremonies, and at all occasions of a ceremonial nature will habitually be executed in

unison by the commands and methods prescribed in pars. 354 and 356, respectively. The commands and methods prescribed in pars. 355 and 357, respectively, may, in the discretion of the commander, continue to be employed on all other duty.

THE RESTS AND ROUTE ORDER.

359. The mounted squad executes the **rests** and **route order** as prescribed in par. 221. After dismounting from line, **rest** or **at ease** may be given either before or after forming rank.

The dismounted squad executes the **rests** and **route order** as prescribed in pars. 60 and 61.

TO DISMISS THE SQUAD.

360. The squad, in **column of troopers**, is dismissed as prescribed for that formation in par. 222. The squad **in column of fours** is dismissed at the same command. The trooper on the right of the leading four leads out as indicated in par. 222 and is followed, in turn, by the other troopers of that four, then by the troopers of the next four, and so on successively to the rear of the column. In each four the troopers lead out in order from right to left. The dismissal from **column of twos** is similarly executed. The squad being in **line** is dismissed by the commands and methods prescribed in par. 222 for a line with intervals, except that the troopers, in order to have their proper distance, move out successively from right to left instead of simultaneously. At the commands: 1. **By the right and left,** 2. **FALL OUT**, the movement is executed in a similar manner from both flanks of the line. After having dismounted from line the squad may be dismissed without forming rank.

Dismounted, without horses and not under arms, the command is **DISMISSED.**

Dismounted, without horses but armed with the rifle, the squad is dismissed as in par. 114.

ALIGNMENTS.

361. At the preliminary instruction (conducted without formal command) the instructor has two troopers on the right of the rank move forward a convenient distance and halt. He then aligns these two troopers carefully, with the proper interval as in **line** (par. 368–*a*), and causes the other troopers to note the details of the alignment. The other troopers are then required to move up one at a time and align themselves, with the correct interval, on the line thus established. The troopers move forward, in order from right to left, at successive repetitions by the instructor of the caution **NEXT.** Each trooper, when on or near the line, executes **eyes right** (par. 64), aligns himself accurately on the line established by the trooper or troopers on his right, and looks to the front as soon as he thinks himself correctly aligned. The instructor explains and corrects any errors. Similar instruction is given the troopers in aligning themselves to the left. As soon as reasonable proficiency is attained but a single trooper is moved forward and the alignment is made in the same manner upon the single trooper established as the base.

The instruction is similarly given with the center trooper moved to the front as a base. Two troopers, one on the right, the other on the left of the base, then move forward at each repetition of the caution, **NEXT.**

The instructor observes in the mounted instruction: That each trooper moves his horse promptly and halts with his horse correctly disposed; that he sits squarely on his horse without advancing either shoulder or leaning his body to the front or rear; that he dresses promptly as he arrives on the line; and that he makes proper use of the aids (pars. 200 to 208).

In the first drills the basis of the alignment is established parallel to the front of the section; afterwards in oblique directions.

362. When the troopers have acquired reasonable proficiency in aligning themselves, as above, the alignment is executed at the command **DRESS**, given by the instructor from his position as leader. The trooper designated as the guide (par. 371) is always the base trooper of the alignment and places himself accurately 3 yards in rear of the leader. All the other troopers

align themselves promptly on the base trooper, continuing to look toward him until the command, **FRONT.** At this last command, given when the alignment is completed, all turn the head and eyes quickly to the front and take the position of **attention** (pars. 59, 198). Movements in the rank then cease. The instructor then habitually faces the squad or goes to either flank to verify the accuracy of the dressing, first cautioning the guide to remain in place.

363. The troopers and their mounts must be so trained as to enable alignment and interval to be kept with sufficient accuracy to maintain cohesion in the mounted charge and to present a creditable appearance at ceremonies and at other occasions of a formal or ceremonial character. A disproportionate amount of time and energy will not be devoted to this detail.

364. The use of dressing *by command* is ordinarily confined to elementary instruction (as preparation for the march in line) and to formations of a distinctly ceremonial character. At all other times the troopers are required habitually to align themselves on the base trooper without special command and to look to the front as soon as aligned.

Formal dressing is employed only when the squad is at a halt.

365. The caution: **DRESS,** may, if necessary, be given to the squad when marching (par. 367); but it will not be employed when it is practicable to use instead cautions addressed by name to the individual trooper or troopers who are at fault.

366. Alignments, dismounted, are executed by the same general methods as when mounted. At the command: **DRESS,** the hand is placed upon the hip to verify the interval (par. 57). Each trooper in dressing so places himself that his right arm rests lightly against the arm of the man on his right and that his eyes and shoulders are in line with those of the man on his right. The left hand is dropped to the side at the command **FRONT.**

Leading the Squad.

(*See also* pars. 322–332.)

367. The squad being in line at a halt, the instructor directs the guide (par. 371) to maintain a position at a distance of 3 yards (about one horse length) in rear of him and to

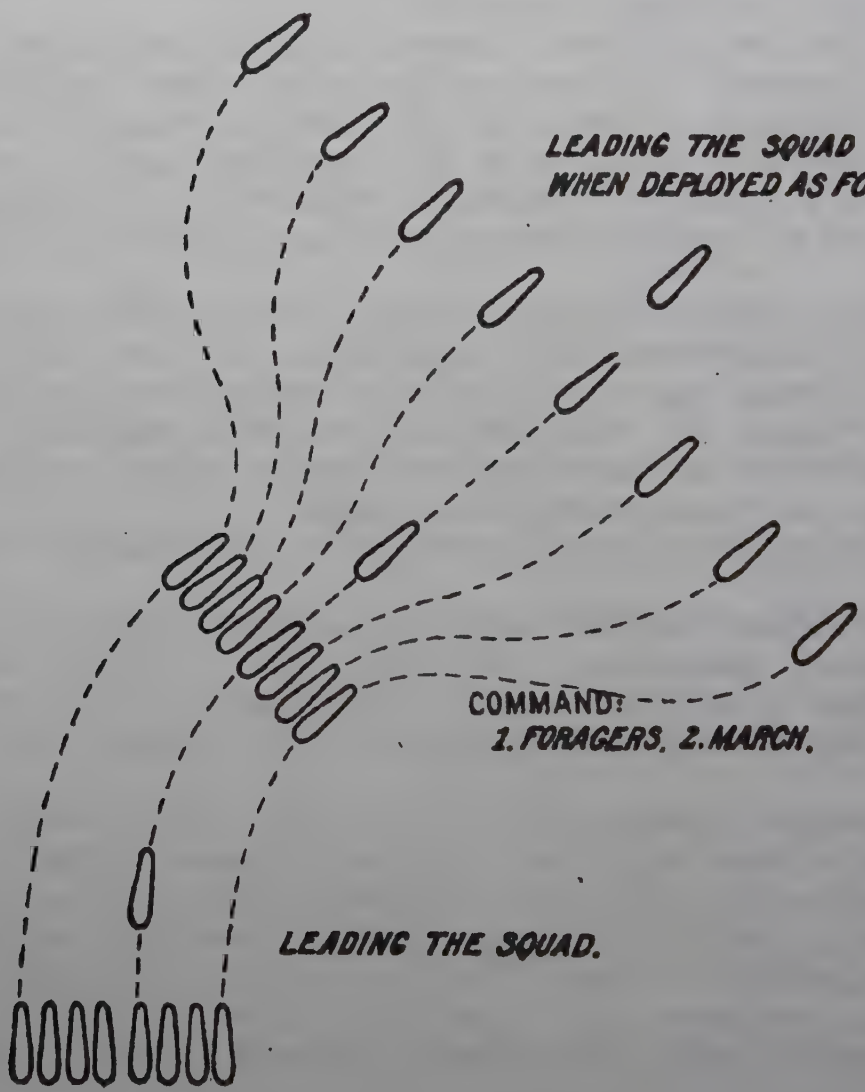


Fig. 31, par. 367.

follow accurately in his path, whether such path be a straight line or a curve. He explains to the other troopers that in marching they are so to regulate on the guide as to pre-

serve as nearly as practicable their alignment and interval in the rank, individually increasing and decreasing the gait or pace (Def.) as may be necessary to do this. All are cautioned that they must learn to keep their proper positions in the rank without unnecessary rigidity without making sudden changes in gait or pace and without keeping their eyes constantly fixed on the guide. They are instructed that while riding with the head and eyes habitually directed as in par. 198 they will keep an alert lookout over the ground in front, cast frequent glances toward the leader so as to observe the latter's movements, and glance occasionally toward the guide to assure that the alignment is being correctly maintained. Having given these instructions, the leader places himself, facing to the front, 3 yards in front of the guide, commands: **FOLLOW ME**, and moves forward. The leader must be careful to march steadily, so regulating his direction and gait at first as to enable the guide to conform without difficulty.

Each trooper keeps his horse straight in the rank, maintaining his alignment with the guide and his proper interval (par. 368–*a*) from the man next him on the side of the guide. The troopers yield to pressure from the side of the guide and resist pressure from the opposite direction. All adjustments are made gradually without crowding or confusion.

In the beginning the leader moves at a walk and makes only slight changes of direction. As the instructor completes each change of direction he indicates the *new* direction of march by extending his arm as in signal **forward** (par. 990), dropping the hand to the side when the guide's horse is *straightened in the new direction.* When the troopers have become sufficiently practiced in adjusting themselves to the movements of the instructor, the latter makes the changes of direction more marked, and moves, during such changes, on the arcs of smaller circles. Finally, he requires the squad to apply the principles of leading in the manner indicated in pars. 346–349. As each movement is taken up the principles of leading that apply are explained in detail, so that all may understand clearly the identity and position of the base. The base trooper (guide) must clearly understand his duties. (Fig. 31.)

Squad Formations.

The formations of the squad for drill, march, or combat are as follows:

CLOSE ORDER.

368. (*a*) **Line:** The troopers are abreast of each other with intervals (Def.) of 6 inches (mounted) or 4 inches (dismounted) between troopers.

(*b*) **Column of fours:** The troopers of each four are arranged as in line. The fours follow successively one behind another with distances (Def.) between successive fours of 4 feet, mounted, or 92 inches, dismounted. When a four includes less than four troopers it is an **incomplete four.** Places in an incomplete four are habitually filled in the following order: No. 2, No. 3, No. 4, No. 1 (par. 374).

(*c*) **Column of twos:** The troopers of each two are arranged as in line, the twos following successively, one behind another, with distances between successive twos of 4 feet, mounted, or 40 inches, dismounted. If any two have but a single trooper the latter takes the position corresponding to the right trooper of the incomplete two (par. 374).

(*d*) **Column of troopers:** The troopers of each four follow successively, one behind another, with distances between consecutive troopers of 4 feet when mounted, or 14 inches when dismounted.

EXTENDED ORDER.

(*e*) **Foragers:** The troopers are abreast of each other, with intervals of 3 yards between troopers, unless some other interval be specially designated.

The dismounted formation corresponding to **foragers** is **skirmishers.** The interval between troopers in line of skirmishers is one-half pace unless some other interval be designated.

In the employment of a squad or other small detachment the designation of a greater interval than one-half pace is habitual rather than exceptional (par. 408).

In a line of skirmishers at one-half pace interval each man may be considered as occupying, including his interval, about 1 yard of front.

The squad may also be extended in depth as prescribed in par. 413.

Order in the Squad.

369. When it is said that a unit is **in order** in any formation it is meant that the arrangement and condition of the component elements is such that the unit is ready to execute, in the accustomed manner, any movement that is intended to be executed from the formation in question. The conditions essential to **order** in each formation of the squad are stated in par. 370. The squad, in **line**, for example, would not be **in order** if the troopers did not know their numbers, for it could then execute no movement based upon the division into fours, twos, or troopers.

370. The squad in **line, column of fours, or foragers is in order** when the troopers of each four are arranged, from right to left in the four, in the order of their respective numbers, and each knows his number.

The squad in **column of twos is in order** when the twos of each four are next to each other in the column, odd numbers on the right, and each trooper knows his number.

When the two composed of 1 and 2 is in front, the column is said to be **right in front**; when the two composed of 3 and 4 is in front, the column is said to be **left in front.**

The squad in column of troopers is **in order** when the troopers of each four are next to one another in the column, are arranged from front to rear in the order 1, 2, 3, 4, or 4, 3, 2, 1, and each trooper knows his number. When the order is 1, 2, 3, 4, the column is said to be right in front; when the order is 4, 3, 2, 1, **left in front.**

It is not necessary to order in the squad, in any of the above formations, that a particular trooper or troopers be in any designated four, nor that the fours have any special relative order from right to left or front to rear.

GUIDE OF THE SQUAD.

(*See also* Def. **Base**, and par. 326.)

371. At the original formation of the squad in **line**, the leader designates a trooper by name as **guide** of the squad. The guide of the squad in **line** and **foragers** is habitually a trooper at or near the center of the squad; any trooper may, however, be designated as guide.

372. A trooper having once been designated as guide of the squad in line continues to act as such, in **line** or **foragers**, until another trooper be specifically designated as guide. With a view, however, to avoiding possible doubt as to the identity of the guide the leader at each change of formation that terminates in line or foragers habitually indicates the guide of the new formation.

373. To designate the guide the leader cautions: (So-and-so) **THE GUIDE**, and habitually places himself 3 yards in front of the trooper named if not already in that position. A trooper designated as guide will, at the time of the designation, raise his hand or weapon to a position vertically above his head, hold the position for a moment, and then lower his arm to his side without further command. The leader or his assistant may at any time cause the guide thus to indicate his identity to the other troopers by cautioning: **GUIDE.** The leader may change the guide of the squad in **line** at any time by indicating **disregard** (par. 990), placing himself in front of another trooper and designating the latter as guide in the manner prescribed above.

374. The base of the squad in each of the column formations is the leading element (four, two, or trooper, respectively).

The guide of the leading (base) element is also the guide of the squad. In each four No. 2 is the guide; in each two the right trooper (No. 1 or No. 3). In an incomplete four or two the position of the guide is always filled. The guide of each element in rear of the base follows in the trace of the guide of the base (leading) element at the prescribed distance.

375. Whenever in the execution of any movement a four or two moves to its new position by an oblique (or movement approximating an oblique) the trooper on the side toward

which the oblique is made acts as guide of the element during the oblique. At all other times the guide in a four or two is as indicated in par. 374 unless specially otherwise stated.

376. The guide of the squad habitually follows the leader at 3 yards distance, but the leader may designate a greater distance, in which case the guide marches accordingly.

377. When a guide temporarily is **directing guide** (par. 324), it is necessary that he continue accurately in the direction of march or in the direction indicated for him by the leader. This is an application of the marching upon fixed points prescribed in the **School of the Trooper** (par. 232).

Movements Executed by the Squad.

378. Any formation (close or extended order) prescribed for the squad may be taken directly from any other *close-order* formation. Being in extended order the squad, to pass directly to close order, must execute the assembly or rally.

379. Subject to such modifications as are indicated under the respective paragraphs describing the movements, the **dismounted squad** executes, at the same commands as prescribed for the mounted squad, such movements as are not obviously inapplicable to dismounted duty. The execution of the dismounted movements will, where differences in the mounted and dismounted methods necessarily exist, be in accord with the principles explained in the **School of the Trooper, Dismounted,** corresponding changes in the details of execution being made.

380. The general principles regulating gait and pace for both mounted and dismounted movements are stated in pars. 333–339. Modifications of those principles, if any, are stated under the corresponding paragraphs in the **School of the Squad.**

Commands and Corresponding Arm Signals.

381. Following is a list of the principal commands employed in the **School of the Squad,** together with the corresponding arm signals, if any. The list includes only a few of the commands also found in the **School of the Trooper** (mounted or dismounted). The commands are arranged alphabetically for convenient reference. The description of the signals will be found in par. 990.

COMMANDS.	PARS.	ARM SIGNALS.
1. Assemble, 2. **MARCH**	414	**Assemble.***
1. Backward, 2. **MARCH**	384	None.
1. By the right (left) flank, 2. **MARCH**	411	**March to the flank.***
CIRCLE HORSES	428	None.
1. Column, 2. **MARCH**	399	**Column.***
1. Column half right (left), 2. **MARCH**	396	**Change direction.*** (*See* par. 386.)
1. Column of twos, 2. **MARCH**	399	**Column—twos.**†
1. Column right (left), 2. **MARCH**	396	**Change direction.*** (*See* par. 386.)
COUPLE HEAD AND TAIL	427	None.
DISMOUNT	357	**Prepare to dismount.*** (Given as explained in par. 357.)
1. Foragers, 2. **MARCH**	408, 410	**Foragers.***
1. Forward, 2. **MARCH**	382, 412	**Forward.***
1. Fours right (left), 2. **MARCH**	391, 400	**March to the flank.***
1. Fours right (left) about, 2. **MARCH**	401, 402	**To the rear*** (left about only).
1. Fours right (left), column left (right); 2. **MARCH.**	403–c	None.
1. Fours (twos or troopers) at so many yards distance, 2. **MARCH.**	413	None.
1. Gallop, 2. **MARCH**	382	From the trot only: **Increase the gait.***a

* Signals marked thus are preparatory signals; the signal of execution in each case is made as prescribed in par. 990.

† In signals marked thus (combination signals) the preparatory signal consists of more than one element; the signal of execution follows the last element of the preparatory signal.

a See pars. 239, 333. When a gait signal is added to the preparatory command, the resulting signal is given as a combination signal.

COMMANDS.	PARS.	ARM SIGNALS.
HORSES BACK.....	432	None.
INCLINE TO THE RIGHT.....	390 396	None.
1. **Nos. 1, 2, and 4**; 2. **FORM ON FOOT**..	436	None.
MOUNT.....	355	**Prepare to mount.** (Given as explained in par. 355.)
1. **Prepare to dismount**, 2. **DISMOUNT** .	356 358	**Prepare to dismount.***
1. **Prepare to mount**, 2. **MOUNT**.....	354 358	**Prepare to mount.***
RALLY.....	416	**Rally** (no preparatory signal). Oral command habitually accompanies signal.
1. **Right (left) by fours**, 2. **MARCH**.....	403-*a*	None.
1. **Right (left) by troopers**, 2. **MARCH**..	393-*b* 403-*b*	None.
1. **Right (left) by twos**, 2. **MARCH**.....	393-*a* 403-*b*	None.
1. **Right (left) forward, fours right (left)**; 2. **MARCH.**	403-*d*	None.
1. **Right (left) half turn**, 2. **MARCH**; 3. **Forward**, 4. **MARCH**; or 3. **Squad**, 4. **HALT.**	388	**Change direction.*** The signal of execution for the change of direction is followed by **forward** or **halt*** (par. 386).
1. **Right (left) front into foragers** (or **skirmishers**), 2. **MARCH.**	409	None.
1. **Right (left) front into line**, 2. **MARCH**..	397	None.
1. **Right (left) turn**, 2. **MARCH**; 3. **Forward**, 4. **MARCH**; or 3. **Squad**, 4. **HALT.**	386	Change direction.* The signal of execution for the change of direction is followed by **forward*** or **halt.***

* Signals marked thus are preparatory signals; the signal of execution in each case is made as prescribed in par. 990.

COMMANDS.	PARS.	ARM SIGNALS.
1. **Skirmishers**, 2. **MARCH**.....	408 410	**Skirmishers.***
1. **Squad**, 2. **HALT**.....	383	**Halt.***
TO FIGHT ON FOOT. When given orally the indication **ACTION RIGHT (LEFT, FRONT)** is habitually added to the above command. **FIRE AT WILL** may also immediately follow the above command (par. 430).	430	**To fight on foot.** (No preparatory signal.)
1. **To the rear**, 2. **MARCH**.....	412	**To the rear.***
1. **Troopers right (left) about**, 2. **MARCH.** (Given only from column of troopers.)	402	To the rear * (left about only).
1. **Troopers right (left) oblique**, 2. **MARCH.**	385	None.
1. **Trot**, 2. **MARCH**.....	239	From the **walk: Increase the gait.***[a] From the **gallop: Decrease the gait.***[a]
1. **Twos right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.** (Given only from column of twos and as an exceptional movement.)	400	**March to the flank.***
1. Twos right (left) about 2. **MARCH.** (Given only from column of twos.)	402	To the rear * (left about only).
1. **Walk**, 2. **MARCH**.....	239	From the trot only: **Decrease the gait.***[a]

*Signals marked thus are preparatory signals; the signal of execution in each case is made as prescribed in par. 410.

[a] See pars. 239, 333. When a gait signal is added to the preparatory command, the resulting signal is given as a combination signal.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF MOVEMENTS, CLOSE ORDER.

382. Being in line at a halt, to march to the front: 1. Forward, 2. MARCH.

The leader moves forward, followed at a distance of 3 yards by the guide (par. 371). The other troopers conform to the march of the guide as explained in par. 367.

Being at a halt, to move forward at a trot or gallop, the commands are (par. 333): 1. **Forward, trot,** or 1. **Forward, gallop;** 2. **MARCH.**

Increases of gait are habitually made progressively (par. 239).

The march of the squad in line, dismounted, is conducted in accordance with the provisions of pars. 68–74.

383. Marching in line, to halt: 1. Squad, 2. HALT.

All halt at the second command.

The troopers, if not already aligned, align themselves without command on the guide as they halt (par. 364). Movement in the rank then ceases.

If marching at the trot or gallop, the gait is ordinarily decreased progressively, the halt being executed from the walk (par. 239).

384. Being in line at a halt, to march backward: 1. Backward, 2. MARCH.

All the troopers rein back (par. 280), regulating on the guide, who maintains his distance from the leader. The execution of the march backward as a *collective movement* is habitually limited to cases where the movement may be necessary; it is then executed for short distances only. It is not executed at an increased gait.

385. Being in line, to oblique and resume the original direction: 1. Troopers right (left) oblique, 2. MARCH.

Executed by each trooper as in par. 230. During the oblique march the right knee of each trooper should be just in rear of the left knee of the trooper on his right; the trooper on the flank toward which the oblique is made acts temporarily without special indication as directing guide (Def.) of the squad. The line during the oblique march should be parallel to its original direction. The leader does not take position in front of the flank trooper during the oblique.

Halting the mounted squad while at the **oblique** should be avoided. If the squad has to be halted thus, the troopers upon halting turn their horses to the original front in so far as practicable.

To resume the original direction by similar means, the commands are: 1. **Forward**, 2. **MARCH.**

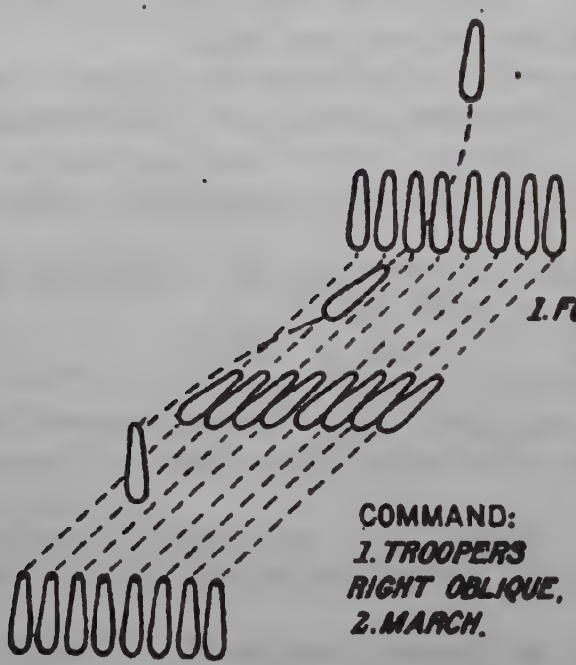


FIG. 32, par. 385.

In executing the oblique by trooper, dismounted, each trooper preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the directing guide and so regulating his step that the rank may remain parallel to its original front. In resuming the original direction, the troopers half face to the left in marching, then move straight to the front. If at **half step** or **mark time** while obliquing, the oblique march is resumed by the commands: 1. **Oblique**, 2. **MARCH.** Should the halt be commanded while the squad is obliquing, the troopers halt faced to the front (fig. 32).

386. Being in line, to turn to the right or left: 1. Right (left) **turn**, 2. **MARCH**; 3. **Forward**, 4. **MARCH**; or 3. **Squad**, 4. **HALT.**

The principle of the movement is explained in par. 329–a.

The form of the third and fourth commands is determined by whether the turn is to terminate with the advance in line or with the halt.

In the turn the squad is led by its leader (par. 367) through a change of direction of 90°. The leader (and, therefore, the guide) are restricted not only to this particular change of

direction but also to a particular arc or path during the turn (par. 387).

There is no special arm signal for the *turn* as such; but, as the turn is a change of direction, the signal for the latter movement is applicable. The signal for the change of direction does not in itself indicate the degree of the turn, but the leader's subsequent signal forward or halt indicates when the change of direction is to cease.

In the turn, as in any case of the march in line, the leader, subject to the restrictions just indicated, regulates the direction and gait of march, the guide conforms to the movements of the leader, and all the other troopers regulate their alignment and interval on the guide. The rate of march of the leader and the guide should not be so rapid as to make it impracticable for the troopers on the marching flank of the squad to preserve their alignment on the guide during the turn. The guide moves in the *trace of the leader during the turn*, as well as before and after the turn. When the turn is executed by the *marching squad* the leader gives the command after he has begun to change direction and at the moment when the guide arrives at the *point where the leader straightened his horse in the new direction* (par. 471). When executed from a *halt* the second command can not be given as above indicated. The leader in that case begins to turn at the command of execution while the guide, instead of beginning the actual turn at once, moves forward so as to move, during the turn, *in the trace of the leader* (par. 367).

In executing the turn dismounted the leader so regulates the length of step of the guide that the *trooper on the marching flank* can keep the regular step corresponding to the gait at which the turn is made. The other troopers lengthen or shorten the step accordingly, maintaining the cadence and their alignment and interval with respect to the guide. If the turn be terminated by the commands: 3. **Forward,** 4. **MARCH,** all the troopers resume the regular step at the fourth command.

387. In executing the turn in a *squad* or *platoon*, the leader, followed by the guide, so turns on the arc of a circle that the pivot trooper, in *conforming to the guide's movements*, marches on the arc of a circle whose radius varies with the gait of the guide, this radius being 2 yards at a walk, 4 yards at a trot,

and 6 yards at a gallop. When the turn is executed dismounted the corresponding radius, in either quick or double time, is 1 yard.

388. At the command: 1. **Right (left) half turn,** 2. **MARCH;** 3, **Forward,** 4. **MARCH;** or 3. **Squad,** 4. **HALT,** a change of direction of 45° may be made in accordance with the principles explained in pars. 386 and 387. The arm signal for the half turn follows the rule indicated for the full turn (par 386).

389. In all movements in these regulations in the course of which **fours, twos,** or **troopers** execute a turn or half turn this last movement is made by each element in accordance with the principles explained in pars. 386 and 387, except that the commands 3. **Forward,** 4. **MARCH,** are omitted and each element continues the march in the new direction, upon completion of the turn, unless the commands: 3. **Squad,** 4. **HALT,** are given. The guide of a four in the turn is always No. 2; the guide of a two the right trooper.

390. Where only a slight change in the direction of march is desired, it is habitually accomplished by leading without any special command or signal therefor. The leader may caution: **INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT).** The execution of this movement, like that of the turn, is a special case of leading applied to the march in line. The leader slightly alters the direction of march, the guide conforms to the leader's movements, and the other troopers conform to the movements of the guide.

391. Being in line, to form column of fours to a flank: 1. **Fours right (left),** 2. **MARCH.**

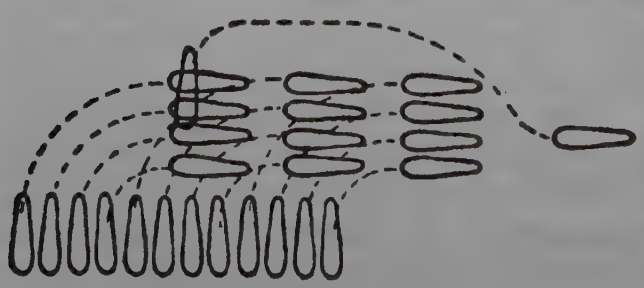


FIG. 33, par. 391.

The fours move simultaneously, each executing **right turn** and taking up the march in the new direction (par. 389). No. 2 of the four on the flank toward which the movement is executed is the guide upon whom the other Nos. 2 regulate during the movement (par. 326), as well as the guide of the resulting column (par. 374). The leader promptly takes position in front of the guide (par. 325). Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*d*.

The movement dismounted is executed on the same principles except that No. 2 of each four regulates his step and path as indicated for the dismounted turn (pars. 386, 387). (Fig. 33.)

392. Column of twos is not formed directly to a flank from line. Column of twos may be formed to the *front* as explained in pars. 393 and 403, and the head of the column be at once marched in any desired direction. The same principle regulates the formation of **column of troopers** to a flank.

393. Being in column of fours, to form column of twos or troopers:

(*a*) To form column of twos: **1. Right (left) by twos, 2. MARCH.**

The right two of the leading four is the base. The other twos enter the column successively, the right two of each four being followed immediately by the left two of the same four, the left two obliquing to enter the column (par. 331). All distances are 4 feet (par. 368). Gaits are regulated as in movements from line into column (par. 337–*a*, *c*).

(*b*) **Column of troopers** is formed on the same principles at the commands: **1. Right (left) by trooper, 2. MARCH.** The right trooper of the leading four is the base.

Column of troopers from column of twos is formed by the same commands as from column of fours and in accordance with the same principles.

The movements described in this paragraph are among those referred to in par. 468–b.

394. In executing any movement by which a column of twos or troopers is formed, a four composed of less than three troopers (par. 368–*b*) acts temporarily as a two—on the right of the four if the column of twos is formed **right in front** (par. 370); on the left of the four if the column of twos is formed **left in front.** When the column of fours is re-formed the troopers take their proper places in column as indicated in par. 368–*b*.

395. The squad in column of **fours, twos, or troopers** is marched to the front, halted, marched backward, marched in an oblique direction, and marched again to the original front by the same commands as the squad in line, each element of

the column conforming to the principles indicated for the squad in line (pars. 329, 374).

396. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to change direction.

The movement is executed as explained in par. 329, the fours (twos, troopers) successively changing on the same ground, the guide of each element moving in the trace of the leader.

In changing direction in column of fours, *mounted*, the guide of each rear four slightly diminishes the *pace* when 4 feet from the turning point, correspondingly increasing the pace during the actual change of direction so as to have the proper distance of 4 feet from the four next in front when the turn is completed. This provision does not apply to the corresponding dismounted movement, nor to the column of twos, or troopers.

To indicate, for any column a change of direction of 90° or 45°, the leader may command, respectively: 1. **Column right (left)**, or 1. **Column half right (left)**; 2. **MARCH.**

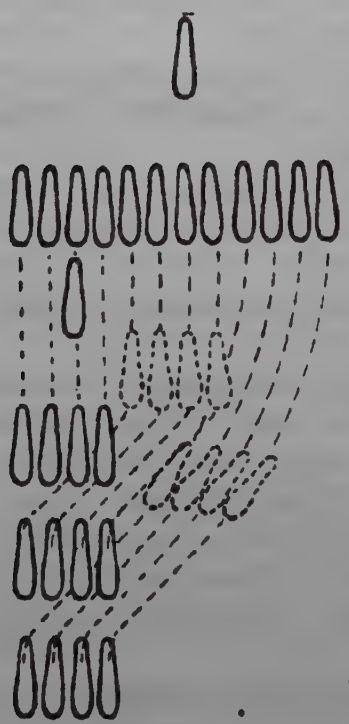


FIG. 34, par. 397.

The leader may indicate a slight change of direction by the caution: **INCLINE TO THE RIGHT.**

The dismounted execution of the change of direction conforms in each element of the column to the modifications noted in pars. 386 and 387 for the execution of the turn dismounted. The leader regulates the length of his own step accordingly during his actual change of direction, and the guide of each successive element does the same when he reaches the turning point.

397. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to form line to the front: 1. **Right (left) front into line,** 2. **MARCH.**

The leading element (four, two, or trooper) of the column is the base of the movement and moves forward.

Each element in rear of the base leaves the column by a movement approximating a right oblique and proceeds (par. 375) to a place abreast of the leading element, the elements taking successively, from left to right in the new line, positions in the same order as that in which they previously appeared from head to rear in the column.

The guide of the leading element, when the movement begins, acts as directing guide (Def.) of the squad from the moment the leader starts to his new position until he indicates the guide of the new line (pars. 326, 373) when all regulate on the latter guide.

Gaits are regulated as in pars. 337–*a*, *b*. (Fig. 34.)

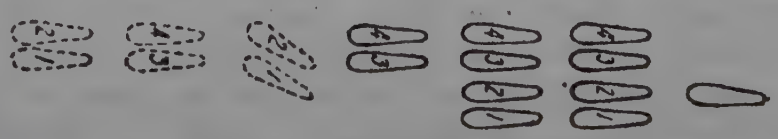
This is one of the movements referred to in par. 468–b.

In the dismounted execution of the movement at quick time the leader commands: 1. **Squad**, 2. **HALT**, as soon as the leading element has advanced to the point where it is desired that the line shall form (par. 339–*a*, *b*, *c*). Only the leading (base) element halts at the command, each rear element halting as it arrives on the line (par. 337–*f*). If executed while marching in double time, the leader similarly commands: 1. **Quick time**, 2. **MARCH**, the reduced gait being taken successively by the elements as they reach their positions (par. 337–*f*). If marching in quick time, and **double time** be included in the command, the command for the increased gait applies only to the rear elements (par. 337–*f*).

398. To prevent the inversion of twos or troopers in their respective fours the squad in **column of twos or column of troopers** should form line to the left front when the squad is right in front (par. 370), and vice versa.

399. Being in column of twos or troopers, to form column of fours: 1. Column, 2. MARCH. (*See* Def. **Column.**)

The leading element is the base and follows the leader.



COMMAND: *1. COLUMN, 2. MARCH*

FIG. 35, par. 399.

If in column of twos the rear two of the leading four obliques at a correspondingly faster gait (par. 335) and takes its proper place abreast of, and to the *right or left* of, the leading two of that four, so

that the troopers of the four shall appear, from right to left, in the order of their respective numbers. All the other twos take up a correspondingly faster gait than the leading two, and the fours form successively from head to rear in the column in the manner indicated above (par. 331). The leading two of each four, other than the leading four, takes the gait of the head of the column (or halts) when at 4 feet from the corresponding two of the four next in front. In each four the rear two begins to oblique as the leading two of that four approaches the position where it decreases the gait (or halts).

The leader takes position in front of the guide of the column (No. 2).

Gaits are further regulated as in movements from column into line (par. 337–*a*, *b*).

Column of fours from column of troopers is formed by the same commands and in accordance with the same principles.

Column of twos from column of troopers is formed in a similar manner at the commands: 1. **Column of twos,** 2. **MARCH.** The column of twos will be right in front or left in front (par. 370), according as the column of troopers was right in front or left in front prior to the movement.

In the dismounted execution of the above movements in **quick time** the leader habitually commands: 1. **Squad,** 2. **HALT,** immediately following the command of execution (par. 339–*b*, *c*). Only the leading element halts (par. 339–*f*), each of the rear elements halting when it reaches its prescribed position in the column. If executed in **double time** the leader similarly follows the command of execution by the command for **quick time** (par. 339–*b*, *c*), which is successively taken by the elements, as above. If marching in **quick time,** and **double time** be commanded, only the rear elements take the increased gait, each taking **quick time** on arriving in its place. (Fig. 35.)

400. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to form line to a flank: 1. Fours right (left), 2. MARCH.

Each four turns to the right (par. 389). Each rear four regulates on the leading four until the fours unite in line (par. 326), when, unless the leader halts the squad, all take up the march in the new direction *without further command*, regulating on the new guide (pars. 325, 372). If the squad is to form line without advancing in the new direction, the leader

gives the preparatory indication for the halt immediately following the second command, so as to add the command **halt** as the fours unite in line.

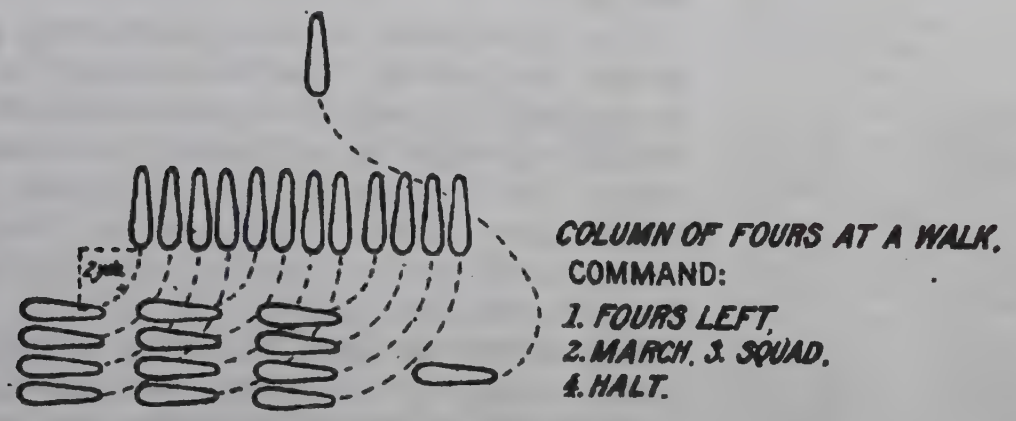


FIG. 36, par. 400.

In an emergency a similar movement may be executed from **columns of twos** at the commands: 1. **Twos right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.** Loss of **order** may result. In the absence of other indication, intervals are closed toward the guide (par. 372). A similar movement executed from column of troopers results in a line of foragers, which may be assembled or rallied to form line (pars. 414, 416).

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*d*. (Fig. 36.)

401. Being in line, to face or march the line to the rear: 1. Fours right (left) about, 2. MARCH.

When the movement is executed by **signal** the elements of the column always turn to the *left* about. The oral command **fours right about** is not accompanied by an arm signal.

Each four turns 180 degrees in the direction indicated (par. 389). The leader, passing around a flank of the squad, promptly takes position in front of the guide so as to lead the squad in the new direction (pars. 325, 372).

To face to the rear, the squad is halted as the fours unite in line.

The modifications incident to the execution of the dismounted movement are indicated in par. 391.

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*d*.

A dismounted squad may also be marched a short distance to the rear by the *oral* command and methods indicated in par. 82.

402. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to face or march the column to the rear: 1. Fours (twos, troopers), right (left) about, 2. MARCH.

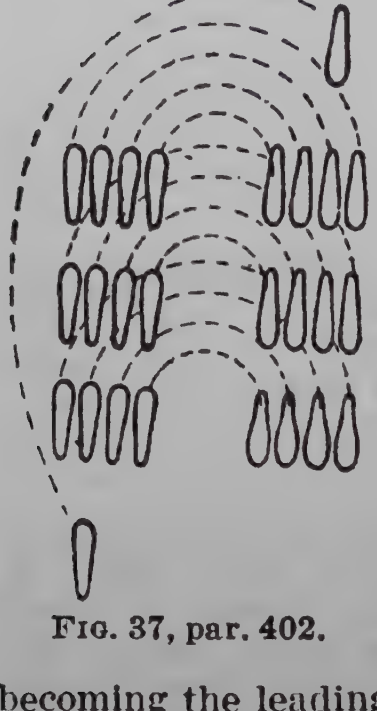


FIG. 37, par. 402.

The provision in the preceding paragraph regarding the execution of the movement by signal applies equally to this paragraph. Each four (two, trooper) turns 180 degrees in the direction indicated (par. 389). The leader promptly takes position in front of the guide of the column (par. 325). (Fig. 37.)

403. Being in line to form column of fours, twos, or troopers to the front: 1. Right (left) by fours (twos, troopers), 2. MARCH.

The formation is a successive one. The right element (four, two, or trooper, according to the command) is the base; it moves forward and follows the leader, becoming the leading element of the column.

(*a*) In forming column of fours each four to the left of the base successively obliques to the right (par. 385) at the gait of the base as soon as it has sufficient space, and resumes the direct march so as to enter the column at 4 feet distance. To avoid losing distance the oblique must be begun in each four when the heads of its horses are opposite the croups of the horses of the four on its right. Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *c*. (Fig. 38.)

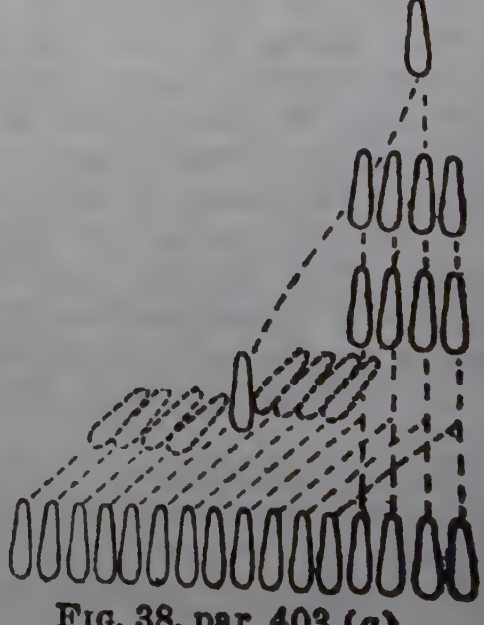


FIG. 38, par. 403 (*a*).

(*b*) In forming column of twos or troopers only the elements of the right four move in the manner indicated above. Each of the other elements successively turns to the right (par. 389) and then, after advancing in the new direction, turns to the left so as to

enter the column at 4 feet distance (par. 331). Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *c*. The movements described in (*a*) and (*b*) are among those referred to in par. 468–*b*. (Fig. 39.)

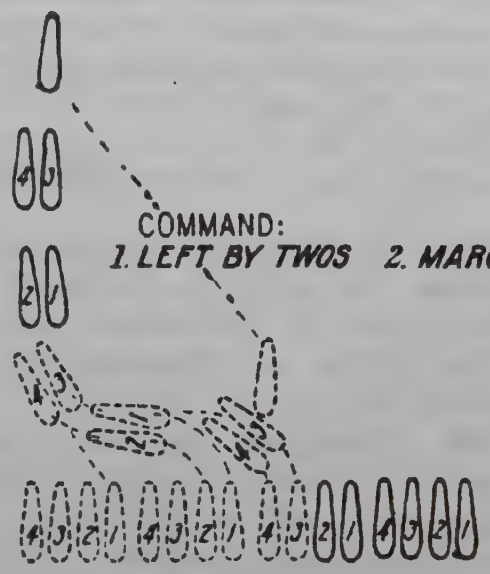


FIG. 39, par. 403 (*b*).

(*c*) **Right (left) by fours** is ordinarily unsuited to execution in groups of any size. Should it be necessary to break to the front from the *flank* of such a unit, column of fours to the front may be formed by executing **fours right (left)** and then changing the direction of march of the head of the column. The oral commands: 1. **Fours right (left), column left (right),** 2. **MARCH**, and 1. **Fours right (left), column half left (right),** 2. **MARCH**, are authorized for this purpose. Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*d*.

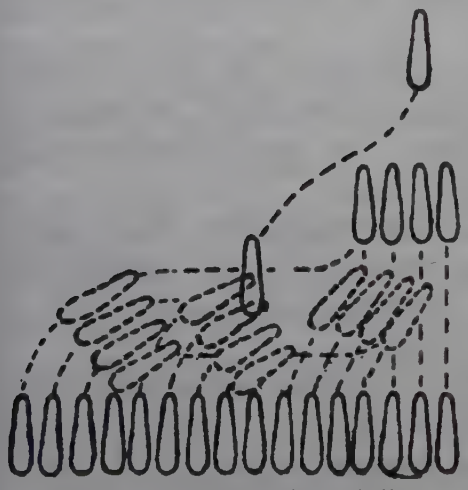


FIG. 40, par. 403 (*d*).

(*d*) For cases that are *not suitably met by* (*a*) *or* (*c*) *of this paragraph* the commands: 1. **Right (left) forward, fours right (left),** 2. **MARCH,** are authorized. The right four is the base and moves forward following the leader, who promptly takes position in front of the guide of the column (pars. 325, 374). The second four from the right starts to move as in **fours right** (par. 391), its guide decreasing the pace until the right four has partly cleared the second four, when the latter four, by a movement approximating an oblique, enters the column so as to follow in the trace of the leading (original right) four at 4 feet distance. The other fours execute **fours right** (each slightly decreasing the pace during the turn), and then **column left,** so as to follow the second four at the proper distance. The fours move simultaneously and, except as noted above, all at the same gait (par. 337–*d*).

In the execution of the movement dismounted the right four moves forward; the remainder of the squad executes **fours right, column left,** and follows the right (leading) four at 92 inches distance. The right four takes four short steps just after it, clears the four next on its left, then resumes the full step. (Fig. 40.)

Extended Order.

404. In extended-order drills the troopers habitually march **at ease,** but keep on the alert so as promptly to conform to the indications of the leader and the movements of the guide.

The rifles of dismounted troopers in extended order are carried as in par. 61.

405. Foragers may be formed when the squad is in any authorized formation (par. 468) or in disorder, when it is moving at any gait or is halted. The extension is effected toward the direction of march. When possible the deployment should be made upon ground protected from hostile view and fire. Whatever the method employed for the extension, the leader controls the movements of the base (par. 323). The other troopers, moving at a *gallop*, form **foragers** in accordance with the methods indicated.

The squad, deployed as **foragers,** is marched to the front and halted, obliques, resumes the original direction, executes changes in gait and changes of direction, by the commands and methods prescribed for the squad in **line.**

406. The appropriate substitution of **skirmishers for foragers,** is made in the commands for movements in extended order, dismounted (par. 368–*e*). The skirmishers move at a run to their positions on the line of foragers.

407. A greater or less interval than 3 yards between foragers may be ordered, the words **at (so many) yards** being added to the preparatory command so as immediately to follow the word **foragers** or **skirmishers.**

408. Being in line, to form foragers: 1. Foragers, 2. MARCH.

The guide continues to be the base and advances (par. 405) at the gait of march unless the leader indicates otherwise (pars. 337–*f*, 405). The troopers to the right of the guide move at a gallop obliquely to the right front; those to the left obliquely to the left front. The troopers take position

abreast of the base in the same order as in line and at intervals of 3 yards measured from the side of the base. Should the right trooper be the guide, all oblique to the left; should the left trooper be the guide, all oblique to the right.

In the execution of the corresponding dismounted movement (commands: 1. **Skirmishers**, 2. **MARCH**—par. 406) the troopers move to their places at a run, taking intervals of one-half pace, unless some other interval be indicated (pars. 368–*e*, 407). (Fig. 31.)

409. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to form foragers: 1. Right (left) front into foragers, 2. MARCH.

The *left trooper* of the leading element of the column as the base of the deployment advances at the gait of march (par. 337–*a*) unless the leader indicates otherwise (pars. 337–*f*, 405), the other troopers of the leading element deploying as indicated in par. 408. The remaining troopers move obliquely to the right front at a gallop and extend the line in similar manner, the order of the successive elements being the same, from left to right in line, as it formerly was from head to rear in the column.

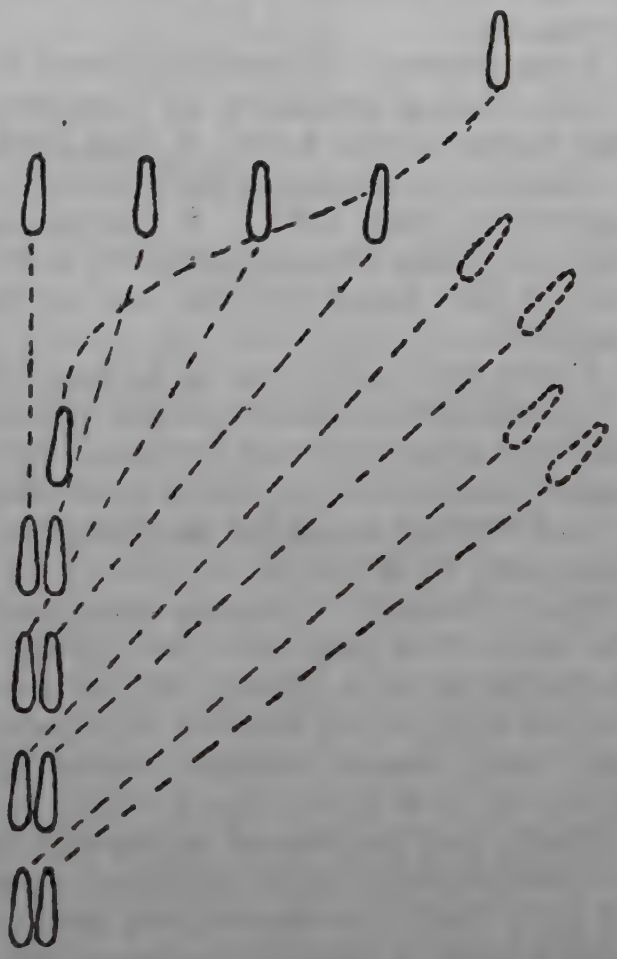


FIG. 41, par. 409.

The possibility of the inversion of troopers in the fours as a result of forming foragers from column of *twos* or *troopers* should be kept in mind. No such inversion can occur in movements executed from column of fours. The movement described in this paragraph is one of those referred to in par. 468–*b*. (Fig. 41.)

410. Being in disorder, to form foragers:

Foragers may be formed from any condition of dispersion or disorder by methods similar to those indicated in pars. 408 and 409. At the command: 1. **Foragers,** 2. **MARCH,** the troopers nearest the leader ride toward him at a gallop. The leader indicates the guide (par. 373), who follows the leader; the other troopers, moving at a gallop, take position, with the proper interval, on the right and left of the guide, without regard to order.

Line of foragers from a condition of disorder may also be formed by first rallying the squad (par. 416) and then forming foragers.

Dismounted, skirmishers may similarly be formed.

411. Being deployed as foragers, to march to a flank: 1. By the right (left) flank, 2. MARCH.

Each trooper turns 90° to the right and marches in the new direction (par. 389). A column of troopers at 4 feet distance results. The line of foragers may be resumed by again marching to the flank by the use of corresponding commands and methods.

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*d*.

Dismounted, each trooper moves as in par. 81. If at a halt the movement of the foragers by the flank is executed by the same commands as when marching.

412. Being deployed as foragers, to march to the rear: 1. To the rear, 2. MARCH.

Each trooper executes an about to the *left* (pars. 389, 486). To march again to the front the commands: 1. **Forward,** 2. **MARCH,** are given. Each trooper executes another about to the *left*. If a line of foragers be halted while marching to the rear, each trooper turns to the left about and halts, faced to the front (par. 474).

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*d*.

Dismounted, each trooper executes **to the rear** (par. 82). If at a halt, the movement of the foragers to the rear is executed by the same commands as when marching.

413. The squad may be extended in depth as well as in front. The commands are: 1. **Fours (twos, or troopers) at so many yards distance,** 2. **MARCH.** This movement may be used to cross a fire-swept area when such a course is necessary. The

leader indicates the point where the squad is to be reassembled. The fours (twos or troopers) move out successively from head to rear in column or right to left in line. Each element may extend laterally on its guide. The gait is the gallop.

414. Being deployed as foragers and in order (par. 470) to assemble: 1. Assemble, 2. MARCH. The guide advances and follows the leader. The other troopers close in on the guide and form in line upon him in the same relative order in which they were at the moment the assembly was commanded. The leader halts the guide at any time if it is desired to assemble without gaining further ground in the direction of march. The leader, by moving in any desired direction, may regulate the direction toward which the assembly is executed. Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*e*, the elements other than the base taking a correspondingly faster gait. The assembly in each unit is explained for that unit (par. 468–*b*).

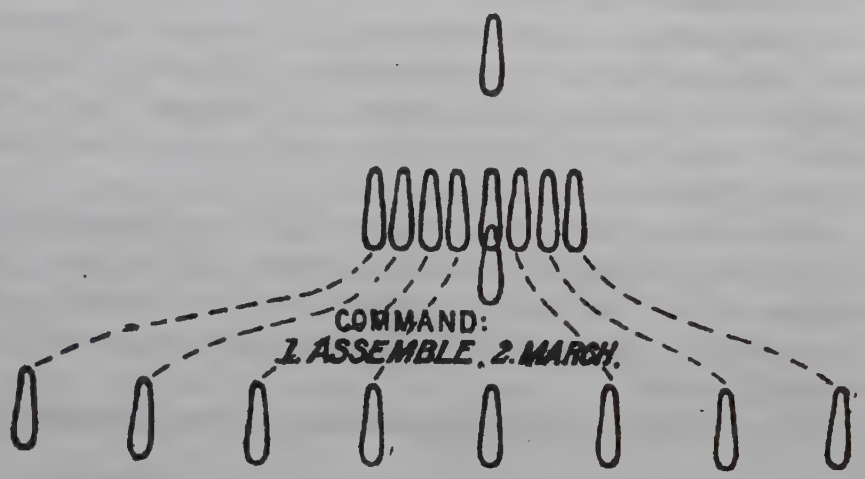


FIG. 42, par. 414.

The leader may, by prior designation of any trooper (e. g., a flank trooper) as guide (par. 373), cause the assembly to be executed on that trooper by the commands and methods just indicated.

The troopers always start to assemble in line, but when an assembly in column is desired it may virtually be accomplished by the leader's designation of a flank trooper as the guide before ordering the assembly and cautioning: **COLUMN** as soon as the assembly begins. The fours, as they successively assemble toward the base, then take their places in **column of fours** instead of in line; the leader takes post in front of No. 2 (par. 325).

If there be not space to advance in column of fours, the assembly in **column of twos** or **troopers** may be accomplished by corresponding commands and methods.

The *squad* executes **assemble** only when deployed as foragers and **in order.** Under other conditions the **rally** (par. 416), followed by **count fours,** more easily accomplishes the purposes of the **assembly** (Def.).

In executing the assembly dismounted the troopers close in on the guide in double time *without special command* if the guide and leader continue to advance (par. 339–*g*); otherwise they close in at quick time unless **double time** be commanded (par. 339–*b*). (Fig. 42.)

415. If **to the rear** (par. 412) be executed by the squad, a temporary loss of **order** occurs. If it be desired to pass to close order without resuming the march to the front and assembling (par. 414), the squad may rally (par. 416) and count fours.

416. Being in any formation, or not formed, or in disorder, to

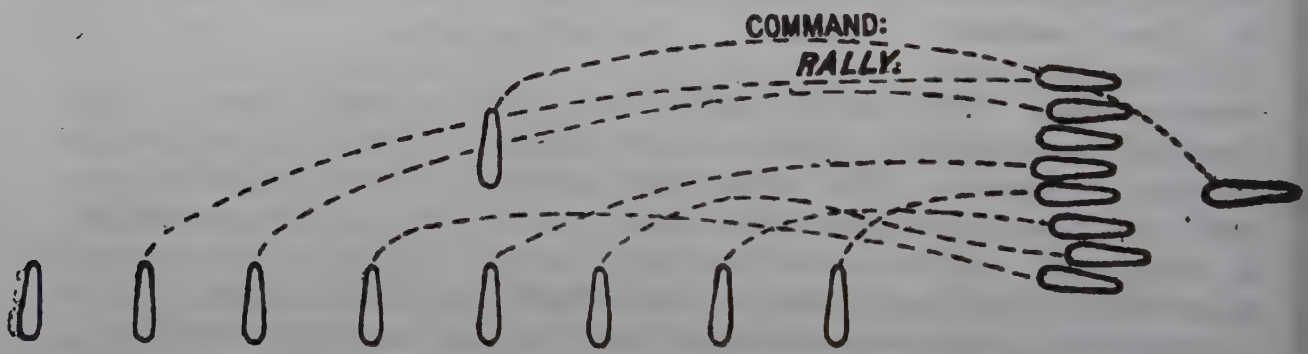


FIG. 43, par. 416.

rally: RALLY. *When the rally is ordered the signal is habitually accompanied by the oral command, both the signal and the oral command being repeated until understood and obeyed. The signal is obeyed at once, there being no preparatory command for this movement.*

The leader takes position at any point or moves in any desired direction, and at any gait that will permit the movement to be executed. The troopers ride toward the leader at an extended gallop and, in the absence of other indication, form in rear of the leader in line. The leader promptly designates the guide (pars. 371, 373), who follows the leader. The

other troopers form, as they come up, on the right and left of the guide extending the line. The leader may caution: **COLUMN**, as the leading troopers approach. The troopers then form in **column of fours** instead of in **line**. The leading element forms first; the other troopers, as they arrive, successively form fours, extending the column to the rear. The leader designates the guide (pars. 373, 374) and cautions: **NOTE YOUR NUMBERS**. The rally in column is exceptional and is intended for use only on occasions when a narrow road or other circumstances of the terrain prevent the rally in line.

Should the route along which the leader is moving when the rally is ordered be too narrow to permit the formation of column of fours, the leader may caution: **COLUMN OF TWOS (COLUMN OF TROOPERS)** as the leading troopers approach. The movement is executed as explained for the rally in column of fours. Fours should be counted at once. The rally in column of twos or troopers is to be regarded as very exceptional.

The squad being rallied in line, though ordinarily not **in order** until fours are counted (par. 470), is available at once to charge or to execute any movement that does not involve a knowledge of their respective numbers on the part of the individual troopers. Unless the charge is to be executed at once, fours should be counted without delay after rallying, so that the squad may be **in order** and ready to execute any movements whatever that conditions may demand.

The rally, dismounted, is always executed at a run. (Fig. 43.)

The Mounted Attack.

417. The mounted attack is made with the pistol or saber in accordance with the principles indicated in par. 562–565. The typical saber charge is executed in **line**. Under some circumstances, as in the attack of a dispersed enemy, etc., a saber charge may be made by troopers deployed as **foragers**. The pistol attack is usually made in **foragers**. In exceptional circumstances (as in breaking out from an ambush, attacking in a narrow road, etc.) it may be made in **line** or in **column of fours, twos, or troopers.**

418. Cohesion in the line and vigor in the shock are essential to the success of the *saber charge.* High speed is necessary for the desired shock; and in the saber charge, as executed in combat, the horses are, at the culmination of the charge, habitually "turned loose" and urged to the highest speed. This, except with men and horses that are highly trained, necessarily involves *loss of control* over the horse on the part of the trooper. The saber charge, executed with poorly trained horsemen, especially if on imperfectly trained or excitable horses, is apt to be futile as regards the instruction of the trooper and to result in more or less permanent loss of control over the horses. *Control of the mount* by the trooper is essential during the execution of the *pistol attack* (ordinarily made in line of foragers), and is, of course, necessary during march and maneuver. For these reasons it is considered advisable that the first instruction of the recruit in the actual saber charge be deferred until after platoon instruction and that it be given then only after the troop commander is satisfied that the recruit's progress in horsemanship and in the use of his weapon has advanced to a point when the exercise will be of value.

419. The work in the squad, with a view to *preparing the recruit for the mounted attack with the saber and pistol,* will therefore be limited to those exercises in which the horse is *controlled.* It should consist, in substance, of an extension to collective work of the individual instruction described in par. 297, and should include occasional practice in advancing as rapidly as can be done while maintaining a close formation and control of the mount. The increase in speed should be made quietly and progressively, be continued but a short distance, and *invariably be terminated by the quiet resuming of a slow gait.* As the recruit gets more skill and confidence the exercise will be conducted with sabers drawn, the troopers taking the charging position (par. 251) when the instructor does so and returning to the *carry* with him. Similar exercises will be conducted with the pistol, with especial attention to directing the horses through lines of silhouette targets and to drawing, returning, and manipulating the pistol. The exercises with the pistol will usually be conducted in foragers and may be extended to include the actual execution of the pistol attack as described in the **School of the Platoon.**

In campaign any small group executes the mounted attack as explained for the platoon.

420. In combat of every kind skill on the part of the individual trooper in the use of the weapon or weapons employed is essential. So important is this part of the training that where time for the training of the troopers is limited all but the most essential portions of close-order drill should be deferred or omitted in order that the training of the trooper in the use of his weapons may be thorough and efficient.

Movements for Passing from Mounted Action to Dismounted Action.

421. A body of troops that resorts to dismounted action may leave with the horses a sufficient number of horse holders to permit a change of position of the horses to be made at any time by leading. The led horses are then said to be **mobile.**

When the horses of a body of troops that resorts to dismounted action are so linked, tied, or grouped that they can not change position without a change of formation, or the assistance of additional horse holders, or both, the horses are said to be **immobile.**

Mobility of the led horses has the advantages incident to the possibility of quickly changing position, but it is open to the objection that it involves withdrawing a large percentage of the troopers from the dismounted firing line.

422. When the horses are mobile (par. 421) a trooper is designated to take immediate charge of the horses and of the men who remain with the horses (par. 431). Such designation, if not made in advance (par. 434), is habitually made immediately preceding or following the commands for passing to dismounted action. When the horses are left immobile a trooper is similarly designated to take charge.

423. With a view to putting the squad into dismounted action, the horses of the squad may be **coupled head and tail** in pairs (par. 427); or grouped in a **circle** (par. 428); or the squad may be dismounted to **fight on foot** and the horses of each two or four left in charge of a mounted horse holder (par. 430).

424. Whenever the horses are **coupled** or **circled**, or the squad is dismounted to **fight on foot**, the leader dismounts

promptly and runs toward the position where he desires the dismounted men to form. The dismounted troopers run at once toward the leader and form in rear of him in line, or in such formation as he may indicate, without any attention to previous relative order in the squad. Should the leader command: 1. **Skirmishers**, 2. **MARCH**, the troopers proceed directly to places on the indicated line, taking advantage of the available cover. Movements of the dismounted squad are executed in accordance with the usual commands and methods; they should be of the simplest possible character. Fours may be counted if necessary for any purpose.

425. The horses of a dismounted squad may be held without linking or fastened together by twos, by fours, or in a single group. The details of securing the horses, whether coupled, circled, or linked together for leading, vary with the particular equipment in use. The bridoon (snaffle) reins, halter rope (or strap), or link may each be employed to fasten horses together. The reins of the curb bit should never be so employed, and when the link is used it should never be attached to the ring of the curb bit.

In coupling head and tail with the 1912 equipment (which is provided with no link) the two horses of each pair may be kept together by tying the bridoon reins of each horse to the cantle of the saddle of the other. One method is to place the horses with their right sides together and tie the bridoon reins of each to the attaching strap of the saber carrier of the other. When the McClellan saddle is used with equipment of the type issued prior to 1912, coupling may be done by securing each horse's head to the cantle ring on the saddle of the other horse of the pair.

When a horse is tied or linked to another for leading (par. 431), the bridoon reins, halter rope, or link of the first horse is secured to the halter ring of the second.

When horses are grouped in a circle, each horse may be fastened to a small circle of rope or leather. A coiled lariat or extra stirrup strap may be used for this purpose. The number of horses in a full-strength section (16) is about the maximum number that should be so grouped.

A horse that is tied or linked to another horse by any of the methods indicated above will be more easily controlled

if the fastening rein, rope, or link be short. When horses are tied together, a slip knot should be used.

426. Whenever horses are fastened together by any of the indicated methods or are held or led by horse holders, the curb reins of each dismounted trooper and the snaffle reins, except when used to hold or tie the horse, are placed behind the pommel and secured by crossing a stirrup in front of the pommel. Each trooper secures his own reins in this manner upon dismounting to couple or circle horses or to form on foot as in par. 436. When the squad dismounts to fight on foot (par. 430) the horse holders must make any necessary adjustment of the reins and stirrups of the dismounted men.

427. The following provisions for coupling horses are based upon the assumption that the horses are coupled with their *off* (*right*) *sides* together. Should the equipment used make it preferable that the near (left) sides be together, the *even* numbers ride forward, turning to the *right about* instead of as described below. Other necessary changes in the execution of the movement when the near sides are together will be evident. The horses of Nos. 1 and 2 of each four form one couple, the horses of Nos. 3 and 4 forming another pair.

FIG. 44, par. 427.

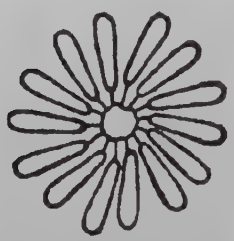
Being mounted, in **column of fours**, at the command, **COUPLE HEAD AND TAIL**, all halt, if marching, and the fours open out as to dismount; each odd-numbered trooper rides forward about 2 yards and turns to the *left about* on the forehand, so as to face the trooper with whom he is to couple. All dismount and each odd-numbered trooper leads his horse alongside the horse of the corresponding even-numbered trooper. The horses are then secured as indicated in pars. 425 and 426. A noncommissioned officer or trooper out of ranks, or a trooper of an incomplete two, fastens his horse to either horse of the nearest couple. A trooper is usually left in charge of the horses (pars. 422, 434).

The dismounted squad forms as indicated in par. 424.

Coupling may, with minor modifications that will be evident, be executed by the same commands and similar methods from line or from any other formation of the squad.

A dismounted squad may couple horses at the same *commands* and by similar methods.

The squad remounts as indicated in pars. 438, 442. (Fig. 44.)



CIRCLE HORSES.
FIG. 45, par. 428.

428. It may at times prove convenient to group the horses in a circle (par. 437); they may then be linked or tied together and left in care of a single horse holder (pars. 422, 434). Before circling the horses the squad usually forms line.

At the command: **CIRCLE HORSES**, the center of the line halts, if not already at a halt; the flanks of the line move forward and simultaneously close toward each other so as to make an approximate circle. All dismount, and the horses are then secured to the circle of rope (or other suitable material) at the center of the group (pars. 425, 426).

The leader and any other troopers out of ranks take position on the flanks of the squad before the latter meet. The horses may similarly be circled after the squad has dismounted. The dismounted squad forms as indicated in par. 424.

The squad remounts as indicated in pars. 438–442. (Fig. 45.)

429. The squad, before dismounting to fight on foot, is ordinarily formed in column of fours, and the movement is explained accordingly; the movement may, however, be executed from *any formation* with such modifications of the methods explained as are indicated or as may readily be inferred.

430. Being in column of fours, to dismount to fight on foot, the horses remaining mobile: TO FIGHT ON FOOT.

When the movement is signaled (par. 990) the direction of the action is included in the signal. When given orally the indication **ACTION RIGHT (LEFT, FRONT)** is habitually added to the command.

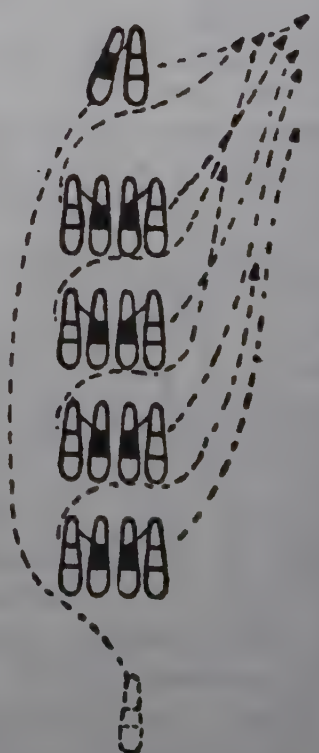


FIG. 46, par. 430.

At the first command all halt if marching. The leader and Nos. 1 and 4 dismount at once. No. 1 may dismount either

to the right or left. The leader on dismounting passes his reins to the file closer, to the nearest horse holder, or to a trooper designated in advance to take his horse.

When Nos. 1 and 4 dismount No. 2 seizes the snaffle reins of No. 1 and No. 3 seizes the snaffle reins of No. 4, making, if conditions permit, the adjustment required by par. 426. The horses can then be quickly led in any desired direction should it be necessary to move them (par. 431).

If the movement be executed from **column of troopers**, or from **foragers**, Nos. 1 and 4 dismount at once, but do not leave their horses until the reins are taken by the respective horse holders (Nos. 2 and 3). The horse holders move quickly to the side of the dismounted troopers and take the reins.

If the movement be executed from **line** the odd numbers dismount in place without moving forward. Should the squad resort to dismounted action while in **foragers**, without first assemblying or rallying, the leader may direct that the horses be assembled or coupled (par. 437).

The dismounted squad forms as indicated in par. 424. The squad remounts as indicated in pars. 438–442. (Fig. 46.)

431. When the squad dismounts to **fight on foot** the leader, if conditions permit, habitually gives the trooper in charge of the led horses (pars. 422, 434) special instructions regarding the disposition of the men still remaining mounted and the horses. *In the absence of other instructions* the trooper in charge of the led horses immediately disposes the latter so as to facilitate rapid remounting and to utilize the best cover available in the *immediate vicinity* of the dismounted men. If the position in which the squad dismounts meets the requirements just stated the led horses are not moved. *The horses will be taken beyond the immediate protection of the dismounted line only by direction of the leader.* The horses being satisfactorily disposed near the dismounted line, the trooper in charge, *in the absence of other instructions*, causes the horse holders to form column of fours, if not already in that formation, and commands: 1. Nos. 2, 2. **DISMOUNT.** Each No. 2 on dismounting

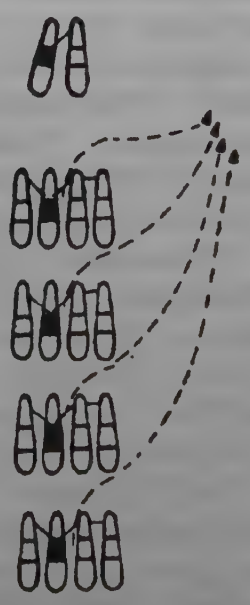


FIG. 47, par. 431.

passes the bridoon reins of his horse to No. 3, secures his curb reins and both reins of No. 1's horse (par. 426), fastens No. 1's horse to his (par. 425), moves at a run to the position of the squad leader, falls in, in rear of the leader in line (or as directed), and awaits orders. Should the movement be executed under fire the Nos. 2 take cover in the immediate vicinity of the leader, making their presence known to the latter. The leader places the additional men on the firing line or uses them as he sees fit. The led horses thus remain mobile, but with a single horse holder to each four. The trooper in charge of the led horses supervises the execution of the above movements by the horse holders and inspects to see that the horses of each four are properly secured. The above habitual procedure may be varied in accordance with special instructions of the leader. For example, the leader may, where a special case requires it, order the horses back to more distant cover (par. 432), or he may direct the trooper in charge of the led horses to couple head and tail (par. 427) or to circle horses (par. 428). In such cases the horse holders assist each other as may be necessary. *In all cases where contrary directions are not given all troopers not needed for duty in connection with the horses under the indicated arrangement are required by the trooper in charge of the led horses to proceed promptly to the position of the leader so as to be available for the dismounted line.* The leader's instructions may require that Nos. 2 remain mounted. The above procedure is then modified accordingly; and if the horses are in column of twos, they may remain in that formation.

Dismounting to fight on foot should be practiced from all formations with special attention to emergency action undertaken from column of twos and troopers. At drills and exercises the instructions of the leader to the trooper in charge of the led horses should be frequently varied and at times omitted altogether. (Fig. 47.)

432. Should the leader desire the horses taken to a more protected position than is available in the immediate vicinity of the dismounted line, his special instructions include the command: **HORSES BACK**, and he points toward, or otherwise indicates, the desired cover.

The trooper in charge then leads the horse holders and horses, ordinarily in column of fours or twos, to the indicated cover and carries out any additional special instructions that he may have received from the leader. The trooper in charge habitually moves at the trot, but takes the gallop if the occasion or his instructions so require. Should no special instructions have been given to the trooper in charge, the latter, on arriving at the indicated cover, forms the column in such position and formation as will enable it to be moved quickly in any probable direction of movement, preserving as far as practicable the original order of the horses in the column. He then causes Nos. 2 to dismount as in par. 431. The horses having been formed in column of fours with Nos. 3 as horse holders, or having been otherwise arranged as required by the leader's additional instructions, the trooper in charge designates one of the dismounted men to take charge of, and report promptly to the leader for duty, all dismounted men not required with the horses. The leader's special instructions may, as in par. 431, require that the horses be coupled or circled, thus increasing the number of men who may be sent forward dismounted, but this should not be done if there is any probability that occasion may arise to move the horses. Should the movement of the horses to cover be made under fire the trooper in charge may command: **DISPERSE.** Each horse holder then moves independently and rapidly toward the indicated cover.

The trooper in charge of the led horses must take such steps as are practicable with the men at his disposal to guard the horses against surprise or attack (par. 434), must keep in touch with the leader, and must insure that the position of the led horses is known to the leader.

433. To provide for the exceptional occasions that may call for the material separation of the dismounted line and led horses (par. 432), the horses must be practiced in leading at all gaits in column of twos and fours, and in the dispersed formations best adapted to a movement under fire should such a movement be unavoidable.

434. When a squad or other small group resorts to dismounted action conditions usually require that one or more patrols provide for the security of the horses and of the dismounted line. The number and strength of such patrols

depend wholly upon the circumstances of the particular case and must be regulated accordingly. The general principle may well be kept in mind that in proportion as conditions seem to require a large percentage of troopers for use as patrols and horse holders the advisability of resorting to dismounted action becomes more and more open to question. The presence of other friendly groups operating in the same vicinity and any measures for security taken by a higher commander naturally tend to simplify the duties of group leaders as regards security and may even in exceptional cases render unnecessary any further measures. When mounted patrols are needed they should, if not previously sent out, be designated in advance of the commands for dismounting so that they will remain mounted. It will tend toward rapid and efficient action if the trooper or troopers designated for patrols or for other special duties connected with passing to dismounted action be given such advance instructions as to their duties as may be practicable and be placed in the file closers or in an incomplete four. In a squad a man may thus be designated in advance and instructed with a view to his taking general charge of the horse holders and led horses, if the horses are kept mobile, or to his remaining in charge of the horses if they are rendered immobile.

435. In emergencies the command **FIRE AT WILL** may immediately follow the command **to fight on foot.** The dismounted troopers (Nos. 1 and 4) at once open fire on the enemy from the most advantageous positions in the immediate vicinity.

436. For purposes calling for dismounted duty, but *not connected* with the *tactical employment of troops in service*, and not requiring special rapidity of execution, the oral commands: 1. Nos. 1, 2, and 4; 2. **FORM ON FOOT,** may be given to the squad in column of fours. The movement is executed in the general manner indicated for **to fight on foot** (par. 430), with the following modifications. No. 2 of each four dismounts with Nos. 1 and 4, at once passing over his own bridoon reins to No. 3, fastening No. 1's horse to his own as prescribed in par. 431. No. 2 then falls in with the other dismounted troopers (par. 424). The leader and dismounted troopers take their places promptly, but in quick time. The

horses are not moved at all unless the leader specially so directs.

437. Each of the three methods (par. 423) for passing to dismounted action possesses certain advantages and disadvantages. All should be practiced until they can be executed rapidly and quietly.

Coupling and circling place more men on the firing line than dismounting **to fight on foot**, but the latter enables half of the troopers to open fire immediately (par. 435).

Coupling and **circling** render the horses immobile, while dismounting **to fight on foot** leaves them very mobile until No. 2 dismounts and reasonably mobile as long as No. 3 remains mounted; this mobility, however, is obtained at the cost of an increased number of men withdrawn from the firing line.

Coupling usually takes less time to effect than **circling**, the horses are less apt to give trouble, especially in case one or more be wounded or break loose, remounting can usually be more quickly effected, and the arrangement is well suited to opening dismounted fire promptly after dismounting from **foragers**, each pair of horses remaining under cover near the corresponding troopers. Horses in couples also present a poorer target to an enemy's fire than when in a larger group and are more easily concealed in certain kinds of cover. A horse that is left coupled for some time is apt to chew the equipment of the other horse of the pair.

Circling has the advantage of requiring no knowledge of their numbers by the troopers. It can be executed, therefore, by a group that has just rallied or that, from any cause, is not **in order**. It may also, in small groups, be executed very quickly if one of the troopers take the reins of the others, the horses not being tied or linked. This last arrangement also favors rapid remounting. Circling is generally the least safe of the three methods in so far as regards the danger of the horses becoming unmanageable. It is frequently convenient for purposes not connected with combat (e. g., camping).

Dismounting to fight on foot permits half the troopers to open fire at once if necessary; makes it practicable quickly to lead the horses to such cover as may be available in the immediate vicinity or, in exceptional cases, to distant cover; permits the location of the horses to be changed, if necessary, without withdrawing men from the firing line for that pur-

squad instruction. There is no special drill prescribed for the section (par. 491).

445. For the platoon instruction enough recruit squads may be united to make a provisional platoon, or the necessary additional instructed troopers may be utilized to fill out a platoon, or if necessary the recruit's instruction may be given at the regular drills of the permanent platoons. This last method will be avoided where practicable.

The instructor will be assisted by the noncommissioned officers or instructed troopers needed to act as section chiefs and substitute chiefs. Provisional sections will be organized in advance of the drill and the platoon formed and drilled as though such sections were permanent, in accordance with the provisions of the **School of the Platoon** (pars. 508–511).

PART III.—GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THE DRILL.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

446. The following principles, taken in connection with provisions of a similar general character contained in pars. 43–49 and 322–339, constitute the basis of the system of drill under these regulations.

The following paragraphs are particularly important:

Pars. 323 and 329, with reference to leading;

Pars. 333 to 339, with reference to gaits;

Pars. 458 to 460, regarding the base;

Pars. 462 to 465, regarding commands;

Par. 470, as to the use of the methods of the squad;

Pars. 478 and 479, regarding movements to the front and flank;

Pars. 480 and 481, regarding successive formations.

Familiarity with the paragraphs above listed will be a sufficient guide for the execution of the more essential movements in the troop, squadron, and regiment once the names of the formations and positions of the officers are learned.

In applying the general principles they should be read carefully with a view to getting a good general idea of the system which they outline. As practice work in the drill progresses they should frequently be referred to and any doubtful points cleared up from time to time. The subheads will assist in this connection. References included in the description of the various movements appearing hereafter in the text should be read and familiarity thus be acquired with the application of the principles.

447. All bodies of troops are habitually formed in single rank, whether for mounted or dismounted duty. Provision, however, is made whereby double rank may be formed from certain single rank formations of the platoon and larger units.

LEADING.

(*See* pars. 323, 325, 471, 480.)

448. The commander of a squadron, or of any smaller unit, habitually leads his unit in person. The commander of a regiment habitually controls his unit through his subordinate commanders, but may lead in person. The commander of a unit may temporarily leave the guidance of his unit to a subordinate (pars. 454–456), thus acquiring the freedom of movement needed for any special purpose.

The general principle of leading, as above stated, is subject to modification in extended-order movements, in combat involving fire action, in dismounted movements in general (par. 484), and in certain column formations where there is not sufficient space in the column to permit the leaders to take their customary positions (par. 451).

449. When not actually leading, a commander for whom another special position is not prescribed moves as best suited to accomplish the purpose in view. He regulates the movements of his unit, indicating the objective to the leader of the base, who causes the march to be directed accordingly. In a platoon or squad the leader indicates the objective to the guide. Should a leader take position at any time in the line he becomes the actual guide of his unit and continues so until he designates another guide.

450. The position of the leader in each of the several schools is indicated and is habitually stated as so many yards in front of the corresponding leader (or guide). The leader having once taken his position as such, the duty of maintaining the trace and distance rests upon the base.

451. When the post of the leader of any unit in a column formation is on a flank of the column (pars. 601–603) the base of the corresponding unit temporarily conducts the march of that unit in the column. The leader on the flank gives any necessary directions to the base (directing guide) at the head of his own unit, but does not act as guide of his unit. He resumes actual leadership as soon as a change in the formation permits.

452. When the leader of a unit marches the latter by fours to a flank for only a short distance he need not move to his position as leader. Others out of rank conform to the leader's example in this respect, retaining convenient relative positions pending the resumption of the direct march.

453. The commander of a squadron or higher unit may specifically direct the leader of the base unit (par. 324) or other subordinate to *conduct the march*, or he may instead designate a subordinate to assume *temporary leadership*.

454. Conducting the march: A subordinate who, without being assigned as temporary leader (par. 456) is instructed by the commander to conduct the march *exercises no other function of command* as a result of such assignment. In the absence of other directions from the commander the subordinate (directing leader) so designated maintains the existing direction and gait of march. The post of such subordinate remains unchanged provided (as in the normal case) he is already the leader of the base; if other than such leader he takes the commander's post in front of the leader of the base, notifies the latter, and conducts the march, the leader of the base conforming. In units smaller than a regiment the use of a subordinate to the commander to conduct the march is exceptional at drills at attention.

455. Should a change of formation be ordered by a commander while the march of his unit is being conducted by a subordinate not specifically assigned as a temporary leader, the subordinate who is conducting the march moves in the direction and at the gait indicated by the principles of the drill and the movement is executed according to the usual methods.

456. Temporary leader: A subordinate who is directed by the commander to assume temporary leadership of a unit takes position as leader, and while acting as leader gives the necessary indication for any movements to be executed. A temporary leader must be senior to all whom he leads. The commander may indicate to such temporary leader the movements to be executed, or he may leave the selection of such movements to the temporary leader. For instruction the assignment of a temporary leader may properly be utilized as a means of giving subordinates practice in the leading of a unit greater than that appropriate to their respective grades and

also as an occasional procedure to permit the commander to supervise more satisfactorily the execution of movements by his unit.

In field exercises and in campaign the designation of a temporary leader may frequently become advisable when the commander leaves his regular position for reconnaissance or other similar purpose.

The designation of a temporary leader should, to avoid possible confusion, be communicated in any convenient manner to the leader of the base and similar units as well as to the designated leader.

The temporary leader must keep in constant communication with the commander (by means of connecting files if necessary), unless the commander specifically directs otherwise.

CENTER.

457. References in these regulations to the center unit of a command in any line formation will, in cases where the number of units comprised in the command is even, be understood as applying to the *right center unit.* Thus, in a troop comprised of but two platoons the *center* platoon in line is the *right center* (right) platoon.

BASE.

(*See* pars. 326, 477, 478.)

458. The base of a squad in each formation is explained in pars. 371–377.

The base of a platoon in any line formation is the right section.

The base of a troop is a platoon; of a squadron, a troop; of a regiment, a squadron. Reference to the base in connection with any one of the units stated is to be understood accordingly, unless distinctly otherwise indicated.

459. In any line formation of a troop or larger unit the center unit (par. 457) is always the base unless some other unit be specially so designated. If the commander take position as leader in front of any unit other than the center unit he

thereby indicates such other unit as the base. When not leading the commander may designate any unit of a line formation as the base by cautioning: **SUCH PLATOON (TROOP, SQUADRON) THE BASE.**

In any column formation the leading unit is always the base.

460. In *movements* executed toward the direction of march the base does not change unless, in *movements from line formations*, another base be specifically stated in the command. To so indicate another base the leader prefixes to the preparatory command the words: **On (such platoon, troop, squadron).**

COMMANDS.

(*See* pars. 327, 471, 474, 475, 478, 479.)

461. When not otherwise indicated, the commands prescribed in the portion of the drill regulations pertaining to each unit are those of the commander of the unit in question.

When commands, duties, etc., are indicated as those of the colonel, major, or captain, etc., they are to be understood as those of the regimental, squadron, or troop commander, respectively. The units may actually be commanded by officers or noncommissioned officers junior or senior to the grades corresponding to the command thereof. Officers must be practiced frequently in commanding a unit greater than that pertaining to their grade.

462. In all movements leaders give the necessary commands or other indications to insure the execution by their respective units at the proper time of the movements necessary to carry out the will of the commander. Should any leader not receive or fully understand a command or signal of a higher commander, he conforms to the apparent intent of the commander. To avoid possible uncertainty as to their meaning, commanders endeavor to give their commands and signals exactly as prescribed, and in all exercises whose purpose is instruction they exact corresponding accuracy on the part of subordinate leaders.

463. Whenever it is stated that the platoon or troop may execute, by **corresponding commands**, the movements prescribed for the squad, the commands as given in the School of

the **Squad** will be used, except that the appropriate substitution of **platoon** or **troop** for **squad** will be made.

464. In giving commands a leader may, whenever necessary, prefix the same by the designation of the unit that is to execute the movement, as 1. **First Platoon, forward,** 2. **MARCH**; 1. **C Troop, fours right,** 2. **MARCH.**

465. In the drill of the platoon and higher units the troopers execute the movements in compliance with the immediate commands or other indications of the respective *platoon leaders*, supplemented by such cautions as may be necessary on the part of the file closers and section chiefs.

466. Except when a specific method is temporarily prescribed for instruction purposes commanders are ordinarily allowed discretion as to the particular one of the authorized methods (pars. 988–990) or particular combination of those methods that may be employed to communicate the order for a movement. The test of efficiency in this connection is prompt compliance with the commander's will, accomplished with a minimum of noise.

MOVEMENTS IN GENERAL.

467. The drill as prescribed in the **School of the Platoon** and **School of the Troop** is based upon the assumption that the platoon and troop are subdivided into their component units (par. 491). A platoon that is not divided into sections or a troop that is not divided into platoons can be maneuvered only by the commands and methods prescribed for the squad (par. 470).

The drill in the **School of the Squad** is that employed in the first collective instruction of recruits. Its movements and those in the **School of the Platoon** are described in detail, and are intended (with the exception of certain movements by twos and troopers—par. 331) to be executed with the precision that is regarded as essential for the trooper's training. The drill as it progresses through the **Schools of the Troop and Squadron** becomes more and more an exercise in the practical application of certain underlying principles with a gradually increasing responsibility placed upon the leaders of component units.

After proficiency has been acquired in executing the movements as prescribed, leaders may, in the discretion of the commander, be given, in the selection of methods, a latitude that increases with the size of their respective units.

The methods indicated for the regiment involve merely the further application of principles with which the leaders should become thoroughly familiar in the course of troop and squadron drill. They constitute a general guide for such changes of formation as the regiment as a whole may execute; but the majors should be permitted in the details of maneuvering their squadrons as wide a latitude as may be exercised without interference with other units.

468. The drill in the **School of the Squad** comprises movements of two general classes:

(*a*) Those which, in addition to their use in the squad, are frequently employed as regular maneuver movements in the platoon and higher units. This class includes such movements as the ordinary marchings, **fours right (left), right (left) turn, etc.** Movements of this class are of general application throughout the several schools, subject to such modification as may be specially noted.

(*b*) Those whose primary purpose is the instruction of the recruit in the *mechanism* of the movements upon which the habitual drill of the platoon and higher units is based. The corresponding movements in the higher units are habitually executed by different commands and differ in the details of execution.

469. The execution of movements of the class referred to in par. 468–*b* is ordinarily restricted to detachments smaller than a platoon, though applicable to larger bodies for which no special drill is prescribed. It is practicable for a platoon or troop to execute, at the command corresponding to that prescribed in the **School of the Squad,** any movement referred to in par. 468–*b;* and, in emergencies, it may at times be necessary temporarily to employ such movements in maneuvering a platoon or troop that has not been subdivided in the usual manner or that, although originally so subdivided, has subsequently suffered a loss of order. These movements may also properly be used in the platoon or troop for marchings connected with such routine duties of camp or garrison as call for no observance of a division into subunits.

470. In all movements, however, connected with the tactical employment of a platoon or troop the commands and methods prescribed for the squad should be used only for those movements for which no corresponding provision is made in the platoon or troop drill. The corresponding platoon and troop movements are better adapted to the purposes of the larger units; and if a platoon or troop, subdivided in the usual manner, executes by the methods prescribed for the squad, movements involving the use of twos or troopers, loss of order is apt to result. In the description, in the **School of the Squad**, of each movement of the class referred to in par. 468–*b*, a reference to that paragraph will be found.

CHANGES OF DIRECTION.

471. When a change of direction of any unit in line or column is commanded by a higher commander, the latter gives his command of execution at the moment when the *leader* of the subordinate unit is to begin the turn (par. 386). When the higher commander is to continue to *lead* his command throughout the change of direction, the command of execution must be given at the instant the subordinate leader (or guide) reaches the point where the commander began his own change of direction (par. 329).

MOVEMENTS IN COLUMN OF TWOS AND TROOPERS.

472. The drill of the squad could be much simplified were it practicable to confine its close order formations to **line** and **column of fours**, and, under favorable conditions, this may be done.

Special conditions, however, such as narrow roads or trails or difficult ground, frequently render impracticable the use of any march formation other than **column of twos** or **column of troopers**; and these last formations are also convenient in connection with various routine duties of garrison and field service. Cavalry will often have to march in column of twos or troopers and under conditions where promptness of action will be of vital importance. These formations should therefore frequently be employed during *instruction*, preferably at field exercises, rather than at formal drill (par. 331).

EXTENDED ORDER MOVEMENTS.

473. A body of troops in *extended order* must be assembled or rallied in order to pass to close order.

The assembly of any unit is, in the absence of other indications, executed in the same formation in which the unit habitually forms; that is, for a squad (or a section acting alone), **in line**; for a platoon, in **double column**; for a troop, in **line of double columns**; for a squadron, in **mass**; for a regiment, in **line of masses.**

Provision is made in these regulations for the execution of the assembly in other than the usual formation. In such cases the desired formation is specially indicated.

474. When the halt is ordered while marching to the rear in extended order all face to the front, the commander of each group then in close order giving the necessary commands. Foragers turn about individually. All turn to the left about.

SIMULTANEOUS MOVEMENTS BY PLATOONS, TROOPS, AND SQUADRONS.

475. The captain may cause the platoons of the troop to execute simultaneously movements *not otherwise provided for.* In such cases the word **platoons** is prefixed to the usual preparatory command, thus: 1. **Platoons, column right,** 2. **MARCH.** A corresponding principle is applicable to troops in a squadron and to squadrons in a regiment.

EXCEPTIONAL MOVEMENTS.

476. Whenever as the result of the execution of any movement in the troop, squadron, or regiment (e. g., **fours right from mass**) there results a formation not habitually used for drill or maneuver (e. g., close column of troops, resulting from the above example), an habitual formation is usually resumed by a corresponding movement (e. g., in above case, by **fours left**). Any emergency movement that may be ordered while a command is in an unusual formation of such character will be executed in accordance with the general principles of the drill.

CHANGES OF FORMATION.

477. Changes of formation are usually executed (par. 460) so as to involve no change in the base. The commander then maintains, through leading, complete and uninterrupted control of the direction and gait. By leading the base toward any direction, the commander may execute a desired change of formation toward that direction as in par. 481–*c*. Should space and time not permit this, essential formations may be taken directly to a flank (par. 479).

478. With certain exceptions, noted where they occur in the text, any formation (close or extended order), prescribed for a platoon or higher unit, may be taken toward the direction of march directly from any other *close-order* formation prescribed for the same unit. The *preparatory command* for every such movement for which no special base is designated consists simply of the *name of the formation to which it is desired to pass;* the corresponding command of execution is always: **MARCH**; for example, 1. **Line**, 2. **MARCH**; 1. **Column of platoons**, 2. **MARCH**. When **column of fours** is the desired formation the preparatory command is abbreviated to **column**, thus: 1. **Column**, 2. **MARCH**. If the commander desires to designate a unit other than the base as the one upon which the movement is to be regulated, the preparatory command, as stated above, must be preceded by the corresponding designation of the special base, thus: 1. **On fourth platoon, column**; 2. **MARCH**.

479. Provision is made in these regulations for forming line directly to a flank from column formations; for forming column directly to a flank from line formations to meet conditions when the corresponding formation of line or column toward the direction of march would not be suited to the purpose in view. Changes of formation thus made directly to a flank are executed at special commands not based upon the principle stated in par. 477, as: 1. **Fours right**, 2. **MARCH**.

SUCCESSIVE FORMATIONS (Def.).

480. In successive formations of the troop each platoon is habitually led to its place by the shortest route and simplest methods consistent with an orderly execution of the movement.

The same principle regulates the movements of troops in the squadron, and of squadrons in the regiment. The principle is modified in the drill of the squad and of the platoon to the extent that the elements of those units are not actually *led*, but conform to the movements of a guide in the ranks (par. 326). Certain general principles are prescribed for the guidance of leaders in conducting their units into positions in successive formations (par. 481). These provisions are supplemented, where necessary, by more detailed provisions included in the paragraphs describing the various movements. Whenever specific routes or methods are indicated, it is with a view to that degree of uniformity which is considered necessary to insure that the units do not interfere with one another's movements.

481. (*a*) The rules stated below are of general application to the drill of troop, squadron, and regiment. For simplicity they are stated only for the troop. The corresponding rules may be obtained for the squadron by substituting **squadron** for **troop** and **troop** for **platoon**, and, for the **regiment**, by substituting **regiment** for **troop** and **squadron** for **platoon**.

(*b*) Successive formations are always executed toward the direction of march. The direction and gait of the base platoon are controlled by the commander (pars. 323, 477). The other platoons are habitually led to their new positions by changes of direction. When, however, restricted space or other special conditions make it necessary, other methods may also be employed (e. g., an oblique or movement to a flank by fours). In the regiment much latitude is allowed squadron commanders in maneuvering their squadrons.

(*c*) If it is desired to have the new formation face wholly or partially to a flank a change of direction to the desired degree is made either before the movement is ordered. or shortly after, and during an early stage of its execution (par. 477). In the case of a deployment the *head* of the column is faced in the required direction before the movement is ordered. In the case of a ployment the head of the column is caused to face in required direction as soon as the base platoon has formed column.

(*d*) In successive formations from line into column the base platoon is followed immediately by the platoon next on its left, then by the one next on its right, and so on, the platoons

being taken alternately from the left and right of the base. If there be no platoon on one side of the base, or if any platoon originally on that side has moved to enter the column, platoons that remain on the other side of the base enter the column in the order of their nearness to the latter.

Thus, in a troop of four platoons, if the column be formed on the second platoon in line as the base—

The third platoon in line becomes the second platoon in column;

The first platoon in line becomes the third platoon in column;

The fourth platoon in line becomes the fourth platoon in column.

Or, if column be formed on the third platoon in line as the base—

The fourth platoon in line becomes the second platoon in column;

The second platoon in line becomes the third platoon in column;

The first platoon in line becomes the fourth platoon in column.

Par. 469 covers certain exceptional cases.

(*e*) In formations from column into line the deployment is fan-wise. The platoon immediately in rear of the base platoon of the movement takes position on the left of the latter; the platoon next in rear takes position on the right of the base; and so on alternately to the left and right.

Should any reason (such as lack of space) prevent a unit in rear from taking its proper place on the line it is held by its leader in rear of the line in readiness to take its position as soon as conditions permit, or to act as special instructions or the circumstances of the case may require.

Par. 469 covers certain exceptional cases.

(*f*) The change of formation for the troop may also involve a change in the *formation* of each platoon as well as a change in the *position* of the latter. For example, if the troop in column of platoons (par. 584–*d*) forms *line of* platoon columns (par. 622–*b*) each platoon must not only be led to its new place but must change its formation from line to column of fours on the way.

(*g*) In cases under (*f*) the base platoon, if it has the necessary space when the movement is commanded, takes the new formation at the command of execution, otherwise it takes the new formation as soon as the necessary space is gained.

The time at which each of the other platoons changes formation is determined by the nature of the change. As column formations are habitually preferable to line formations for purposes of evolutions, if the movement requires a reduction in the front of the platoon (as from line to column), the change is made when the platoon *begins to execute the movement.* If, on the other hand, an increase in the front of the platoon is involved (as from column to line), the change is *delayed as long as practicable subject to the requirement that it must be completed before the platoon takes its place in the new formation* (par. 331).

(*h*) Gaits are regulated as indicated in pars. 333–337.

In movements involving a change of formation from column to line in the *platoons,* the rear elements of the latter will habitually have to make a second increase of gait while forming line. This same principle applies throughout.

MOVEMENTS ON FOOT.

482. The platoon and troop dismounted may, when necessary, execute the close-order movements prescribed for the mounted drill, with the modifications incident to dismounted movements as indicated in the **School of the Trooper, Dismounted**; and **School of the Squad.** The habitual execution of such dismounted movements as features of precise and formal drill is not contemplated.

483. The platoon and troop, dismounted, execute extended-order movements by the commands and methods prescribed for the mounted troop subject to the modifications incident to dismounted movements.

484. In applying to dismounted movements the principles of leading it should be borne in mind that the use of a subordinate to conduct the march is properly more frequent in dismounted than in mounted movements. Dismounted combat usually involves fire action, made effective by a line of rifle-

men systematically fed from the rear with men and ammunition. Such conditions are necessarily inconsistent with the exercise of physical leadership by a commander posted in front of his unit, except during the advance prior to opening fire and during such advances as are made while fire is locally suspended. The slower speed of dismounted movements and the reduced importance of gaits as a factor in their execution also affect the extent to which physical leadership is essential in dismounted work. In marching dismounted, incident to the performance of ordinary routine duties of camp and garrison (e. g., in marching from the quarters to the stables), the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge may properly relinquish actual leadership, leaving to the directing leader or guide (Def.) the conduct of the march (par. 324).

ORDER.

485. The conditions essential to **order** in the squad and platoon are explained in pars. 370 and 515, respectively. In the troop and larger units the general rule applies that a unit is in **order** when its component elements are united in any formation prescribed for the unit in question and each element is in **order.** Thus, a troop is in **order** when its platoons are united in any troop formation and each platoon is in **order.** Any body of troops that is temporarily being maneuvered by commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the squad is, for such movements, in **order** when it fulfills that requirement for order in the squad. Any movement that results in a loss of **order** should ordinarily be followed by the assembly at the earliest practicable moment.

MISCELLANEOUS.

486. In turning about, unless otherwise indicated, officers and men turn to the left about when mounted and to the right about when dismounted.

487. Officers, and noncommissioned officers acting as platoon leaders, draw and return saber with the superior commander.

In all formations and movements a noncommissioned officer commanding a platoon or troop carries his rifle as the men do.

488. The guidon is not habitually carried at drill. The captain will cause it to be carried sufficiently often to familiarize the guidon sergeant with his duties. At squadron or regimental drill the guidon is not carried unless directed, respectively, by the major or colonel. The guidon is always carried at ceremonies and is also carried on occasions of a ceremonial nature when the commander so directs. It is carried in campaign and on the march, but is cased or furled whenever it might give information of value to an enemy. The guidon when carried is borne by a noncommissioned officer, usually a sergeant, selected with regard to his possible duties as in charge of the led horses of the troop (par. 648).

PART IV.—THE TROOP AND ITS SUBDIVISIONS.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

489. The troop is divided by the captain into permanent platoons, each under a permanently assigned leader. The latter is a lieutenant when practicable; otherwise a sergeant. Each platoon is divided into two sections.

490. The first sergeant is not ordinarily assigned to the command of a platoon. He performs the special duties incident to his position, acts as the general assistant to the captain in coordinating the duties of the other noncommissioned officers, and sees that platoon leaders who may be absent or disabled are promptly replaced by their proper successors.

The supply sergeant, mess sergeant, and troopers of special grades perform, in addition to their special functions, such duties as the captain may direct.

491. The number of platoons is dependent upon the size of the troop and the capacity of the available leaders. Ordinarily the troop is divided into three or four platoons, each having a leader, a file closer, and a rank composed of two sections. The drill is equally applicable to any number of platoons. It is possible to conduct a complete troop drill with but two platoons, each having two sections, consisting of a single four each (par. 500).

492. The noncommissioned officer next in rank to the platoon leader is designated as the file closer of the platoon. He assists the platoon leader by supervising the execution of the movements, maintains discipline, endeavors to prevent mistakes by anticipating them and cautioning those concerned, and holds himself in constant readiness to replace the leader without delay should the latter be absent or disabled. When taking position as leader in such a case, he designates the next senior noncommissioned officer as file closer, makes the corresponding designation of a section chief, and causes any necessary changes in position to be made.

493. The section consists of a section chief, a substitute chief, and habitually not less than 6 nor more than 14 other troopers, depending upon the strength of the platoon. The chief is a sergeant where one is available; otherwise a corporal. The substitute chief is a noncommissioned officer if one be available; otherwise a selected trooper. He is the assistant of the section chief when the latter is present and the substitute when absent. When acting as chief, he designates a new substitute chief, unless one has previously been designated by higher authority.

494. The section is the smallest fixed unit of cavalry; that is, the smallest unit for which the effort is made to maintain, as far as conditions permit, a permanent personnel.

When the platoon is at or near full strength, each section may be divided into two squads, each consisting of not to exceed two sets of fours. In any case that might require these squads to be employed under separate leaders the section chief would lead the squad in which posted and the substitute chief would lead the other. Such a subdivision of the section, if made, does not affect the execution of any of the regular drill movements; but it may be found useful for special purposes, particularly in a platoon that is operating separately from its troop.

495. The efficiency of troops in essential matters will be measured largely by the extent to which platoon leaders and section chiefs are trained and developed. They must be made to realize that their responsibilities do not cease with the mere tactical handling of their respective units, but include making themselves effective assistants to their superiors in matters of discipline, instruction, and the systematic carrying out of the details of interior troop administration. Subordinate leaders should as a rule be intrusted with responsibility to the full extent of their capacity for efficient performance.

Every effort must be made to maintain the *permanency* of the subdivision into platoons and sections, additional men being regularly assigned to such units when necessary with a view to replacing absentees at drills and exercises. No attempt will be made to assign fixed places in the rank of the section to individual troopers. The important point in this connection is that the section as such shall be kept intact as

far as practicable, and that the responsibility of its chief shall be habitually exercised over the same men, thus tending to mutual confidence and understanding.

496. Should conditions render the maintenance of permanent sections impracticable, the platoons must be maintained as permanent units as long as possible, a temporary division of each platoon into sections being then effected at every formation for duty that requires such a division (par. 500).

In order to maintain permanent units within the troop, depleted sections and platoons will be combined and new assignments made when necessary. When at any formation a platoon or section is depleted below the usual minimum strength it is ordinarily broken up and its members temporarily assigned to places in other similar units.

Adjustments in Platoons and Sections.

497. To avoid multiplying incomplete fours in the troop, sections are habitually adjusted at platoon formations as indicated in par. 522.

The question as to whether adjustments will be made at formations between platoons of the troop to equalize strength or to minimize the number of incomplete fours in the troop (otherwise than as indicated in par. 779 or regulated by order from higher authority) rests in the discretion of the troop commander. Except at ceremonies, there is no reason why the platoons should be of equal strength (par. 491). Incomplete fours in the troop tend to lengthen the march column and to reduce the proportion of men available for the dismounted firing line. On the other hand, where platoons are apt to be separated for some time, due to incidents of service, it may be desirable to keep the personnel of each wholly intact, even if incomplete fours or extra file closers in the troop result.

Designation of Platoons and Sections.

498. The permanent platoons of the troop are given numerical designations, as **First Platoon**, etc. These fix the relative positions of the permanent platoons in the original formation of the troop for any duty, but are not subsequently employed in drill or maneuver.

The troop having been formed as prescribed, in whatever formation it may be at any particular moment thereafter, the platoons are given, for the purposes of drill and maneuver, numerical designations (First Platoon, Third Platoon, etc.), based upon the order, from right to left, of their respective *temporary positions* in line, or from head to rear in column. In exercises other than formal drill a platoon may be designated by the name of its leader, as: **Lieutenant So-and-so's Platoon.** This latter method of designation is necessarily employed when, due to any disposition of the platoons other than in a distinct line or column formation, possible doubt may exist as to their respective temporary numerical designations.

Sections are given similar permanent numerical designations in the troop, as **First Section, Fifth Section,** etc. These fix their relative positions at the original formations of their respective platoons. After the platoon is once formed no further attention is paid to such permanent designations, the sections being designated, if necessary, as **right (leading) or left (rear) section, (such) platoon.**

Formation.

499. The formation and drill of the platoon and troop are explained upon the assumption that the division into permanent subordinate units is maintained. A platoon that is not divided into sections, or a troop that is not divided into platoons, can be maneuvered only by commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the squad (par. 469). When no prior division into permanent subordinate units exists a platoon or troop may originally be formed only by commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the squad. A temporary subdivision may then be made at the formation (pars. 501, 502).

A section has no special formation or drill of its own. It may be formed and maneuvered as a separate unit by commands and methods corresponding to those employed in the squad (par. 463).

500. When less than 32 troopers are present and available for the rank of the troop at any duty the division into platoons may be omitted.

Platoons are habitually limited to not more than 32 nor less than 16 men (in the rank). Smaller platoons may be employed when the depleted condition of the troop or other special conditions render their use advisable.

If a division into platoons be not made, the troop, at the duties listed in par. 501, is maneuvered as a single platoon under command of the captain, but retains its designation as a troop. Officers and noncommissioned officers are assigned to duties as the captain may direct.

501. At formations for field service, marches, drills, inspections, and ceremonies the formation of a platoon or troop is based upon the corresponding subdivision into permanent units if such division exist (par. 489). If such division can not be maintained, the formation is conducted by commands and methods corresponding to those of the squad, a temporary subdivision being made at the formation.

502. For duties of a character not covered by par. 501 formations may be conducted in accordance with any of the authorized methods. If the method prescribed for the squad be used, the division into subordinate units may be made or omitted in the discretion of the commander.

503. The original dismounted assembly for mounted formations is made at either the barracks or stables. The verification for mounted formation is habitually made at the stables.

The dismounted troop being at the stables or picket line, the noncommissioned officer in charge commands: **SADDLE AND PREPARE TO LEAD OUT.** The saddling must be done quickly and quietly and the formation completed without unnecessary loss of time.

504. Whenever a platoon or troop is formed, in accordance with the methods prescribed for the squad for a duty of the kind listed in par. 501, noncommissioned officers should, if practicable, be assigned to duties in advance of the formation with a view to taking their proper positions on leading out as nearly as this can be done. Noncommissioned officers not so assigned take position, temporarily, in line 3 yards in rear of the right of the rank and in order of rank from right to left. In column they take position one behind another, 1 yard to the right of the column, in order of rank from front to rear, with the leading noncommissioned officer abreast of the head

of the column. Any such noncommissioned officer who may not be assigned to special duties during the formation takes position as an extra file closer as soon as the formation is completed.

Verification.

505. Any unit or detachment of a troop formed for duty is, in the absence of instructions to the contrary, verified by the noncommissioned officer or trooper who conducts the formation and a report of the result of such verification is made. When not otherwise prescribed the report is made to the first sergeant who reports all absentees from any duty to the troop commander. All absentees reported to a commissioned officer in charge of a platoon will be reported by such officer to the troop commander. At formations of the troop, based upon a prior division into platoons, each platoon is habitually verified by the senior noncommissioned officer for duty with it (leader or file closer). The captain may direct that the verification be made by the first sergeant, but when the troop is formed without reference to a prior division into platoons, the verification is made by the first sergeant.

When a unit armed with the rifle is verified at a dismounted formation, rifles are brought to the right shoulder immediately after **inspection arms** is executed (par. 91). The roll is then called. Each man as he answers his name comes to the order. When the first sergeant verifies the troop, the command: **INSPECTION ARMS**, is omitted at the formation of the platoons, which precedes the formation of the troop (par. 598).

Reports.

506. Reports connected with formations, made by noncommissioned officers forming platoons, follow the form: **Corporal ——— absent;** or, **All present.** All such reports to a commissioned officer are preceded by **Sir.** The report of the first sergeant to the captain is in the form: **Sir, Corporal ——— and Private ——— absent;** or, **Sir, all present or accounted for.** In each of the above cases the noncommissioned officer making the report salutes as he begins the report and the salute is returned. When no verification is required, the form of the report is: **(Sir) the platoon (troop) is formed.**

After reporting, a noncommissioned officer, unless otherwise prescribed, takes his post, habitually at a trot. Reports at formations are made from right to left in line and from head to rear in column. At formations in column noncommissioned officers may be directed to make their reports at the head of the column. Reports, when necessary, will be preceded by the designation of the unit referred to, thus: **1st Platoon, all present.**

Inspection at Formation.

507. Whenever a unit or detachment is formed for any duty its commander makes, during the formation or immediately subsequent thereto, such an inspection as may be required by his instructions or by the nature of the duty in view. This inspection will always include a noting of the general appearance and condition of the troopers and their mounts, as required by par. 49, and the inspection of arms prescribed in par. 91. It will further include all that is necessary to assure the commander that his unit is in proper condition for the duty. When on field duty such inspection must be especially thorough, including arms, ammunition, equipment, clothing, shoeing of the horses, and similar essentials.

SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON.

Special Provisions.

508. When recruits have learned the mechanism of the platoon drill they should participate in the regular drills of the platoon and troop in so far as their progress in horsemanship permits. Individual troopers whose more elementary instruction may be found to be below the required standard for satisfactory platoon drill will be given further instruction in the **School of the Squad.** As far as practicable, such instruction will be in addition to, and at different hours from, the regular platoon drills, so that progress in the systematic course of training may not be delayed by a few poorly instructed troopers. Every effort should be made to avoid the monotonous repetition of elementary instruction by men who are ready to advance to other work. When there are not available a sufficient number of well-instructed men for a satisfactory platoon drill, two or more platoons should be combined and progressive instruction along some special line of training (e. g., patrolling) should be given those troopers who are ready to advance. Meanwhile the less efficient troopers may be brought to the necessary standard by further drill in the **School of the Trooper** or **School of the Squad.**

509. Section chiefs, unless otherwise indicated, remain in their places in the rank and give no commands or signals. They must, however, closely observe their sections and by cautions given in a low tone prevent or correct errors.

At any time other than in drills at attention a platoon leader may cause each section chief to take position in front of his respective section and lead it. In certain cases—e. g., in dismounted fire action—the platoon commander may cause his section chiefs to take position in rear of the line with a view to giving more effective assistance in direction and control of fire and the maintenance of fire discipline. When each section is led by its chief the platoon leader indicates the base section and controls its movements by appropriate indi-

cation to the leader. The other section then regulates on the base section.

510. When the section as a whole changes position in the execution of a platoon movement the guide of the section acts as a directing guide and the other troopers of the section conform accordingly.

511. It is essential to the execution of the movements prescribed in the **School of the Platoon** that each trooper keep constantly in mind the section to which he belongs and its temporary position in the platoon (leading or rear, right or left). Section chiefs and substitute chiefs will give special attention to seeing that this requirement is observed. In **line** and **foragers** the file closer will, whenever necessary, caution the troopers near the center of the platoon as to the point of division between the sections.

Platoon Formations.

512. The close-order formations of the platoon for march; maneuver, or combat are:

(*a*) **Line (single or double rank);**
(*b*) **Double column;**
(*c*) **Column of fours;**
(*d*) **Column of twos;** and
(*e*) **Column or troopers.**

The only formation involving the extension of the front of the platoon to a greater extent than corresponds to a deployment into **line** is **foragers** (corresponding dismounted formation **skirmishers**); but the platoon may also be extended in depth.

(*a*) In **line, single rank**, each section of the platoon is in line as in par. 368–*a*, and the two sections are abreast of each other without interval other than that between adjacent individual troopers.

In **line, double rank**, the platoon is in two ranks, each in line as in the squad, the rear rank being habitually at a distance of 3 yards mounted and 40 inches dismounted from the front rank. The platoon leader or file closer may direct the guide of the rear rank to increase the distance when necessary. Each rank habitually consists of one section.

Whenever **line** is commanded in the platoon, single-rank line is to be understood. Single-rank line is referred to in the text either as "line" or "single rank"; double-rank line as "double rank."

(*b*) In **double column, each section is in column of fours,** the leading fours of the two sections being abreast of each other, with an habitual interval between sections of 2 yards mounted or 1 yard dismounted.

(*c*) (*d*) (*e*) In **column of fours, column of twos,** and **column of troopers** each section is in the corresponding formation as explained for the squad (par. 368), one section being in rear of the other at 4 feet distance.

(*f*) In **foragers,** each section is deployed as **foragers,** the two sections being abreast of each other, without interval other than that between adjacent individual foragers.

(*g*) The extension in depth is made on the principle explained in the squad. This extension may be by successive sections, squads (par. 494), or smaller elements.

513. Column of fours, in addition to its general utility as a march formation, has, as compared to **column of twos** or **column of troopers,** certain important advantages. Its use always tends to maintain the platoon **in order** (par. 369). A platoon, once properly formed, can not lose **order** as long as its movements are confined to any combinations of **line** (single rank), **column of fours,** and **double column. Column of fours** further permits **line** to be formed to a flank almost on the ground occupied by the column and without loss of **order**; and, by wheeling about by fours when in column of fours, a change of 180° in the direction of march of a column may be made almost on the ground occupied by the column, with no appreciable loss of time and without loss of **order.** Column of fours is a formation that can be easily taken, even while in rapid motion following a previous condition of disorder; it obviates the necessity for counting fours and it tends to prevent possible delay or confusion due to the troopers forgetting their respective numbers.

514. Double column possesses all those advantages incident to the use of **column of fours** that relate to the maintenance of **order.** It is, in substance, a line of section columns and is useful in connection with the original formation of the platoon and for reforming or assembling (pars. 559, 560) following

any movement as a result of which the troopers of the two sections become intermingled or a general loss of **order** results. Where conditions permit its use it decreases the depth of a column, lends itself to a rapid deployment to the *front*, permits the formation of double rank to a flank, and is well adapted to certain special uses.

Order.

515. A platoon *divided into sections* is **in order** (in any formation except **column of twos or troopers**) when its two component sections are united in any one of the formations prescribed for the platoon (par. 512) and each section is **in order** (par. 370). In **column of twos** or **troopers** a further essential to **order** is that the right (or leading) section shall be **left in front** and the left (or rear) section shall be **right in front.** *This last condition automatically results if the column of twos or troopers be formed and maneuvered as prescribed in the platoon drill.* It is not essential to **order** in the platoon that the section chiefs and substitute chiefs have the positions indicated for them in par. 519. (Fig. 49.)

516. A platoon *not divided into sections* is **in order** when it fulfills the requirements prescribed for **order** in the squad (par. 370), but it can then *execute only the movements prescribed for the squad.*

To Form the Platoon, Mounted.

517. When the platoon leader is a commissioned officer the platoon is habitually formed by the platoon file closer under the supervision and direction of the platoon leader. When the platoon leader is a noncommissioned officer he forms the platoon and the file closer assists in the formation. Unless otherwise prescribed, the order of the sections from right to left in line, or head to rear in column, is that of their respective permanent numerical designations (par. 498).

518. The platoon is habitually formed in **double column.** The platoon may be formed in **column of fours**, or in **line**, by similar methods. The platoon is also formed at times by commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the squad (pars. 501, 502).

519. At the formation of the platoon, section chiefs and substitute chiefs habitually take position as follows:

(*a*) When the formation is in **double column**, the section chief of the right section, as No. 1 of the rear four of that section; the section chief of the left section, as No. 4 of the rear four of that section; the substitute chief of the right section, as No. 4 of the leading four of that section; the substitute chief of the left section, as No. 1 of the leading four of that section.

(*b*) Should the formation be in **column of fours**, the positions may be obtained by substituting in (*a*) *leading section* for *right section* and *rear section* for *left section.*

(*c*) Should the formation be in line, the section chiefs of the right and left sections are on the right and left of the platoon rank, respectively, and the substitute chiefs on the left of the right section and right of the left section, respectively.

(*d*) In each of the above formations should the four to which a section chief or substitute chief belongs be incomplete, par. 368–*b* is modified to the extent that a section chief or substitute chief habitually takes in an incomplete four his regular position (No. 1 or No. 4) as indicated, respectively, in (*a*), (*b*), and (*c*) of this paragraph.

(*e*) The arrangement of noncommissioned officers indicated in this paragraph, while desirable, is not *essential* to the employment of the platoon at drill, on the march, or in combat. Should the positions indicated not be taken when the platoon forms (or assembles) they are habitually taken as soon as practicable.

520. To form the platoon in **double column** (its habitual formation) the senior noncommissioned officer of the platoon takes position, mounted, 3 yards in front of the line upon which the heads of the two section columns are to rest and facing the approximate center of the position the front of the platoon is to occupy when formed. He then commands: **FORM PLATOON.** The section chief of the right section takes position at **stand to horse** abreast of the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon, on the latter's left, with an interval of 2 yards between the horses. The section chief of the left section similarly takes position 2 yards from the non-

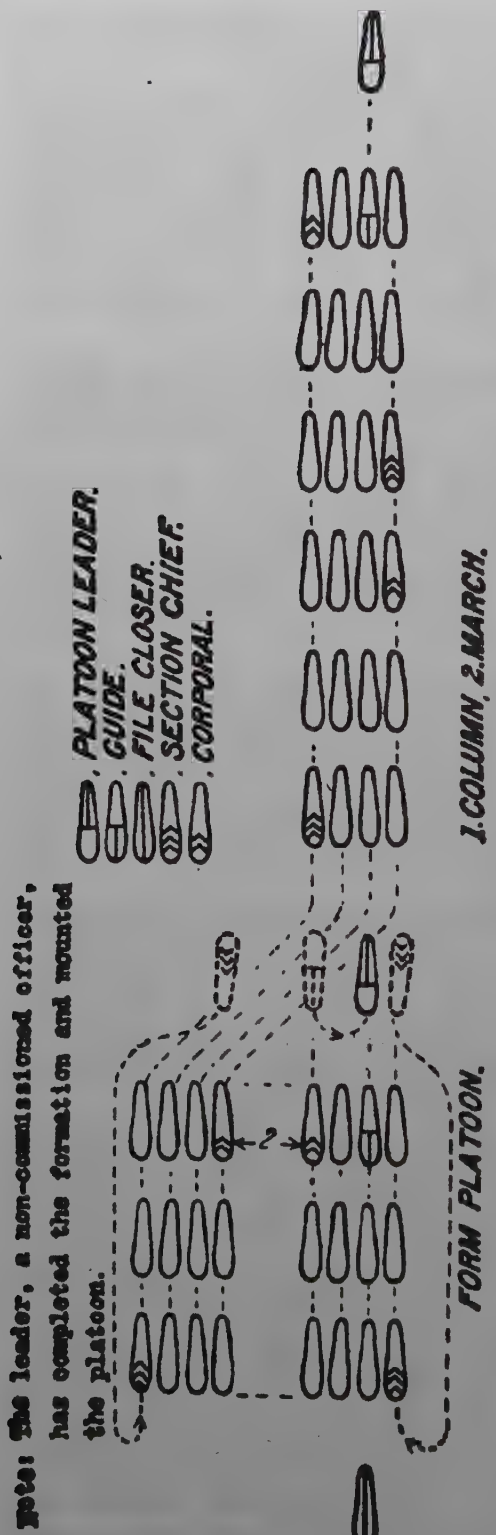

1. PLATOON LEADER.
2. GUIDE.
3. FILE CLOSER.
4. SECTION CHIEF.
5. CORPORAL.
1. COLUMN, 2. MARCH.
FORM PLATOON.
Note: The leader, a non-commissioned officer, has completed the formation and mounted the platoon.

FIG. 48, par. 520.

commissioned officer forming the platoon, on the latter's right, with the same interval between horses. The two section chiefs face in the same direction as the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon. The troopers of each section **lead into column** (par. 351) without further command. The trooper first to lead out in each section takes position, as No. 1 of its leading four, 3 yards directly in front of his respective section chief and facing him. Each section chief supervises the formation of his section, leading into his own position (par. 519–*a*) as soon as the troopers of his section are in ranks. (Fig. 48.)

521. The file closer (if not forming the platoon) assists in the formation and takes, at stand to horse, the position prescribed for him in double column (par. 528.)

522. As soon as the two section chiefs have taken position in their respective section columns the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon calls the roll (unless previously instructed to omit the roll call—par. 505) and makes any necessary adjustment between sections (par. 497). Should the rear four of either section (or of both sections) be incomplete the noncommissioned officer habitually makes such adjustment as will leave the rear four of one section complete, and the rear four of the other section as nearly complete as practicable.

523. If the platoon leader be a commissioned officer, the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon reports (except in the case of a platoon-in-troop—par. 593) to the platoon leader, who takes position at a convenient point in front of and facing the platoon in time to receive the report (par. 506). The noncommissioned officer takes his post as file closer, habitually remaining mounted unless the platoon leader dismounts. The leader causes the platoon to mount (pars. 529, 507).

If the platoon leader be a noncommissioned officer he (except in the case of a platoon-in-troop—par. 593) gives the commands for mounting as soon as the adjustment between sections has been made.

524. When the formation is in **column of fours** (par. 518), the chief of the rear section posts No. 1 of his leading four directly in rear of the corresponding trooper of the leading section at a distance equal to the depth of the leading section in **column of fours.** When the formation is in **line,** the first position of the section chief of the right section (par. 520) is at an interval equal to section front (instead of 2 yards) from the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon. The latter, as soon as the section chiefs have taken position in the ranks (par. 519–*c*), commands: 1. **Section,** 2. **COUNT FOURS.** Any excess distance or interval remaining between the sections when the adjustment completed is closed at once without command.

525. When the platoon is formed by the commands and methods prescribed for the squad (pars. 350–352, 518), if the duty in view calls for a division into sections (pars. 501, 502), such division is made after the roll has been called and fours counted. The assignment and placing of noncommissioned officers (par. 504), if not complete, is then completed. Any troopers whose numbers are changed thereby are cautioned as to their new numbers.

526. The platoon may form, after the troopers have mounted, in accordance with any of the methods authorized above. The commands of the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon are the same as those already given. If the troopers are not mounted, the section chiefs are directed in advance of the formation to cause the troopers to mount (par. 352).

527. The dismounted formation of the platoon is conducted on the same principles as the corresponding mounted forma-

tion with the necessary modifications as indicated in par. 353. When the platoon forms in **double column**, the commands are the same as in par. 520. Each section chief takes position with an interval of 4 feet from the platoon leader. This will place the left section at approximately 1 yard interval from the right section when the formation is completed, and will give it approximately its proper distance from the front rank when double rank is formed as in par. 552.

If armed with the rifle, the platoon leader and the section chiefs, until they take their places in the rank, carry their rifles at the **right shoulder** (par. 487).

If the verification is made by the noncommissioned officer forming the platoon (par. 507), the latter, as soon as all are in their places in ranks, commands (par. 91): 1. **Inspection,** 2. **ARMS**; 3. **Right shoulder,** 4. **ARMS,** and calls the roll. If the verification is to be made by the first sergeant, the commands indicated above are omitted at the platoon formation.

Positions of the Platoon Leader and File Closer.

528. (*a*) The habitual position of the **platoon leader** is 3 yards in front of the guide of the platoon (par. 450). He occupies other positions in special cases. For **dismounted fire** action the platoon leader takes post in rear of the line at such place as may best enable him to direct and control the fire of the platoon. Special positions are indicated for the leader in certain phases of mounted combat with the pistol (par. 567) and saber (par. 563). In certain column formations of the troop the leaders of platoons other than the base take position abreast of their respective leading elements and cease temporarily the direct leadership of the platoons, though retaining supervision and control of the latter (par. 451).

(*b*) The habitual position of the **file closer** is, in **line or foragers,** 3 yards in rear of the guide of the platoon; in **double rank,** 3 yards in rear of the guide of the rear rank (par. 533). In **double column** and in **column of fours, twos, or troopers** he is 3 yards in rear of the platoon and in the trace of the guide of the platoon. In certain column formations of the troop the file closers have positions differing from those indicated above (par. 599).

(*c*) If there be any **extra file closer** with the platoon, **he rides,** in **line** and in **double rank,** abreast of the platoon **file**

closer and in rear of such four as the file closer may designate; in **double column** and in **column of fours, twos,** or **troopers** he rides abreast of a four (two or trooper) designated by the file closer on the flank opposite to that indicated for the chief of platoon in par. 602.

(*d*) When the platoon is wheeled about by fours the movements of the leader and file closers conform to pars. 605, 606.

To Mount and Dismount.

529. The platoon in any prescribed formations mounts and dismounts by the commands and methods corresponding to those indicated for *the squad* (pars. 354–358). If the platoon be mounted or dismounted in **double rank,** the odd numbers of the rear rank lead forward only 3 yards.

Immediately following the execution of the first command for mounting or dismounting, a platoon leader habitually takes position, mounted, in front of and facing the platoon and at a distance of 3 yards from the leading rank or element of the platoon. As soon as the platoon forms rank after mounting (when the platoon mounts from line), or as soon as it mounts (when the mounting is executed from a formation other than line), the platoon leader habitually takes his prescribed position (par. 528) for the formation in question.

To Dismiss the Platoon.

530. The platoon is dismissed as prescribed for the squad (par. 360).

If the platoon be in double column or in **column of fours, twos,** or **troopers,** the leader may command: 1. **Sections,** 2. **FALL OUT.** Each section executes the movement.

Alignment.

531. The **alignment** of the platoon acting alone is conducted upon the same principles as that of the squad (pars. 362–366).

Leading the Platoon.

532. The platoon is led by its leader in accordance with the principles stated in pars. 323–325, 367, and 448–452.

Guide of the Platoon.

533. In **line** and in **foragers** the left trooper of the right section is the guide of the platoon. At each change of forma-

tion in **line** or **foragers** the file closer cautions the guide as indicated in par. 373.

In **double rank**, the platoon leader, on taking position in front of the front rank, designates a trooper near the center of that rank as guide of the platoon; the file closer designates the corresponding trooper of the rear rank as guide of the latter. The guide of the rear rank follows in the trace of the guide of the front rank at 3 yards distance unless otherwise indicated (par. 550).

In **column of fours, twos, or troopers,** the guide is regulated as prescribed for the corresponding formations of the squad (par. 374).

In **double column** the right section is the base and No. 2 of the leading four is the guide of the platoon. In each section of the **double column** the guide is as prescribed for the squad in **column of fours** (par. 374). The guide of the left section regulates on the guide of the right section.

It is to be noted that the guide of the platoon may, as the platoon passes from one formation to another, be a private, a substitute chief, or a section chief.

534. Whenever the platoon leader takes position in the rank he becomes the guide of the platoon.

535. The guide habitually follows the platoon leader at a distance of 3 yards; the platoon leader may specially indicate a greater distance.

Movements Executed by the Platoon.

536. The platoon in **double column** marches to the front, halts, marches backward, obliques by trooper, and resumes the original direction, executes changes of direction, including the turn and half turn, and marches to the rear by commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the squad in **line.**

537. In accordance with the principles stated in pars. 469 and 470, the platoon, *when divided into sections*, habitually forms **column of fours, twos,** or **troopers** to the direction of march from **line** as prescribed in par. 545, instead of as prescribed in par. 403–*a*, *b;* forms **line** to the direction of march from **column of fours, twos,** or **troopers,** as prescribed in par. 546, instead of as prescribed in par. 397; forms **column of**

twos, or troopers from column of fours as prescribed in par. 547 instead of as prescribed in par. 393.

A platoon *divided into sections* habitually forms column of fours, twos, or troopers by breaking to the direction of march from its *center* in line; and it habitually forms either line or foragers from column of fours, twos, or troopers by a *fan-wise* deployment.

538. Movements on foot are executed in accordance with the principles stated in pars. 482–484.

539. The principles stated in pars. 446–488 are, with such modifications as are indicated in the platoon drill, generally applicable to that drill.

Commands and Corresponding Arm Signals.

(For list of commands and signals for these movements executed as prescribed for the squad, see par. 381.)

540.

Commands.	Pars.	Arm Signals.
1. Charge	563	None except leader's example.
1. Column, 2. MARCH	541, 545–*a*, 548	Column.*
1. Column of twos, 2. MARCH	545–*b*, 547, 548	Column—twos.†
1. Column of troopers, 2. MARCH	545–*b*, 547	Column—troopers.†
1. Double column, 2. MARCH	542, 544	Double column.*
1. Double rank, 2. MARCH	551	None.
1. Foragers, 2. MARCH	557	Foragers.*
1. Line, 2. MARCH	543, 546	Line.*
1. Pistol attack	567	None except leader's example.
1. Single rank, 2. MARCH	554	None.
1. Skirmishers, 2. MARCH	557	Skirmishers.*

* Signals marked thus are preparatory signals; the signal of execution in each case is made as prescribed in par. 990.

† In signals marked thus, the preparatory signal consists of more than one element; the signal of execution follows the last element of the preparatory signal.

541. Being in double column, to form column of fours, twos, or troopers.

(*a*) **To form column of fours: 1. Column, 2. MARCH.** The right section is the base; it advances and follows the leader. The left section takes or maintains a correspondingly slower gait (or if halted, remains so) until its leading four is about abreast of the rear four of the right section, when the left section inclines to the right (par. 510) at the gait of the right section and takes its place in column of fours in rear of the other section. (Fig. 48.)

(*b*) **Column of twos or troopers** is formed at the commands: **1. Column of twos, or 1. Column of troopers, 2. MARCH.** The right section executes **left by twos (troopers)** as in par. 393–*a*, *b;* the left section executes **right by twos (troopers)** in time to take its position in the column as explained in (*a*), above (par. 331).

Gaits in both (*a*) and (*b*) are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *c*.

542. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to form double column: 1. Double column, 2. MARCH.

Being in **column of fours**, the leading section, as the base (par. 459) advances and follows the leader. The rear section inclines to the left (par. 510) at a correspondingly faster gait, resumes the march to the front so as to have its interval of 2 yards, and, when its leading four is abreast of the guide of the base section, takes the gait of the latter. (Pl. V.)

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *b*.

It is practicable to form **double column** from **column of twos or troopers** on similar principles, each section executing **column** (par. 399) during the movement (par. 331). **Double column** is ordinarily executed from either **column of fours or line.**

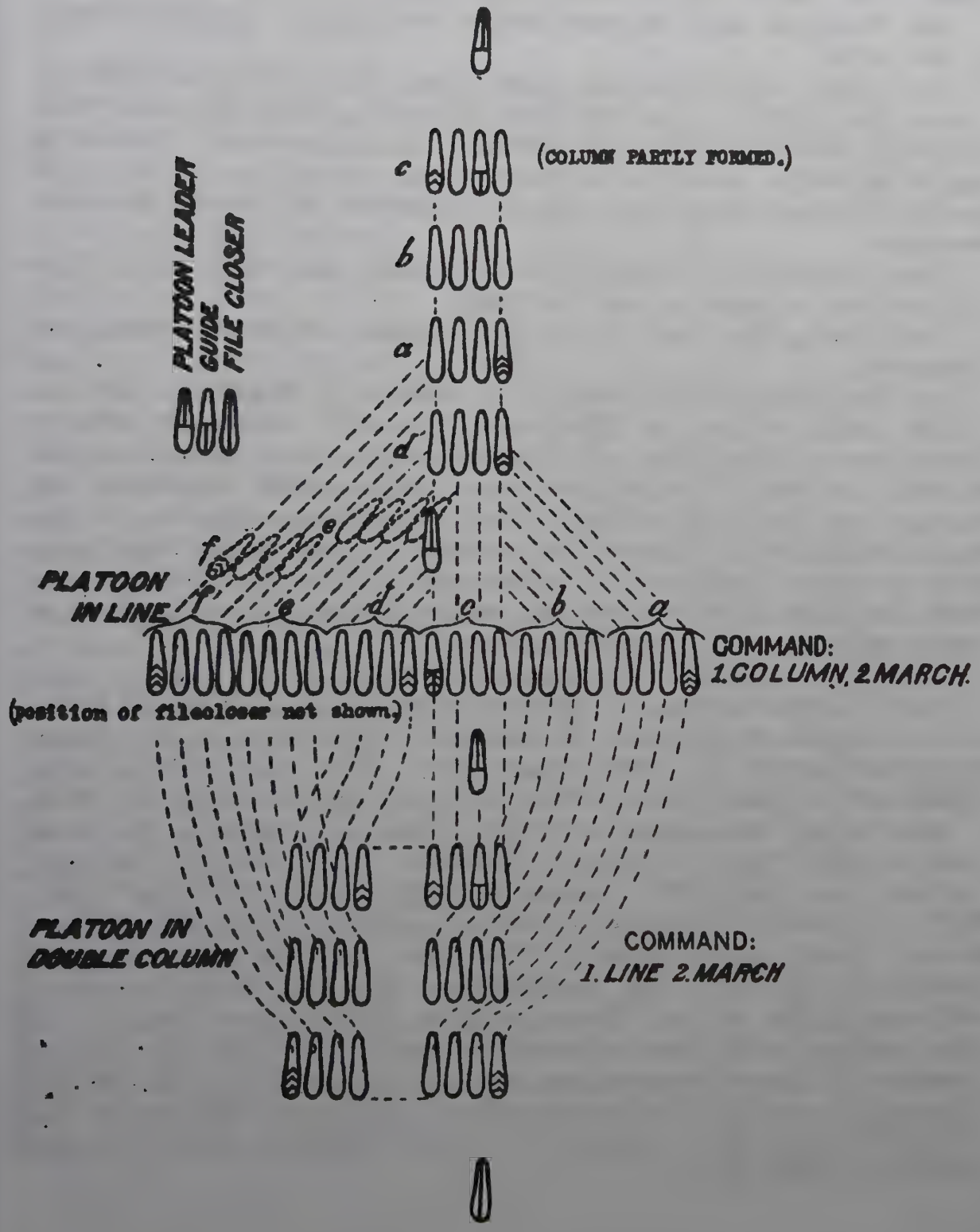
543. Being in double column, to form line: 1. Line, 2. MARCH.

The right section as the base (par. 458) executes **right front into line** (par. 397). Its leading four advances and follows the platoon leader.

The left section executes left front into line, except that the right trooper of its leading four closes in upon the left of the leading four of the right section and regulates upon the guide of the line (par. 326).

PLATE I.—THE PLATOON.

(Par. 543.)



Any command for a gait applies only to the execution of **front into line** in the sections (par. 337–*f*). (Pl. I.)

544. Being in line, to form double column: 1. Double column, 2. MARCH.

The right section as the base (par. 458) executes **left by fours** (par. 403–*a*), its left four advancing and following the platoon leader. The left section simultaneously executes **right by fours**, its guide regulating on the guide of the right section and gradually gaining the interval of 2 yards between sections.

The two sections advance at the same gait (par. 334), the left section regulating on the right.

545. Being in line, to form column of fours, twos, or troopers.

(*a*) To form **column of fours: 1. Column, 2. MARCH.** (Pl. I.)

The right section as the base (par. 459) executes **left by fours** (par. 403–*a*), its left four advancing and following the platoon leader. The left section executes **right by fours** (at the gait of the head of the column) in time to incline to the right and take its place in the column in rear of the right section at 4 feet distance. It is the duty of the file closer to see that the right four of the left section begins the execution of **right by fours** at the proper moment.

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *c*.

(*b*) To **form column of twos or troopers: 1. Column of twos,** or **1. Column of troopers, 2. MARCH.** Executed on the same principles as in (*a*) above (par. 331). The right section executes **left by twos** (par. 403–*b*), the left section **right by twos.**

546. Being in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to form line to the front: 1. Line, 2. MARCH. The leading section, as the base (par. 459), executes **right front into line** (par. 397), its leading element advancing and following the platoon leader (pars. 334, 337–*a*). The rear section executes **left front into line** with the modification that its leading element obliques to the left at the same time as the other elements of that section and forms abreast of and to the left of the left trooper of the other section, who becomes the guide of the platoon (par. 533) in the new line. All the elements of the column except the leading one in the platoon move as prescribed in par 337–*b*.

Line to a flank or to any oblique direction may be formed on the same principles, the head of the column being directed toward the new front before the command for line is given (par. 481–*c*). (Fig. 49.)

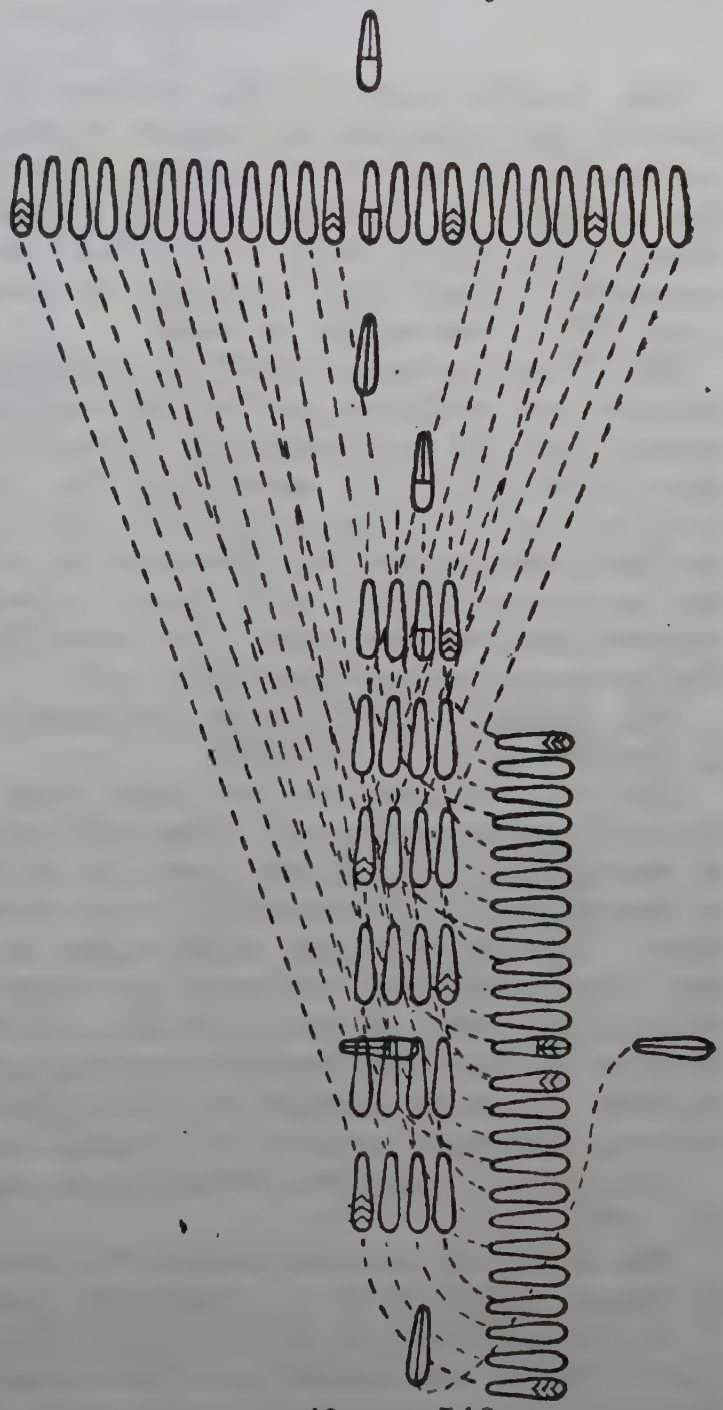


FIG. 49, par. 546.

547. Being in column of fours, to form column of twos or troopers: 1. **Column of twos,** or 1. **Column of troopers,** 2. **MARCH.** Executed according to the principles of par. 393–*a*, *b*. The leading section always executes **left by twos** and the rear section **right by twos** (par. 331).

548. Being in column of twos or troopers, to form column of fours: 1. **Column,** 2. **MARCH.** Executed as in the squad (par. 399), except that the rear two (or trooper) of each four of the leading section oblique to the right, while the corresponding oblique in the rear section is to the left (par. 331). **Column of twos from column of troopers** is formed in a similar manner (par. 331) at the command: 1. **Column of twos,** 2. **MARCH.**

Double Rank.

549. Double rank in the platoon is formed in two ways—toward the direction of march from single rank (par. 551), and to the flank from double column (par. 552). Conversely, the platoon in double rank executes but three changes of formation—single rank (par. 554) and foragers (par. 557), executed toward the direction of march, and double column (par. 555), formed to a flank.

550. The platoon in double rank executes by the same commands and methods as the platoon in single rank all movements that do not involve a *change of formation.* (*See also* pars. 554, 555.) In executing the changes of direction (including the turn and half turn) the troopers of the rear rank incline outward during the turn so as to gain ground toward the marching flank; and those nearest the pivot move their horses' haunches toward the marching flank, so as to clear the ground for any following unit.

551. Being in single rank, to form double rank to the front: 1. Double rank, 2. MARCH.

The right section as the base (par. 458) advances and follows the platoon leader. The left section takes or maintains a correspondingly slower gait (or, if halted remains so) until it has gained a distance of 3 yards from the right section (par. 510). It then obliques to the right by trooper. the guide (par. 385) so regulating the gait and pace as to keep, during the oblique, 3 yards in rear of the other section. As the right trooper of the rear section approaches the right of the other section the rear section resumes the march to the front and follows the base section at 3 yards distance.

The gaits of the two sections are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *e*. (Pl. II.)

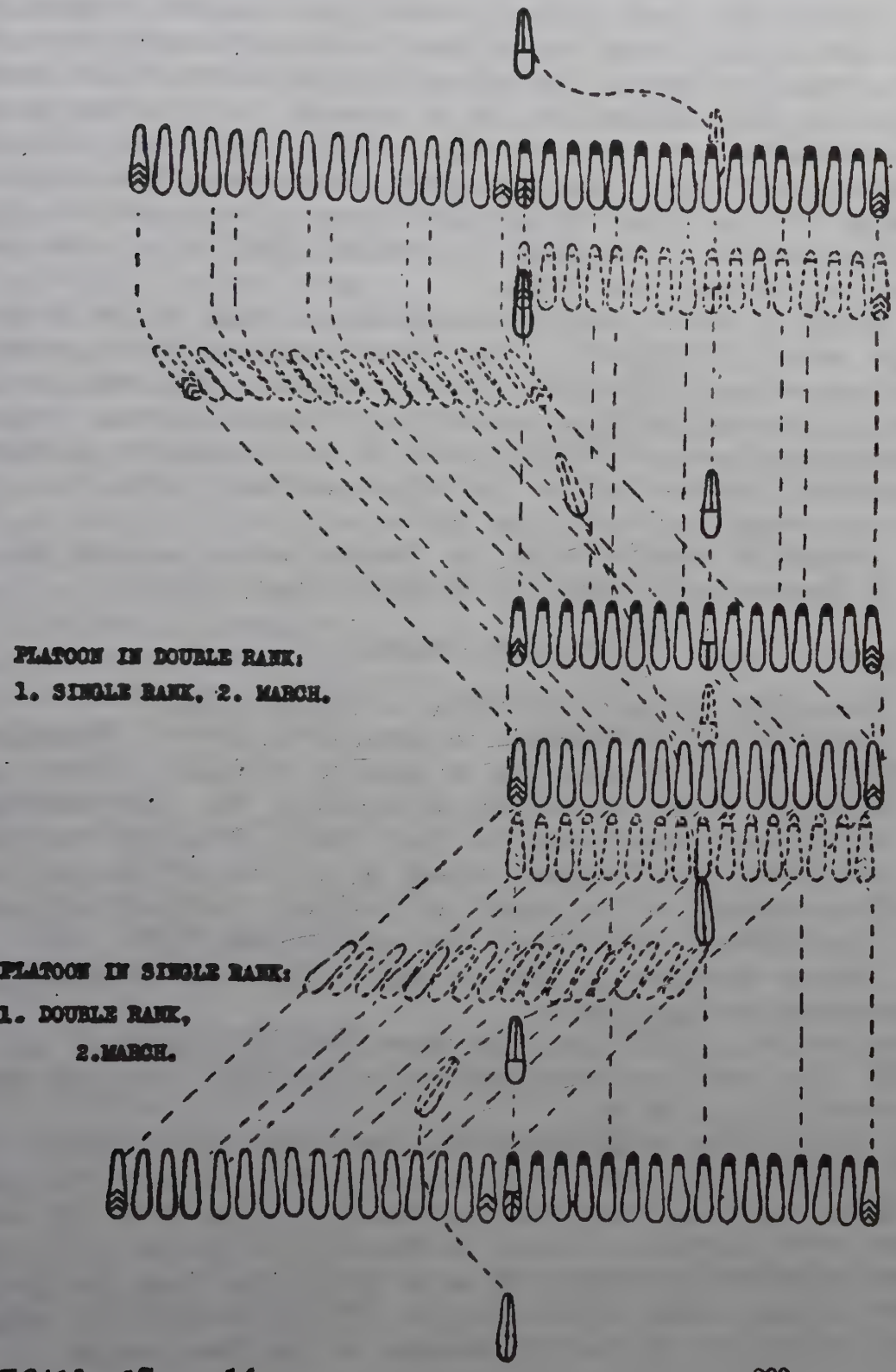
552. Being in double column, to form double rank to a flank: 1. Fours right (left), 2. MARCH (pars. 325, 400).

If the purpose of the command is to gain a short distance to the flank, the leader and file closer need not move to their new positions, nor need a new guide be indicated (par. 326).

553. In executing double rank as prescribed in pars. 551 and 552 the right section of the line or double column becomes the front rank of the double rank; the left section, the rear

PLATE II.—THE PLATOON.

(Par. 551.)



rank. Should the rear rank, however, have more troopers in it than are in the front rank, the file closer directs enough troopers from the left of the rear rank to the left of the front rank, at the first indication for a charge, to give the front rank a strength not less than that of the rear rank. In all such cases, before ordering subsequent movements that require knowledge by the troopers of their respective numbers, the leader commands: 1. **Sections**, 2. **COUNT FOURS**, or else assembles the platoon (par. 560).

554. Being in double rank to form single rank to the front: 1. Single rank, 2. MARCH. The front rank, as the base section, advances and follows the platoon leader. The rear rank obliques to the left at a correspondingly faster gait as in par. 551, resuming the march to the front so as to take its position in single rank on the left of the other section. (Pl. II.)

Gaits are regulated as in par. 337–*a*, *e*.

555. Being in double rank, to form double column to a flank: 1. Fours right (left), 2. MARCH (par. 325).

Extended Order.

556. Pars. 404–407 are applicable to the platoon.

557. Being in any formation, to form foragers: 1. Foragers, 2. MARCH. If the platoon be in **double column, column of fours, column of twos**, or **column of troopers**, the right section forms **right front into foragers** (par. 409). The left section forms **left front into foragers** based upon the **left trooper** of the leading element of the right (or leading) section, who advances (par. 337–*a*) and follows the leader (par. 325).

The platoon deploys on **foot as skirmishers** by corresponding commands and methods.

If the platoon be in line, the movement is executed as in par. 408. The right section deploys to the right, the left section to the left. (Fig. 50.)

If the platoon be in **double rank**, the front rank deploys on its left trooper (par. 408), who becomes the guide of the platoon and advances, following the leader (pars. 325, 337–*a*). The rear rank moves obliquely to the left as in par. 551, the troopers successively deploying at a gallop as they gain the necessary space. The right trooper of the rear rank takes position on the left of the left trooper of the front rank.

558. The platoon may be extended in depth by commands and methods corresponding to those indicated in par. 413. The elements of the extension are usually sections, but may be squads (par. 494), fours, twos, or troopers.

559. Being in foragers and in order, to assemble: 1. Assemble, 2. MARCH.

Each section assembles in column of fours on its inner flank (par. 414), the file closer cautioning the troopers if necessary. The guide of the right section advances and follows the leader (par. 325). The left section regulates on the right section, closing to 2 yards interval. The gait of the leading fours of the two sections is regulated as indicated in pars 334, 337–*a*, *e*.

Should it be desired to advance in column of fours instead of in double column, the leader may, instead of waiting until the assembly is completed and then executing the corresponding movement, caution:

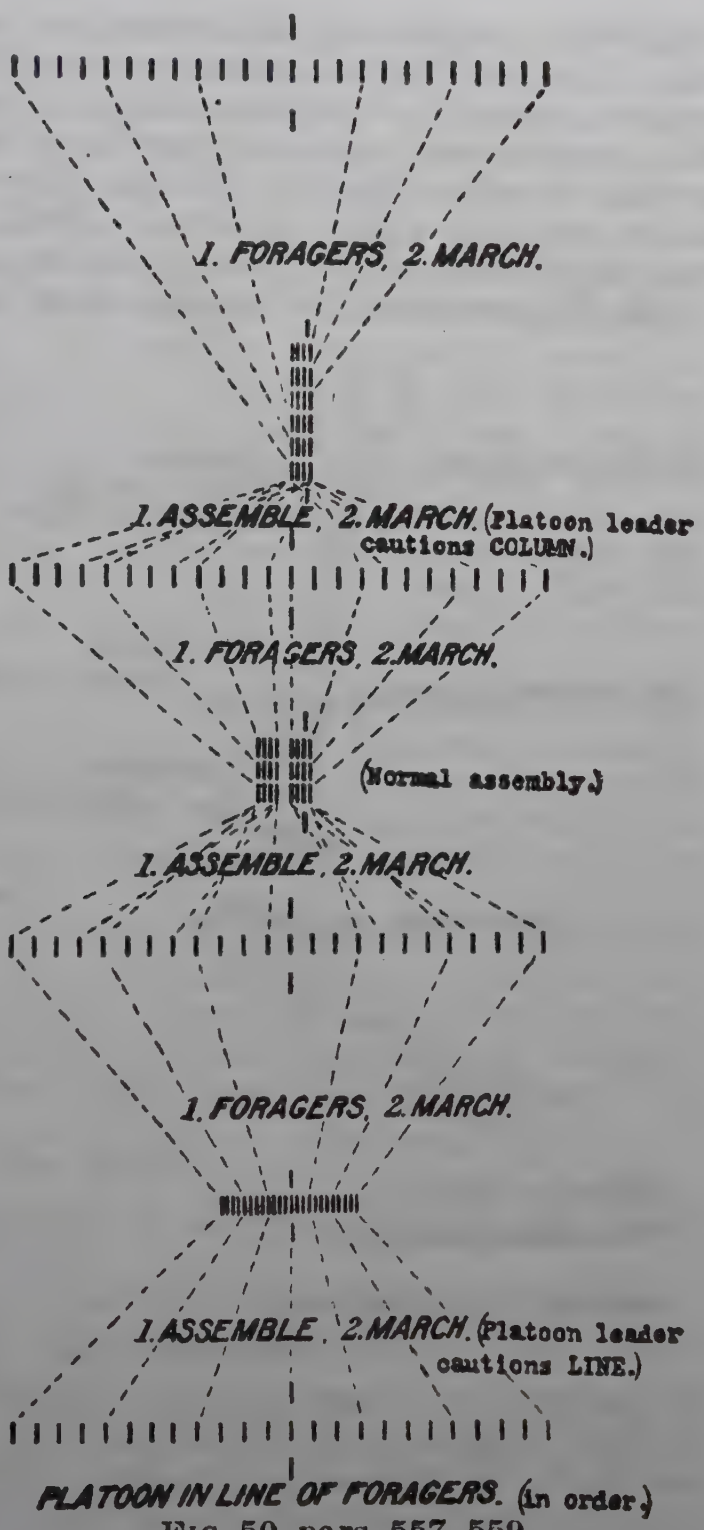

1. FORAGERS, 2. MARCH.
1. ASSEMBLE, 2. MARCH. (Platoon leader cautions COLUMN.)
1. FORAGERS, 2. MARCH.
(Normal assembly.)
1. ASSEMBLE, 2. MARCH.
1. FORAGERS, 2. MARCH.
1. ASSEMBLE, 2. MARCH. (Platoon leader cautions LINE.)
PLATOON IN LINE OF FORAGERS. (In order.)

FIG. 50, pars. 557, 559.

COLUMN, immediately following the commands for the assembly. Each section assembles as before, but the head of the left section moves at a correspondingly slower gait (or halts) until that section can take its place in column in rear of the base section in accordance with the principles of par. 458. The leader may similarly caution: **LINE**. The platoon then assembles in line on its guide as in the squad. (Fig. 50.)

560. To assemble the platoon when the latter is not in order: 1. **Assemble,** 2. **MARCH.**

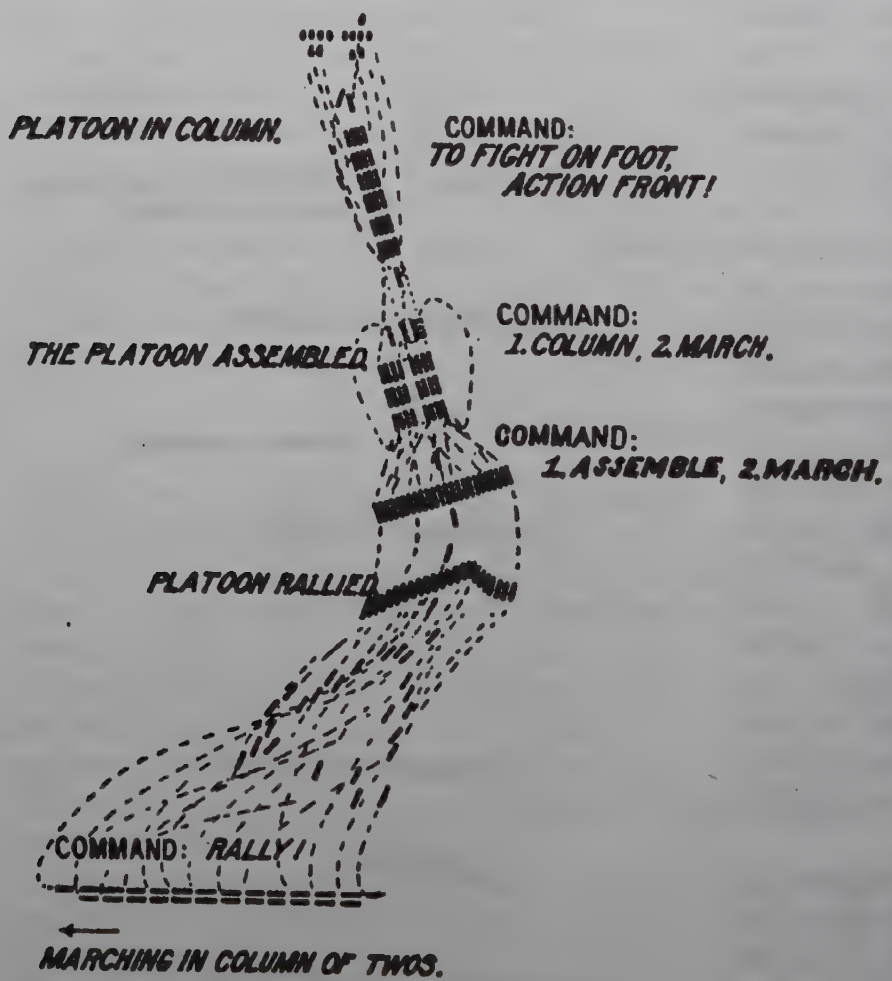


Fig. 51, pars. 560, 561.

The movement is, with minor modifications, executed upon the same principles upon which the original formation of the platoon is based. Certain features of the original formation (e. g., the roll call, report, and inspection) are omitted.

The leader is the base of the assembly and moves in the direction toward which he desires the platoon to face. The section chiefs move quickly to their respective positions abreast of the leader (par. 520) and move in the same direction. The troopers move toward their respective section chiefs and the sections form, each in column of fours, 3 yards in rear of its chief. Each trooper takes a correspondingly faster gait than his chief, if neces-

sary, to gain his position. The first trooper to arrive in rear of the section chief becomes No. 1 of the leading four of that section (par. 351). Each trooper forms in his own section, but with no attention to his former position. The platoon leader, as soon as the leading four of the right section forms, takes position in front of No. 2 of that four. The left section regulates on the right section. The section chiefs, as soon as their respective base troopers and the leader and guide of the platoon are in position, are free to move to where they can best supervise the formation of their sections. In separating the personnel of two sections whose troopers have become intermingled, the troopers of the base (right) section have the right of way and pass in front of the troopers of the left section. Each section leader takes his position (par. 519) as soon as his section is formed. The file closer assists as usual in the formation and takes his position (par. 528).

If it is desired to assemble the platoon in column, the caution **COLUMN** may be given following the command of execution for the assembly. The leader of the section that would have formed on the left in double column causes the section to take a correspondingly slower gait until it can take its place in rear of the other section.

The movement described in this paragraph may be executed whether the platoon be in any formation, or in partial or complete disorder, provided a prior division into sections has been made and each trooper knows to which section he belongs. The movement is important and should be practiced frequently. (Fig. 51.)

THE RALLY.

561. Being in any formation, or not formed, or in disorder, to rally:

The command, signal, and method of execution are the same as those indicated for the squad (par. 416). The file closer assists as usual in the formation.

In campaign, the rally, unless executed with a view to making a charge, should habitually be followed as soon as practicable by the assembly (par. 560).

In instruction, however, the rally should frequently be executed and the platoon practiced, following the rally, in charg-

ing without reforming, and also in **assembling** quickly while marching. These exercises are of exceptional importance.

The **rally** differs from the assembly in that it is always executed at a very rapid gait and that it does not habitually result in a condition of **order**. It is an emergency movement, and its use, except for *instruction purposes*, should be confined to those occasions when the **assembly** will not meet the situation. (Fig. 51.)

THE CHARGE.

562. The characteristic feature of the cavalry charge is utilizing the momentum of a group of horses at high speed in connection with the troopers' use of their weapons. The effect of the impact increases with the speed of the horses and the compactness of the group. Hence the normal formation for the charge is **line**; and, as **line** is not a formation which favors the most effective use of the pistol, the usual weapon for the charge is the saber.

The saber charge may also be executed in **foragers**, the troopers then ordinarily attacking in couples. Such a formation would be ineffective against an opposing charge in close order, but it may be employed under special conditions; **as** when the enemy is dismounted or is in an extended formation or when the ground does not permit a charge in line. Since there is then no cohesion in this charging group, the effect of the impact is greatly reduced. The purpose of **attacking in** couples is to afford mutual support.

Under certain conditions the pistol may be advantageously used for the charge. A command, surprised in column formation on a road or other place where obstacles prevent quick deployment, may then break through a hostile force. **Column of twos** would enable all the pistols to be used; **column of fours**, while permitting only the men on the flanks of the fours to fire, would have greater momentum.

The charge is described for the normal case—**the attack in line**. Speed and cohesion are the essential elements. The charge should begin at a short distance from the enemy. The gaits employed to reach the charging point will depend upon the terrain as known or as indicated by the ground scouts, the condition of the horses, and other circumstances.

The charge must be pushed home.

In instruction exercises the enemy should always be outlined or represented (par. 21) and the plan of the exercise should be carefully explained.

563. The platoon with sabers drawn, marching at the gallop or at the extended gallop, the leader, when at about 50 yards from the enemy, commands: **CHARGE.** Each trooper pushes his horse to full speed and takes the charging position (par. 297). The troopers close on the leader, but do not permit their horses to pass the leader's horse.

The troopers habitually cheer at the command **charge.**

564. When the pistol is used the leader raises his pistol so that the troopers can see it and commands: 1. **Raise,** 2. **PISTOL.** When practicable, this is done before **charge** is commanded. The leader takes position on a flank of the leading element of the column. The troopers hold their fire until the leader at the head of the column opens fire. Circumstances may require that a charge of this character be made in line. The troopers then close on the leader, who takes position in the rank (par. 534).

565. The charge in general may be followed by the **rally,** with a view to restoring control and cohesion and charging back. If the enemy break and scatter the pursuit may be pressed by the troopers riding individually or in small groups, thus approximating the charge as **foragers.** The troopers keep on the alert for the command or signal **rally.**

The charge may terminate with the mêlée resolving itself into a series of individual combats.

The platoon should be assembled as soon as practicable (par. 485).

The Pistol Attack.

566. The pistol attack is the normal form of mounted attack in all cases in which it is not intended to use the momentum of the horses as one of the weapons of the attacking force. Accuracy in firing the pistol, rapidity in loading and in performing the other operations connected with the handling of the weapon, the ability to direct and control the horses, and the habitual withholding of fire until within close range of the enemy are essential features in the successful pistol attack. The particular use of the pistol referred to in par. 564 is in reality a special case of the **charge** and is to be clearly dis-

tinguished from the normal pistol attack, which is habitually made in foragers and does not depend upon the *momentum* of the horse as an important feature in its execution. The *speed* of the horse is, however, employed that the trooper may place himself within close range of his enemy and in the relative position that is most to his own advantage and his enemy's disadvantage.

567. The platoon being deployed as foragers, at **raise pistol** the leader commands: **PISTOL ATTACK,** and leads the platoon against the enemy. The guide moves up abreast of the leader and on his left, the other troopers conforming (par. 534). The troopers are trained in instruction exercises to withhold their fire habitually until within 10 yards of the enemy and to avoid firing in the direction of their own men.

In action, the troopers habitually withhold their fire until the platoon leader opens fire. The distance from the enemy at which fire is opened varies with the rapidity with which the opposing forces are approaching each other and the nature of the target, but should in no case be more than 25 yards.

Following the attack, pistols must be reloaded at once. The subsequent movements of the platoon depend on the situation that results from the attack. The attack may be repeated, the pursuit taken up or the platoon be rallied.

568. The pistol attack is usually executed when the platoon is deployed as foragers, but any formation (e. g., column of twos) that permits the effective use of the pistol may be employed if conditions favor its use.

Ground Scouts and Combat Patrols.

569. The special mission of ground scouts (Def. **Scouts**) is to ascertain if the ground in the immediate front is suitable for cavalry, and, if not, to indicate where points of passage may be found.

Ground scouts should always be designated in advance and trained for their special duty. They should be equipped with wire cutters.

The noncommissioned officer in each flank four (section chief or substitute chief) acts as a ground scout unless otherwise directed. The two scouts move forward at the gallop at

the caution: **GROUND SCOUTS FORWARD**, or at the first indication of a coming charge by the platoon.

Ground scouts reconnoiter the ground to a considerable distance in front of the command, generally from 200 to 500 yards, taking care to be able to *communicate quickly and intelligibly the information obtained.*

When the charge is sounded or ordered, the scouts clear the front of the advancing line and join on the nearest flank.

570. The following signals should be used by ground scouts: If the ground is unfavorable the signal **halt** will be given and the scout will ride for the point which appears practicable, pointing toward it with the hand or weapon. If the ground is wholly impracticable the scout will ride back to report, giving the signal **halt.**

571. In addition to sending out ground scouts to ascertain and communicate the suitability of ground for mounted action, cavalry units engaged, or about to engage, in mounted combat will usually require special patrols (Def.) to provide for immediate security against possible attacks from the flank or rear. Such patrols, usually designated "combat patrols," should be limited in number and strength to the minimum reasonably sufficient for the purposes indicated. The extent to which they may be required will obviously vary with the conditions attending the combat. The presence of friendly troops on the immediate flanks and rear of the attacking unit may, in rare cases, render them unnecessary. Whenever ground scouts or combat patrols are needed for the proper protection of any unit, the *immediate commander of the attacking line is responsible that necessary provision is made for them.*

Movements for Passing from Mounted Action to Dismounted Action.

572. The platoon may pass to dismounted action and remount by the commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the squad (pars. 421, 442), with such modifications as are noted below.

573. It is important that the platoon leader move quickly to the place where the dismounted platoon is to form (par. 575). He must, therefore, not be delayed in connection with the care of his horse. On dismounting he passes his reins to the file

closer or to a near-by trooper or links his horse to a convenient trooper's mount, according to the circumstances of the case. The horse holder nearest the leader must endeavor to assist in quickly freeing the leader from the care of his horse.

574. In the absence of orders to the contrary, the file closer performs the duties prescribed for the trooper in charge of the horse holders and led horses of the squad (par. 431). Should the file closer's orders require him to leave the horses, after once assuming charge of them, he must, before doing so, see that a responsible and properly instructed trooper is placed in charge. When the file closer dismounts he links his horse to the horse of the most convenient trooper. The platoon file closer notices particularly that the platoon leader's horse is promptly taken on dismounting to fight on foot and promptly brought up for remounting. When necessary he leads the platoon leader's horse.

575. Whenever the platoon passes to dismounted action the platoon leader (dismounted) hurries to the point where he desires the platoon to form. The section chiefs take position on his right and left and the dismounted platoon forms in **double column** as in the assembly (par. 560), each trooper moving at the run to his own section. The platoon leader may command: 1. **Skirmishers,** 2. **MARCH,** as the troopers approach. The first trooper of the right section to arrive near the chief then takes position behind the latter as guide of the platoon, the other troopers of the right section deploy on his right, and the troopers of the left section deploy on his left. Each section chief supervises the deployment and, in the absence of other instructions, takes position on the outer flank of his section.

576. The platoon, having dismounted, executes any necessary movements. Fire action is conducted by the usual commands and methods. If the platoon be not divided into sections it forms, and is maneuvered, by commands and means corresponding to those employed for the squad. (Fig. 51, par. 560.)

Obstacles.

577. Obstacles are passed as in the squad (par. 443). The platoon file closer and the section chiefs and substitute chiefs see that cautions are passed back and other necessary steps taken to avoid accidents.

Combat.

578. The saber charge and pistol attack are the characteristic features of mounted combat. The rifle is the habitual weapon of dismounted combat. In exceptional cases the pistol, in addition to its use for individual protection, may be employed in the charge or in dismounted combat; for example, in a dismounted rush at close quarters made by cavalry not armed with the bayonet. Rifle firing mounted may also be exceptionally employed by small groups of specially trained men and horses.

579. *The question as to which weapon shall be used is one of tactics.* Each weapon has its own function for which it is best suited and for which it should be employed. Nothing except a knowledge of the general principles that govern the use of each, experience, and sound judgment can indicate the weapon to be selected in any particular case.

For a mounted attack made against an equally well-trained and well-mounted enemy, under conditions that offer no special advantage to either side up to the moment of contact, and over ground favorable to its use, the close-order charge with the saber may prove more effective than the pistol attack.

For an attack made when exposed to an effective fire of any kind the normal formation (**foragers**) for the pistol attack is much less vulnerable than the normal formation (**line**) for the saber charge. The pistol attack can also be delivered in many cases where the nature of the ground or the existence of obstacles will make an effective saber charge impossible. Where the terrain does not favor the advance at high speed of a close-order line, where the enemy is in a dispersed formation (as **foragers** or **skirmishers**), and under any conditions in which actual contact can be avoided by the enemy if he so desire, the pistol is apt to prove more effective than the saber.

Where so outnumbered as to render defensive tactics necessary, where the terrain does not permit of successful mounted action, where opportunities occur for suddenly surprising with fire an enemy in close order, and in other similar cases, dismounted action may be advisable.

580. Commanders of small isolated groups should be particularly careful not to resort to dismounted action unless the advantages of such a course are clear; and, when such action

is called for, should be on the alert for the first favorable opportunity to resume mounted action. The commander of such a group will very rarely be justified in resorting to dismounted action if a reasonable prospect for successful mounted action is presented, or if dismounted action involves the material separation of the horses from the dismounted line, thus dividing the command. A separation of the dismounted line and horses not only sacrifices mobility and weakens the firing line to provide horse holders and guards, but, in the presence of an alert enemy, may easily lead to disaster.

581. The commands and formations for each type of action are those appearing in the corresponding portions of the drill regulations (pars. 562–576).

Once facility in the use of weapons, familiarity with the mechanism of the movements, and skill in horsemanship have been acquired, the best peace training for combat is constant practice in field exercises.

THE TROOP.

Special Provisions.

582. The captain is the commander and tactical leader of the troop (par. 461).

583. If platoons are properly instructed, troop drill will consist practically in the leading and handling of the platoons by their respective leaders in accordance with the captain's will, as indicated by his own example and movements, his commands and signals. Troop drill must not be made the means of giving individual instruction or elementary collective instruction to the troopers in the ranks of the platoons, though it may properly be used to test the thoroughness of such instruction.

Troop Formations.

(Plate III.)

584. The close-order formations of the troop for march, maneuver, and combat are:

(*a*) **Line (single or double rank).**
(*b*) **Line of double columns.**
(*c*) **Line of platoon columns.**
(*d*) **Column of platoons (single rank only).**
(*e*) **Double column.**
(*f*) **Column of fours.**
(*g*) **Column of twos.**
(*h*) **Column of troopers.**

Route order (par. 604) is a modified form of (*e*), (*f*), (*g*), or (*h*). The formations in which the front of the troop is extended to a greater degree than corresponds to deployment into line are (*i*) **line of platoons** and (*j*) **foragers.** The troop may also be extended in depth (*k*).

(*a*) **In line (single or double rank)** each platoon is in line (par. 512–*a*). The platoons are abreast of each other or are echeloned as prescribed in par. 587.

(*b*) **In line of double columns** the platoons, each in **double column**, are abreast, with intervals sufficient for the troop to **deploy into line** toward the direction of march.

(*c*) In **line of platoon columns** the platoons, each in **column of fours**, are abreast of one another, with intervals sufficient for the troop to deploy into **line** toward the direction of march.

(*d*) In **column of platoons** the platoons, each in **line**, are one behind another, with distances equal to platoon front, less 3 yards.

(*e*), (*f*), (*g*), (*h*). In **double column** and in **column of fours, twos, or troopers** each platoon is in the corresponding formation (par. 512). The distance between the rear of any platoon and the head of the platoon next in rear is, in each formation, the same as the distance between other elements of the corresponding column.

(*i*) In **line of platoons** the platoons are deployed with intervals sufficient to permit the troop to deploy into **foragers** toward the direction of march. The interval is based upon foragers being placed at intervals of 3 yards unless another interval has previously been designated. The platoons are abreast of each other or echeloned as in par 587. The platoons are usually in one of the prescribed close-order formations (par. 512).

(*j*) In **foragers** each platoon is in foragers, the interval between platoons being the same as between adjacent troopers in foragers. The platoons are abreast of each other or echeloned as in par. 587.

(*k*) The extension of the troop in depth is similar to that explained for the squad and platoon.

Order.

585. A troop divided into platoons is **in order** when its component platoons are united in any one of the formations prescribed for the troop and each is **in order** as explained in par. 515.

586. A troop that is not divided into platoons is **in order** when it fulfills the conditions for order in the squad (par. 370); but it can then execute only the movements prescribed for the squad.

Echeloning of Platoons.

587. Whenever the troop advances in *line, line of platoons, or foragers*, the platoons next on the right and left of the

directing platoons are echeloned (without interval) upon the base platoon, habitually at a distance of 3 yards; this will place the *leaders* of the two platoons adjacent to the base platoon on a line with the *rank* of the latter. A platoon not immediately adjacent to the base platoon is similarly echeloned upon the nearest platoon on the side of the base. The platoons are not echeloned, as above, in **double rank**, nor in case the troop be marched backward, nor when the troop is halted. In extended order, the captain may, by instructions to the platoon commanders, increase the distance at which the platoons are echeloned.

When the troop, marching in line, is halted, the base platoon halts at once (pars. 462, 465) ; each of the other platoons halts when the rank of the platoon in question arrives abreast of the rank of the base platoon.

When the troop advances from the halt in *line*, *line of platoons*, or *foragers*, the base platoon moves out at once; each of the other platoons moves out so that the platoon in question will be properly echeloned as required above. Whenever the troop in line, line of platoons, or foragers is marched to the rear, the platoons other than the directing platoon take a correspondingly slower gait (par. 335) until they are echeloned as prescribed above.

The principle laid down in this paragraph is similarly applied in the execution of all movements terminating in any one of the three formations named above.

To Form the Troop, Mounted.

588. The troop is habitually formed by the first sergeant under the supervision and direction of the captain.

589. The troop habitually forms in **line of double column**; it may be formed in **column of fours** or in **line** by similar methods. The center platoon (par. 457) is the base platoon of the formation.

590. When no prior division into platoons and sections has been made, the troop is formed by a modification of the method prescribed for forming the squad (pars. 350–353). This latter method may also be used when the troop, though previously divided into such units, is formed for a duty at

which the maintenance of such division is unnecessary (pars. 501, 504).

591. All organizations must be practiced in forming rapidly and quietly, not only in those formations that are best suited to ordinary garrison routine, but also in such as may have to be employed under the varying conditions of field service, including night operations.

592. The captain habitually gives the commands for mounting the troop. The platoons are mounted separately by their leaders only when so directed in advance by the captain (par. 523). The captain may give general or specific instructions as to the type of inspection to be made by platoon commanders at the formation (par. 507). In the absence of other instructions the platoon commanders do not delay the formation by any special inspection; they always note, however, during the formation, the condition of the troopers and the appearance of the latter's mounts, equipment, and clothing, and take the necessary steps to remedy defects.

593. To form the troop in line of double columns (the habitual formation) the first sergeant indicates to the senior noncommissioned officer of the base platoon the position in which that platoon is to form and the direction in which the troop is to face, takes position at a convenient point, and commands; **FORM TROOP.**

The base platoon is formed in **double column** on the designated ground as prescribed in par. 520.

The platoons other than the base form in the same manner as the base platoon, so taking position as to appear, from right to left, in numerical order (par. 498). The platoons form simultaneously when practicable, otherwise successively.

To indicate to his section chiefs their first positions (par. 520) each noncommissioned officer forming a platoon other than the base takes position abreast of, and facing in the same direction as, the noncommissioned officer forming the base platoon, habitually with the interval necessary to permit the troop, when formed, to execute line. This interval may be decreased by prior indication of the first sergeant when restricted space or other conditions make such action desirable. It should not be less in any case than 12 yards.

The first sergeant, while the platoons are forming, rides where he can best supervise the formation, noting any neces-

sary adjustments between platoons that may be required (par. 497). He also notes whether the noncommissioned officer forming each platoon is the senior noncommissioned officer who should be present for duty with that platoon.

Each noncommissioned officer forming a platoon, as soon as his platoon is formed, takes position facing to the front, 3 yards in front of the guide of his platoon (par. 533).

As soon as the platoons are formed and the noncommissioned officers forming them have taken position as above indicated the first sergeant takes position about 8 yards in front of and facing the center of the troop and commands: **REPORT.** The senior noncommissioned officer with each platoon reports (par. 506). The first sergeant then faces the captain, who takes position to receive the report about 12 yards in front of and facing the center of the troop. The first sergeant reports and takes his post (par. 603). Each noncommissioned officer forming a platoon, if not the platoon leader, takes his position as file closer as soon as the first sergeant starts to his post.

594. If the first sergeant is to call the roll (par. 505) he omits the command **REPORT,** calls the roll, and reports to the captain (pars. 506, 507, 592).

595. When necessary the troop may be formed in accordance with similar principles in **column of fours** or in **line.** The platoons then form as indicated in par. 524.

The commands are: **FORM TROOP IN COLUMN OF FOURS** or **FORM TROOP IN LINE.**

596. When the troop is formed in accordance with the commands and methods prescribed for the squad, if the duty be one requiring a division of the troop into platoons and sections (pars. 501, 502), the first sergeant, having called the roll, may fall out the noncommissioned officers and command **CALL OFF** to assist in locating the desired points of division between the platoons. The troopers count aloud consecutive numbers from right to left. The first sergeant divides the troop into platoons and assigns the noncommissioned officers to platoons, if such assignment has not already been made (par. 504).

The roll having been called, the division into platoons made, and the noncommissioned officers assigned, the first sergeant commands: **FORM YOUR PLATOONS.**

The senior noncommissioned officer assigned to each platoon completes the formation of his platoon by assigning and placing his noncommissioned officers as may be required to complete the formation of the platoon. He then (unless the platoon is in column of fours) commands, 1. **Sections,** 2. **COUNT FOURS,** and takes position facing to the front as when reporting to the first sergeant (par. 593). When all the noncommissioned officers forming platoons have faced to the front the first sergeant reports the troop (par. 506).

597. The troop may also form after the troopers have mounted (pars. 352, 526).

To Form the Troop, Dismounted.

598. A dismounted formation of the troop is conducted on the same principles as the corresponding mounted formation.

When the troop is formed as in pars. 593 and 595, but the verification is made by the first sergeant instead of in each platoon (par. 594), the first sergeant, if the troop be armed with the rifle, commands, just before calling the roll: 1. **Inspection,** 2. **ARMS**; 3. **Right shoulder,** 4. **ARMS** (par. 91). The first sergeant gives the same commands just before calling the roll if the troop, being armed with the rifle, is formed in accordance with the methods prescribed in par. 596. The formation in both cases is completed in the usual manner.

Positions of Officers, Noncommissioned Officers, and Others Out of Ranks.

(Plate III.)

599. (*a*) The habitual position of the captain in all close-order formations is 6 yards in front of the leader of the base platoon. In extended order he may take position as in close order or go wherever necessary (par. 448).

(*b*) Except where otherwise indicated, the positions of platoon leaders and file closers are the same as shown in par. 528.

600. In certain column formations of the squadron (par. 676) modifications occur in the positions of the captain and first sergeant as stated below.

601. In par. 603 positions prescribed for certain platoon leaders and others out of ranks are stated as "on the flank of the column." In such cases each is separated from the trooper of the adjacent element of the column by the usual interval between troopers. The particular flank upon which platoon leaders are posted in the cases in question is regulated by par. 602; all take position on the same flank. File closers and other enlisted men out of ranks who march on the flank of the column are on the flank opposite to that prescribed for the chiefs of platoons.

602. When the formation taken by the troop involves a change of formation in the platoons from **line** to either **double column, column of fours, column of twos,** or **column of troopers,** platoon leaders, for whom a position on a flank is prescribed in par. 603, take position on the *right* flank of the column unless the latter be formed through the execution, by the platoons, of **fours right**; in this excepted case they take position in the *left* flank of the column. The subsequent movements of platoon leaders are indicated in pars. 605, 606.

603. Platoon leaders: In **double column,** and in **column of fours, twos,** or **troopers,** the leader of each platoon in rear of the base platoon is posted on the flank of the column (par. 601) abreast of the leading element of the corresponding platoon.

First sergeant: In **line, line of double columns,** and **line of platoon columns,** 3 yards in rear of the file closer of the base platoon; in **column of platoons,** 3 yards in rear of the file closer of the rear platoon; in **double column,** and in **column of fours, twos,** or **troopers,** 3 yards in rear of the rear platoon, in the trace of the guide of the platoon; in extended order he accompanies the captain unless otherwise ordered.

Guidon: When the guidon is carried uncased the noncommissioned officer carrying it accompanies the captain, unless otherwise directed, riding 1 yard to the rear and 1 yard to the right of the captain's horse. If the guidon be cased, the noncommissioned officer carrying it rides as an extra file closer near the head of the column unless assigned duties requiring a different position.

Platoon file closers: In **column of platoons** the file closer of a platoon having less than 16 troopers in the ranks takes

position on the left of the rank. If the column be marched to the rear by a movement of fours he turns in the same direction as the fours and continues in the same flank as before.

In **double column**, and in **column of fours, twos, or troopers,** the file closer of each platoon is posted on the flank of the column abreast of the rear element of the corresponding platoon (pars. 601, 602).

Buglers: When the troop is alone one bugler accompanies the captain, riding 1 yard to the rear and 1 yard to the left of the captain's horse. The other bugler habitually rides as an extra file closer near the head of the column, but may be placed in ranks. The buglers of a troop-in-squadron both ride as file closers, or in the ranks, when the buglers of the squadron are not assembled elsewhere.

Extra file closers, if not attached to any platoon, take posts in the general manner indicated in par. 528. The first sergeant designates, if necessary, the four near which each such file closer shall ride. When the platoon file closer takes position on the flank of the platoon any extra file closer takes a similar position on the left of the platoon file closer.

604. Being in double column, or in column of fours, twos, or troopers, at the command **ROUTE ORDER** all chiefs of platoon and file closers and others riding on the flank of the column as above prescribed take position in the column as follows, unless otherwise directed by the captain:

The guidon and one bugler at the head of the column; the leader of each platoon, except the rear platoon, in front of his respective platoon; the leader of the rear platoon and the first sergeant in rear of the column; each platoon file closer, except the file closer of the rear platoon, in rear of his respective platoon; the file closer of the rear platoon in front of that platoon; all other men riding out of ranks at the rear of their respective platoons. The additional personnel thus placed between any two platoons rides abreast so as to minimize the corresponding increase in the length of the column. In each element so formed the senior habitually rides on the right of a junior. Distances throughout the column are 4 feet unless greater distances between platoons be specially authorized.

Movements, by Fours, Twos, and Troopers.

605. Movements by fours, twos, and troopers are executed in the troop by commands and methods corresponding to those prescribed for the platoon (pars. 470, 537). The following rules govern the movements of the captain, chiefs of platoons, and others out of ranks:

(*a*) In wheeling about by fours from double column or column of fours, all out of ranks turn about individually in the same direction as the fours wheel and hasten to their new posts. Platoon leaders and file closers posted on a flank of the column do not change to the opposite flank of the column. A similar rule applies to the corresponding movement executed in column of twos or troopers.

(*b*) In wheeling about by fours from line all out of ranks habitually pass around the flanks. The captain and chiefs of platoons may pass between the fours when necessary.

(*c*) When the column is wheeled by fours into line toward the side of the file closers, each chief of platoon usually passes between his leading four and the rear four of the preceding platoon; or, if necessary, may pass around the flanks. All others pass around the flanks.

606. Being in double column or in column of fours, twos, or troopers, to cause the platoon leaders of rear platoons to change flanks, the captain commands: 1. **Leaders on the right (left) flank,** 2. **MARCH.** All platoon leaders, file closers, and others out of ranks, and posted on a flank of the column, turn individually away from the column, pass around the rear of the column, and take corresponding positions on the opposite flank. The platoon leaders pass between the file closers and the column.

607. When the troop, marching in line, executes **fours right (left)** the leaders of platoons in rear of the new base cause their platoons promptly to cover in column. Conversely, in advancing in line after executing **fours right (left)** from column of fours, platoons other than the new base promptly conform to the principles of par. 587.

To Mount and Dismount.

608. The troop mounts and dismounts by the commands and methods prescribed for the squad and platoon. If the troop

formation does not afford sufficient space for a platoon leader to take position as indicated in par. 529, he takes position facing his platoon and on a flank of the leading rank or element.

Rests, at Ease, and Route Order.

609. Rest, at ease, and route order are executed as in the squad (par. 359), with the following further provisions:

Being at **route order**, if the command, 1. **Troop**, 2. **ATTENTION**, be given, all resume the attention, but retain their places in **route order** unless the captain commands: **POSTS.** At the latter command all take their regular posts as prescribed for the corresponding column, and the platoons close to the usual distance.

Being at **route order** in any column formation named above, if any other be commanded it is taken by the usual methods, but with positions and distances corresponding to **route order**, unless **attention** and **posts** be commanded as above.

In emergencies any movement may be executed from **route order** by the same commands and methods as from **attention.** Except as stated above, positions are the same in formations at **route order** and at **attention.**

To Dismiss the Troop.

610. The captain directs the first sergeant: **DISMISS THE TROOP.**

The officers fall out. The first sergeant commands: **DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS.** The senior noncommissioned officer of each platoon gives the necessary commands (par. 530) as soon as his platoon has the necessary space.

If no division of platoons has been made the first sergeant dismisses the troop as prescribed for the squad (par. 360).

Alignments.

611. The commands and principles explained for the squad apply (pars. 362–364). The leader of the center platoon is the basis of the alignment. The leader of each of the other platoons aligns himself upon the leader of the base platoon and the guide of each platoon takes positions 3 yards directly in

rear of his respective leader. The first sergeant and platoon file closers assist in securing a correct alignment, giving the necessary cautions to prevent the troopers from closing in to such an extent as to cause gaps in the line.

Platoon leaders and file closers look to the front as soon as they have aligned themselves.

Prompt dressing must be insisted upon and the command **FRONT** not delayed unduly on account of minor inaccuracies.

The captain may verify the alignment of the platoon leaders from a position at the flank of the line of platoon leaders, facing along the front of that line, or he may command **FRONT** without leaving his regular position.

At the command **dress**, when the troop is in column of platoons, each platoon leader gives the command **front** from his position. He does not go to the flank to verify the alignment of the platoon unless directed by the captain to do so.

Leading the Troop.

612. The troop is led by the captain in accordance with the principles of leading as heretofore explained (pars. 323–325, 448–460).

The leader of the base platoon habitually follows the captain at 6 yards distance. The other platoon leaders regulate on the leader of the base platoon, observing the echelon as required (par. 587). In each platoon the guide follows his platoon leader while *each trooper regulates on the guide of his platoon.*

Whenever the captain ceases temporarily to lead the troop, and designates no leader to take his place, the chief of the base platoon acts as directing leader of the troop.

Changes of Direction.

613. The troop executes changes of direction in accordance with the principles of leading (pars. 329, 471). In line each chief of platoon habitually so regulates his movements as to keep abreast of the rank of the platoon next toward the base, the rank of his own platoon being parallel to the rank of the base platoon. Should a platoon on a flank be unable

thus to keep its relative position without unduly extending the gallop, its leader may increase the depth of the echelon upon the adjacent platoon; but cohesion in the platoon must be maintained.

The troop executes the turn and half turn by the commands indicated for the squad. The captain is not, however, restricted to any special radius. Abrupt changes of direction on a large front are difficult to execute smoothly.

In line of columns the change of direction is made by the same commands and on the same principle as when in line, except that the platoons are not habitually echeloned on the base.

The troop, in any column formation, changes direction by the commands and methods indicated in par. 396. In column of platoons each platoon successively changes direction in accordance with the provision of par. 386, the platoon leader timing his command of execution as there indicated (par. 471).

The Oblique.

614. Being in any formation except **double column** or **foragers**: 1. **Right (left) oblique**, 2. **MARCH**. Each platoon executes *right half turn* if in **line** or *column half right* if in any column formation. The platoon on the flank toward which the oblique is made is the base during the oblique in any line formation. The original direction is resumed by a corresponding movement at the commands: 1. **Forward**, 2. **MARCH**.

The troop may be moved a few yards to a flank by the commands: 1. **Troopers right (left) oblique**, 2. **MARCH** (par. 385).

Obstacles in the Line of March.

615. Each platoon leader takes the necessary steps in connection with the passage of obstacles (par. 577).

The captain, when necessary, indicates to the platoon leader at the head of a column the existence of an obstacle (par. 443). Each platoon leader is responsible that the caution is passed on to the platoon next in rear.

COMMANDS AND CORRESPONDING ARM SIGNALS.

(*See also,* in connection with pars. 468–470, similar lists in pars. 381 and 540. The list does not include variations of the commands due to designating a special base, interval, etc.)

616.

COMMANDS.	PARS.	ARM SIGNALS.
1. **Platoons, right (left) turn;** 2. **MARCH.**	618, 624	**Platoons—change direction.†**
1. **Platoons, double column;** 2. **MARCH.**	621	**Platoons—double column.†**
1. **Line of platoon columns,** 2. **MARCH.**	622	**Line of platoon columns.***
1. **Column of platoons,** 2. **MARCH**.....	623	**Column—platoons.†**
1. **Double column,** 2. **MARCH**.....	625	**Double column.***
1. **Line of platoons,** 2. **MARCH**.....	632	**Platoons—extend.†**
1. **Platoons, at (so many) yards distance;** 2. **MARCH.**	634	None.

* Signals marked thus are preparatory signals; the signal of execution in each case is made as prescribed in par. 990.

† In signals marked thus, the preparatory signal consists of more than one element; the signal of execution follows the last element of the preparatory signal.

MOVEMENTS EXECUTED BY THE TROOP, CLOSE ORDER.

LINE OR SINGLE RANK.

617. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH: When executed from any formation except **line, double rank** (par. 617–*a*), the commands are: 1. **Line,** 2. **MARCH** (par. 478).

In each of the movements referred to in (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), and (*d*) the movements of the base platoon conform to par. 323. Should the captain halt the base platoon, all the other platoons halt abreast of it (par. 587). Should the base platoon continue the march, the leader of each of the other platoons

takes the gait of the base platoon when his own platoon is echeloned as prescribed in par. 587. In the march in line the leader of each platoon other than the base is habitually abreast of the rank of the adjacent platoon on the side toward the base.

(*a*) **Single rank** is formed from **double rank** at the command: 1. **Single rank**, 2. **MARCH.** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). Each platoon other than the base gains the interval (par. 481–*b*) necessary to form **single rank.** The base platoon forms **single rank** (par. 554) as soon as it has the necessary space (par. 481–*g*). Each of the other platoons executes **single rank** so as to complete the movement before arriving at its position in the new formation (par. 481–*g*).

(*b*) From **line of double columns** and **line of platoon columns** the platoons form simultaneously. If the base platoon continues the march, the platoons other than the base decrease the pace until each gets its proper position in echelon (par. 587). (Pl. IV.)

(*c*) **From column of platoons:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). Each platoon other than the base is led by its leader to its position in the new formation (par. 481–*b*). (Pl. VI.)

Gaits are regulated as in par, 337–*b*.

(*d*) **From double column, and from column of fours, twos, or troopers:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). Each platoon other than the base is led toward its new position as in (*c*), forming **line** so as to complete that movement before its position in the new troop formation is reached (par. 481–*g*).

During the actual formation of **line** by platoons in rear of the base the rear elements make a second increase of gait, unless already moving at the gallop (pars. 337–*b*, 481–*h*).

618. TO THE FLANK.

(*a*) **From column of platoons: 1. Platoons right (left) turn, 2. MARCH.**

Executed simultaneously by the platoons (pars. 462, 471). To halt the troop the captain commands: 1. **Troop**, 2. **HALT**, as the platoons complete the turn (par. 587). Each platoon leader in the absence of the command **halt** from the captain

commands: **Forward** (par. 386), so as to add **MARCH** as his platoon completes a change of direction of 90° (pars. 325, 326).

(*b*) **From column of fours:** 1. **Fours right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.**

Line may be formed from **column of twos** or **troopers** as explained in par. 400.

DOUBLE RANK.

619. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH: Being in single rank: 1. **Double rank**, 2. **MARCH.**

Each platoon other than the base forms **double rank** (par. 551), closes toward the base, and takes its position (par. 481–*g*) in double rank. The troop forms **double rank**, to the direction of march, from no formation except **single rank.**

620. TO THE FLANK: Being in double column: 1. **Fours right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.**

The principle indicated in par. 452 applies to movements for a short distance to the flank. (Pl. VII.)

LINE OF DOUBLE COLUMNS.

621. Except as used for the original formation of the troop for a duty (par. 593) or for a subsequent assembly of the troop (par. 635), **line of double columns** is formed in close order, only from the simultaneous execution by platoons of **double column** (par. 415).

The platoons in **line of platoons** (extended order) may take **double column** when conditions render that formation useful (par. 632). The captain may command: 1. **Platoons, double column**, 2. **MARCH**; or may cause the base platoon to form column, the other platoons habitually conforming (par. 632); or a platoon leader may cause his platoon to execute double column whenever, in extended order, conditions render the formation desirable.

LINE OF PLATOON COLUMNS.

622. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH (par. 478): 1. **Line of platoon columns**, 2. **MARCH.**

(*a*) **From line and line of double columns:** The platoons execute **column** simultaneously, regulating on the base.

(*b*) **From column of platoons:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). All the platoons execute **column** (par. 481–*g*); those in rear of the base are then led to their positions (par. 481–*b*, *e*).

(*c*) **From double column:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base platoon executes column (par. 481–*g*). Each of the rear platoons, as soon as it gains the necessary space from the platoon in front, forms **column** (par. 481–*g*) and moves to its position (par. 481–*b*, *e*).

(*d*) **From column of fours:** As in (*c*), except that each platoon in rear of the base moves at once to its position.

(*e*) **From column of twos or troopers,** as in (*d*), except that each platoon forms **column of fours** before taking its place in the new formation (par. 331).

TO THE FLANK: (*a*) **From column of platoons: 1. Fours right (left), 2. MARCH.**

(*b*) **From column of fours: 1. Platoons, column right (left), 2. MARCH.**

COLUMN OF PLATOONS.

623. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH (par. 478): **1. Column of platoons,** 2. **MARCH.**

(*a*) **From line:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). Each platoon other than the base is led to its place in the column (par. 481–*b*, *d*). (Pl. IV.)

(*b*) **From line of double columns and line of platoon columns:** The movement is a successive one (par. 481). The platoons other than the base successively move out (par. 481–*b*), form line (par. 481–*g*), and take their places in the column (par. 481–*d*).

(*c*) **From double column:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base platoon forms line at once (par. 481–*g*). The other platoons take a correspondingly slower gait, and successively execute line, each completing the latter movement (par. 481–*g*) in time to take the gait of the platoon in front when at platoon distance from the latter.

(*d*) **From column of fours:** The platoons form line simultaneously, the leader of each rear platoon maintaining the gait of the base.

(*e*) **From column of twos or troopers:** The platoons other than the base successively execute line while moving at the

increased gait, each completing the movement in time to take the gait of the platoon in front when at platoon distance from the latter (par. 331, 481–*g*).

624. TO THE FLANK.

(*a*) **From line: 1. Platoons right (left) turn, 2. MARCH.** The platoon on the flank toward which the movement is executed is the base during the movement as well as in the new formation (par. 326). The commands of the platoon leaders are given as in pars. 471, 618.

(*b*) **From line of platoon columns: 1. Form right (left), 2. MARCH.**

DOUBLE COLUMN.

625. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH (par. 478) **: 1. Double column, 2. MARCH.**

(*a*) **From line:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base forms **double column** (par. 481–*g*). The platoons other than the base successively form **double column** (par. 481–*g*) and take their places in the new formation (pars. 481–*b*, *d*).

(*b*) **From line of platoon columns:** The formation is a successive one. The base forms **double column** (par. 481–*g*). The platoons other than the base move toward their places (par. 481–*b*, *d*), each forming **double column** before taking its position in the new formation (par. 481–*g*).

(*c*) **From line of double columns:** The movement is a successive one (par. 481). The platoons other than the base successively move to their places in the new formation (par. 481–*b*, *d*).

(*d*) **From column of platoons:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The platoons form **double column** at once (par. 481–*g*). Each platoon in rear of the base then closes to 4 feet distance.

(*e*) **From column of fours, twos, or troopers:** The base executes double column (par. 481–*g*). The formation is a successive one (pars. 331, 481). The platoons other than the base successively execute **double column** at the increased gait, each on completing the change of formation (par. 481–*g*) taking position in the column at a distance of 4 feet from the platoon in front. (Pls. V and VII.)

626. **TO THE FLANK**: Being in double rank: 1. **Fours right (left)**, 2. **MARCH** (par. 452).

COLUMN OF FOURS.

627. **TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH** (par. 478): 1. **Column**, 2. **MARCH.**

(*a*) **From line**: The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base forms **column** (par. 481–*g*). Each platoon other than the base successively executes **column** and takes its place in the new formation (par. 337–*c*). (Pl. VII.)

(*b*) **From line of double columns**: The base executes column (par. 481–*g*). The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The platoons other than the base successively execute column (par. 481–*g*), moving out so as to take their proper places in the new formation (par. 481–*b*, *d*). (Pl. V.)

(*c*) **From line of platoon columns**: The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base advances. The platoons other than the base successively move to their proper places in the column (par. 481–*b*, *d*).

(*d*) **From column of platoons**: The platoons execute column simultaneously and should have their proper distances in the column.

(*e*) **From double column**: The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base executes **column** at once; each of the other platoons executes **column** when it has the necessary space (par. 481–*g*).

(*f*) **From column of twos or troopers**: The formation is a successive one (pars. 331, 481). The base executes **column** (par. 481–*g*). Each platoon other than the base takes a correspondingly faster gait (par. 335), successively executes **column** at the increased gait and takes the gait of the base when at 4 feet distance from the preceding platoon.

628. **TO THE FLANK**: **From line**: 1. **Fours right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.**

COLUMN OF TWOS OR TROOPERS.

629. **TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH** (par. 478): 1. **Column of twos (troopers)**, 2. **MARCH.**

(*a*) **From line, line of double columns, line of platoon columns, column of platoons, double column, and column of fours:** The formation is a successive one (pars. 331, 481). The base executes **column of twos (troopers).** The platoons other than the base successively execute **column of twos (troopers),** each (par. 545–*b*) moving out so as to take (or retain) its proper place in the column (par. 481–*b*, *d*) at 4 feet distance.

(*b*) **Column of troopers from column of twos** is formed on the same principle.

MOVEMENTS EXECUTED BY THE TROOP—EXTENDED ORDER.

630. The principles applicable to the squad and platoon apply to the troop. The interval between platoons **in line of platoons** is, except where a special interval is ordered, based upon 4 yards per man (including the space occupied by the trooper).

631. Line of platoons or foragers, to any direction other than the direction of march is executed in accordance with the principles of par. 481–*c*.

LINE OF PLATOONS.

632. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH (par. 478); **1. Line of platoons,** or **1. Line of platoons, at so many yards; 2. MARCH** (par. 460).

(*a*) **From line, line of double columns, line of platoon columns, column of platoons, double column, column of fours, twos, or troopers:** The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base advances (par. 481–*b*). Each platoon other than the base is led by its leader to its new position (par. 481–*c*). The platoons habitually conform to the formation taken by the base platoon, but each platoon leader is allowed whatever latitude is necessary in adapting the formation of his platoon to the ground and conditions.

(*b*) **From foragers: 1. Platoons, assemble, 2. MARCH.** Executed simultaneously by the platoons.

FORAGERS.

633. TO THE DIRECTION OF MARCH: 1. Foragers, or **1. Foragers, at so many yards; 2. MARCH.**

(*a*) **From any close order formation (including double rank)**: The formation is a successive one (par. 481). The base platoon deploys as stated in par. 481–*g*. Each of the other platoons is led by its leader (par. 481–*b*, *e*) and deployed so as to take its place (par. 481–*g*).

(*b*) **From line of platoons**: The platoons deploy simultaneously.

634. The troop may be extended in depth. The captain commands: 1. **Platoons, at (so many) yards distance**; or, 1. **On such platoon, at (so many) yards distance**; 2. **MARCH.** The movement is executed on the principles indicated in par. 413. The captain indicates to his base platoon the objective and gait. In the absence of special indication from the captain the platoon leaders regulate the formation taken by his platoon during the movement.

The Assembly.

635. The assembly may be commanded when the troop is in any extended order formation, in a close order formation but not in order (e. g., following the **rally**), or dispersed in disorder. The commands are always: 1. **Assemble**, 2. **MARCH**, and the general method of execution is always the same. The troop habitually assembles in **line of double columns**; but **double column, column of fours**, or **line** may be formed in connection with the assembly upon special indication from the captain.

636. In every case the platoons, if not already assembled, are assembled by their respective leaders (pars. 559–560). The captain leads in the desired direction, and at the desired gait, the platoon that is to be the base of the assembly. The other platoons are led toward the base platoon in the most convenient formation and at a correspondingly faster gait. Each, in the absence of other indication from the captain, approaches the base platoon in **double column** so as to take its respective place in **line of double columns.** The captain may follow the commands for the assembly by the caution: **DOUBLE COLUMN (COLUMN** or **LINE).** Such caution is given before the platoon nearest the base takes its position in **line of double columns.** The base platoon advances in the formation indicated by the captain's caution; the other platoons complete any necessary

change of formation before taking their places in the assembled troop.

In the assembly the troops habitually preserve the relative order existing at the moment the movement is ordered; and, if an assembly in a column formation be ordered from any previous line formation, the platoons habitually enter the column in accordance with the usual rule (par. 481–*d*). When for any reason the foregoing rule is not readily applicable, platoons in the absence of special instructions take position as they arrive, extending the formation from the base in such manner that the latter shall remain the center platoon in line or the leading platoon in column.

637. The assembly from the **rally** or whenever not in **order** is conducted on the principles of the formation of the troop (par. 593). The platoon leader nearest the captain takes position at once 6 yards in rear of the latter. The other platoon leaders take positions abreast of the rank of the base platoon if the latter continues to advance (par. 587). Each platoon assembles as in par. 560. Section chiefs take their positions promptly. The assembly from a condition of disorder is an important movement and should be practiced frequently at all gaits.

The Rally.

638. Being in any formation, or not formed or in disorder: **RALLY.**

Each platoon leader rallies his platoon (unless already assembled or rallied) and moves it toward the captain as rapidly as is consistent with maintaining cohesion in the rank. If the platoon be not already in line, the latter formation is taken while the platoon is approaching the captain's position. The first platoon to arrive takes position in line in rear of the captain; the others extend the line so that the base platoon shall remain the center unit. Unless the troop is to charge at once, the assembly (par. 637) should be executed at the earliest possible moment if the rally result in a loss of order. If a prompt assembly of the troop is for any reason not practicable, partial order may quickly be secured by the command: 1. **Platoons,** 2. **COUNT FOURS.** If it is necessary to reduce the front of the troop the captain cautions: **COLUMN OF PLA-**

TOONS (COLUMN, COLUMN OF TWOS, COLUMN OF TROOPERS). The platoon leaders cause their platoons to conform in the most practicable manner.

THE MOUNTED ATTACK.

THE TROOP ACTING ALONE.

639. When the troop acting alone charges it is ordinarily divided into two parts, viz, the **attacking line** and the **reserve**, but a platoon is never kept in rear except when the captain so directs.

If the attacking line, or reserve, consists of only one platoon, it is led by its chief; if it consists of two or more platoons, it is led by the senior chief of platoon or by the captain.

When a chief of platoon takes post as leader of two or more platoons, his place as platoon leader is taken by the corresponding file closer. Whenever the **rally** or **assembly** is ordered, the captain may cause the guidon to be displayed at the rallying or assembly point indicated.

640. In instruction exercises the enemy must always be outlined or represented by troopers, who may carry flags, under command of an officer or noncommissioned officer. In the beginning of this instruction these men will occupy fixed positions; later they will be instructed to ride so as to represent the movements of an aggressive enemy. The captain will explain to the commander the object of the exercise and tell him what to do.

641. The platoons of the **attacking line** may attack in one line or successively, as from column of platoons with extended distances. The captain, in addition to designating a **reserve**, may direct one or more platoons to execute any special mission. In the absence of special instructions from the captain the leader of each platoon, or combination of platoons, that is acting separately uses his discretion, endeavoring so to employ his command as best to assist in carrying out the general plan indicated by the captain's orders.

642. The reserve, in the absence of special instructions, follows the attacking line at from 100 to 150 yards in readiness to support the attacking line, meet a counter attack, or press the pursuit, as occasion may require.

A platoon designated for a **flank attack** is so conducted by its leader as to fall opportunely upon the enemy's flank.

If a flank platoon be so designated, it attacks from that flank unless otherwise directed.

To guard against a flank attack or an enveloping attack the captain may detach a platoon to move to the threatened flank so as to take an enveloping attack in flank or meet a flank attack. If a flank platoon be so designated, it acts on the corresponding flank unless otherwise directed. When no platoon is specially designated for flank guard the corresponding duties fall upon the reserve.

643. The captain's commands should include an indication of the objective, unless the latter is obvious, designate the elements of the attack, and state any special mission that is assigned to any element. The captain's orders also usually include an indication of the weapon to be used by the several elements of the attack and may prescribe the formations to be employed. All details not prescribed by the captain are left to the discretion of the commanders of the several elements into which the attack is divided.

Where the same weapon is to be used by all it is ordinarily drawn at the captain's orders before the instructions for the attack are given. Otherwise, each commander gives the proper orders for drawing saber or raising pistol.

644. The troop being, for example, in **line**, marching at a gallop with sabers drawn, the captain may command: **Objective, Cavalry in front; Second and Third platoons, to the charge; First platoon, flank attack; Fourth platoon, reserve.** Each element of the attack proceeds at once to carry out its orders. The leader of the attacking line (whether the captain or a lieutenant) directs the leader of the base platoon to close on him before charge is ordered (par. 563). In other respects, the charge is conducted as explained for the platoon (pars. 562–564).

The troop being, for example, in column of platoons, marching at a gallop, no weapon drawn, the captain may command (the objective being obvious): **First and Second platoons, pistol attack; Third platoon, reserve; Fourth platoon, left flank guard.** The leader of the attacking line commands: 1. **As foragers,** 2. **MARCH,** and attacks with the pistol according to the principles explained for the platoon (pars. 566–568) as

soon as the second platoon completes its deployment on the left of the first platoon. The commanders of the third and fourth platoons move to their positions, drawing saber or raising pistol in their discretion.

Should the captain command, for example: **First and Second platoons, pistol attack in two lines; Third platoon, charge enemy's right flank; Fourth platoon, reserve,** the third platoon may charge with the saber.

Should the captain cause pistols to be raised before ordering the attack all use the pistol.

The above are only examples to indicate the character of the captain's commands. The actual orders must meet the situation presented.

645. At the first indication for the charge the ground scouts move out from the flanks of the attacking line (par. 569) unless otherwise specially directed. The captain usually sends out any necessary combat patrols; but each leader of a separate group is responsible that any further steps necessary for the immediate protection of his own flanks are taken.

THE TROOP IN THE SQUADRON.

646. The troop in squadron, in mounted attack, has no reserve, but may have a support in the discretion of the major. If on the flank of the squadron, its own flank defense must be provided by the captain in the absence of instructions.

Passing from Mounted Action to Dismounted Action.

647. The movements are executed by commands and methods corresponding to those already explained for the squad and platoon, with the following modifications and additions thereto:

The horses of the captain and of one bugler who accompanies the captain are held by the other bugler or by a man specially designated *in advance* for that duty.

The horses of the first sergeant and other men out of ranks, and not otherwise specially provided for, are secured in the manner indicated in the corresponding provisions for the squad and platoon.

648. The guidon, in the absence of instructions to the contrary, takes general charge of the led horses and performs the duties prescribed for the trooper in charge of the horse holders and horses (par. 431). Should one of the platoon file closers be senior to the guidon, the first sergeant cautions such file closer and the guidon *in advance* that the senior will have general charge of the led horses of the troop while such senior remains with the horses. In the absence of other special instructions, the file closer of each platoon reports the additional troopers of his platoon to the troop commander after Nos. 2 dismount. The guidon remains in general charge of the other horse holders and the horses, a designated trooper having, under the guidon, immediate charge of the horse holders and horses of each platoon.

649. The captain gives any desired special instructions to the guidon and sees that proper measures for security are taken. On dismounting, the first sergeant remains near the horses long enough to see that the designated noncommissioned officer is in charge and is making proper provision as regards the horses; he then joins the captain. Any sergeants who may be extra file closers without special assignment of duties join the captain; other extra file closers not specially assigned join the platoons with which they were riding. The captain, on dismounting, takes position at the point where he desires the base platoon to form or otherwise indicates that position to the leader of the base platoon. The platoon that was the base when the troop dismounted remains the base of the dismounted formation in the absence of other indication. Its leader takes position at once in rear of the captain, or as indicated by the latter, and the dismounted platoon forms in **double column** or as directed. The other platoons form so as to extend the formation in **line of double columns**, or as the captain orders, in accordance with the principles governing the assembly of the troop. The captain may direct the platoon leaders to proceed at once to designated positions without forming the troop as a unit. *In all cases the measures taken must be such as to prevent unnecessary exposure of men or horses to hostile view or fire.*

Dismounted Combat (The Troop).

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.

650. When the troop, acting alone, dismounts to engage in deliberate fire action the captain makes provisions for the led horses (par. 649) and at once sends out scouts (usually two experienced men detailed and trained as such) to the front to reconnoiter. The captain reconnoiters usually in rear of, but in touch with the scouts, and accompanied by platoon commanders and the first sergeant; he explains to them the purpose of the attack, gives them all the information he has about the enemy and about our own troops in the vicinity, points out to them the objective of each platoon if they are to advance, or indicates the parts of the line to be held by each if to take the defensive.

651. The advance of a troop after dismounting, in anticipation of fire action either in attack or defense is made in close order, preferably in column of fours or twos, until the probability or the actual encountering of hostile fire makes it advisable to deploy. After such deployment the advance (now designated **the approach**) may be continued in line of skirmishers or other suitable formation before opening fire. The approach dismounted may often be facilitated, better advantage taken of cover, and losses minimized by using formations such as line of platoons each in column of twos or troopers, or a succession of thin lines at varying distances, one directly behind the other or echeloned. The choice of a formation would depend upon conditions, such as the effectiveness of the enemy's fire, cover afforded by folds of the ground, or by natural obstacles. If the deployment is found to be premature, it will generally be better to assemble the troop and resume the advance in close order.

The formations mentioned as facilitating the advance, viz, line of platoons in column of twos or troopers, or a succession of thin lines find application most frequently in the approach when the ground is so difficult or the cover so limited as to make it desirable to take advantage of the few favorable routes on which to move forward.

652. The approach in a succession of thin lines is, if possible, made by sections under the immediate direction of

platoon commanders with wide intervals between skirmishers. By so advancing continuous control of the line is assured. If that method is not practicable, then the successive lines are made up of one or more men from each four of a platoon on the skirmish line, the command being: 1. **Numbers 1 (or such number or numbers), first (or such) platoon, forward**; 2. **MARCH.**

The captain having pointed out in advance the selected position in front of the lines which are to be occupied, the designated numbers move to the front. The line thus formed preserves the original intervals as nearly as practicable; when this line has advanced to the indicated position, a second line is sent forward by similar commands, and so on at irregular distances until the whole line has advanced. Upon arriving at the indicated position the first line is halted. Successive lines upon arriving halt on line with the first, and the men take their proper places in the skirmish line.

Ordinarily each line is made up of one man or more from each four of a platoon, and the men of a four are sent forward in order from right to left. The first line is led by the platoon leader of that platoon, the second by its file closer, and so on. Under favorable conditions the successive lines may be made up from all of the platoons which are deployed as skirmishers.

The movement is conducted in quick time unless conditions make double time necessary.

After the entire troop has reached the line a further advance in the same manner may be found advisable.

The movement in a succession of thin lines is used to cross a wide stretch swept or likely to be swept by artillery fire or heavy long-range rifle fire which can not profitably be returned. Its purpose is the building up of a strong skirmish line preparatory to engaging in a fire fight. This method of advancing by thin lines results in serious, though temporary, loss of control over the successive platoons of the troop. Its advantages lie in the fact that it offers a less definite target, hence is less likely to draw fire.

653. These are merely suggested methods of advancing preliminary to opening the fire attack; other formations better adapted to particular occasions or terrain may be devised. The best formation is that which advances the line the far-

thest without drawing the enemy's fire, or, if he does open fire, then with the least loss of men, time, and control.

THE FIRE ATTACK.

654. The principles involved in the fire attack are discussed under **Dismounted Fire Action, the Squadron** (par. 716), and necessary modifications as to details made under **Dismounted Action, the Regiment** (par. 760).

When the enemy's fire makes it impracticable for the troop to move forward in one of the above-mentioned formations, it may advance by rushes.

Being in skirmish line: 1. **By platoon (section) from the right (left),** 2. **RUSH.**

The platoon leader on the indicated flank arranges the details for a prompt and vigorous execution of the rush and puts it into effect as soon as practicable. If necessary he designates the leader for the indicated unit. When about to rush he causes the men of the indicated unit to suspend firing and to hold themselves flat on the ground but in readiness to spring forward instantly. The leader of the rush (at the signal of the platoon leader if the latter is not the leader of the rush) commands, **Follow me,** and, running at top speed, leads the fraction to the new line, where he halts it and causes it to open fire. The leader of the rush selects the new line if it has not been previously designated.

The first fraction having established itself on the new line, the next like fraction is sent forward by its platoon leader without further command from the captain, and so on, successively, until the entire troop is on the line established by the first rush.

The men must be trained to lie perfectly still until the command (since any movement might warn the enemy of the rush to follow), then at command to spring instantly and together to their feet, run at top speed, and drop together at command.

655. In an advance by rushes, leaders of platoons in firing positions are responsible for the delivery of an effective fire to cover the advance of each rushing fraction. Troops are cautioned so to fire as not to endanger the flanks of advanced portions of the firing line. The husbanding of ammunition for the

final stages of the fire attack must be constantly impressed on the men.

The rush of a troop as a whole is conducted by the captain on the same principle as described for the platoon. The captain leads the rush, platoon leaders lead their respective platoons, and file closers follow the line to insure prompt and orderly execution of the advance.

When the foregoing method of rushing, by running, becomes impracticable, any method of advance that carries the attack closer to the enemy, such as **crawling**, should be employed.

The charge corresponds to that described in **the squadron.**

656. Supports and reserves: The troop dismounted, acting alone, should in the fire attack always have a *reserve.* It may be small—a single platoon or less—but the reserve should not be omitted, although the *support* may be and usually is dispensed with. When no *support* is provided, the *reserve* performs the double function of *support* and *reserve;* that is, it protects the flanks and, under orders of the captain, strengthens the firing line, if necessary.

In the advance and during the fire attack *combat patrols* on one or both flanks are especially important. Each leader of a flank platoon details a man to watch for signals of the patrol or patrols on his own flank.

When ordered to reinforce the firing line, the support, if there be one, is kept assembled as long as practicable. In the advance it adopts suitable formations following the principles laid down in par. 651. If, after deploying, a favorable opportunity arises to hold it for some time in a close-order formation, it should be reassembled. It is again deployed when necessary. The movements of the support as a whole and the dispatch of reinforcements from it to the firing line are controlled by the captain. In order to be felt, the support of a single troop, being necessarily small, should ordinarily be sent to the firing line as a whole and not be fed in a few men at a time, which would produce little effect.

A reinforcement sent to the firing line always carries extra bandoliers. It joins, deployed as skirmishers, passes the extra belts of ammunition to skirmishers already on the line, and, if necessary, gets from them the range and target location. The leader of the reinforcement places it in an interval in the line if a suitable one exists and commands it thereafter

as a unit. If no such interval exists, the reinforcement is advanced with increased intervals between skirmishers, each man occupies the nearest interval in the firing line, and each then obeys the nearest chief of section or platoon leader.

A reinforcement joins the firing line as quickly as possible without exhausting the men.

The original platoon and section divisions of the troop in the firing line should be maintained, if possible, and should only be broken up if the mingling of reinforcements renders it unavoidable.

Upon joining the firing line, officers and noncommissioned officers accompanying a reinforcement take over the duties of others of like grade who have been disabled, or they distribute themselves so as best to exercise their normal functions. Conditions vary and no exact rules can be prescribed. It is essential that all assist in mastering the increased difficulties of control.

FIRE.

657. Ordinarily rifles are loaded and extra ammunition in bandoliers is distributed before the troop deploys for combat. In close order the troop executes the firings at the command of the captain, who posts himself in rear of the center.

Firings in close order are exceptional.

658. Signals during fire action: The voice is generally inadequate for giving commands during firing, and must be replaced by signals of such character that proper fire direction and control are assured (par. 989). To attract attention signals must usually be preceded by the whistle signal (short blast). A fraction of the firing line about to rush should avoid using the long blast signal as an indication to **suspend firing.** Officers and men behind the firing line can not ordinarily move freely along the line, but each must depend on the other's watchfulness, in addition to his own, and make use of prescribed signals (par. 997). All should place themselves so as to see their immediate superiors and subordinates.

The bugler with the captain assists by observing the enemy, the target, and the fire effect, and by watching for and transmitting commands.

The effect of fire and the influence of the ground in relation thereto, and the individual and collective instruction in marksmanship are treated in the **Small-Arms Firing Manual.**

659. Volley fire has limited application. It has a moral effect both on the troops employing it and on those subjected to it. It may be employed to restore control. In defense it may be used in the early stages of the action if the enemy presents a large compact target. It may be used by troops especially posted on the flank or in a dominant position in rear of an attacking force for the purpose of aiding the advance by so-called *fire of position.* When the ground near the target is such that the strike of bullets can be seen from the firing line, ranging volleys may be used to correct the sight setting.

In combat, volley firing, if used, is executed habitually by platoon.

660. Fire at will is the class of fire normally employed in attack or defense.

661. Clip fire has limited application. It is principally used (*a*) in the early stages of combat to steady the men by habituating them to brief pauses in firing; (*b*) to produce a short burst of fire.

FIRE DIRECTION.

662. When the troop is large enough to be divided into platoons, it is impracticable for the captain to command it in combat. His efficiency in managing the firing line is measured by his ability to enforce his will through the platoon leaders. Having indicated clearly what he desires them to do, he avoids interfering except to correct serious errors or omissions.

The captain directs the fire of his troop or of designated platoons. He designates the target and, when practicable, allots a part of the target to each platoon. Before beginning the fire action he determines the range, announces the sight setting, and indicates the class of fire to be employed and the time to open fire. Thereafter he observes the fire effect, corrects material errors in sight setting, prevents exhaustion of the ammunition supply, and causes the distribution of such extra ammunition as may be received.

FIRE CONTROL.

663. In combat the platoon is the *fire unit.* From 20 to 35 rifles are as many as one leader can control effectively.

Each platoon leader puts into execution the commands or directions of the captain, having first taken such precautions to insure correct sight setting and clear description of the target or aiming point as the situation permits or requires (par. 141); thereafter he gives such additional commands or directions as are necessary to exact compliance with the captain's will. He corrects the sight setting when necessary. When the target can not be seen with the naked eye, he designates an aiming point (by one of the methods described in par. 141 if necessary) and orders fire upon it, first announcing the proper sight setting to correct the error of aim.

In general, **platoon leaders** observe the target and the effect of the fire and are on the alert for the captain's commands; they observe and regulate the rate of fire. The **file closers** watch the firing line and check every breach of fire discipline. **Chiefs of section** transmit commands when necessary, observe the conduct of their sections and abate excitement, assist in enforcing fire discipline, and participate in the firing unless otherwise directed by the platoon commanders.

The best troops are those that submit longest to fire control. To avoid or delay such loss of control should be the constant aim of all.

Fire control implies the ability of the commander to stop the firing, change the sight setting and target, and resume a well-directed fire.

FIRE DISCIPLINE.

664. Fire discipline implies, besides an unquestioning habit of obedience to commands, a control of the rifle by the soldier, (the result of training), which will enable him in action to make hits instead of misses. It embraces taking advantage of the ground; proper understanding of orders as to target designation; care in setting the sight and delivery of fire; constant attention to the orders of the leaders, and careful observation of the enemy; an increase of fire when the target is favorable, and a cessation of fire when the enemy disappears; economy of ammunition. Orderly and regular methods on the part of leaders aid fire discipline. Self possession and a confident tone in giving commands and instructions are indispensable.

In combat, shots which graze the enemy's trench or position, and thus reduce the effectiveness of his fire, have the approximate value of hits; such shots only, or actual hits, contribute toward fire superiority.

Fire discipline implies that, in a firing line without leaders, each man retains his presence of mind and directs effective fire upon the proper target.

665. To create a correct appreciation of the requirements of fire discipline, men are taught that the rate of fire having constantly in view the available ammunition supply, should be as rapid as is consistent with accurate aiming; that the rate will depend upon the visibility, proximity, and size of the target; and that the proper rate will ordinarily suggest itself to each trained man, usually rendering cautions or commands unnecessary.

666. In attack, ammunition must be used with extreme caution in order that the highest rate of fire may be employed at the halt preceding the assault and in pursuing fire.

667. In defense, when the target disappears behind cover, platoon leaders suspend fire, prepare their platoons to fire upon the point where it is expected to reappear, and greet its reappearance instantly with a vigorous burst of fire. In defense, the available ammunition supply is not ordinarily so limited as in the attack.

668. For communication between the firing line and the reserve or commander in rear certain signals are prescribed (par. 997). In transmission their concealment from the enemy's view should be insured. In the absence of signal flags the headdress or other substitute may be used.

RANGES.

669. For convenience of reference ranges are classified as follows:

0 to 600 yards, close range.
600 to 1,200 yards, effective range.
1,200 to 2,000 yards, long range.
Over 2,000 yards, distant range.

The distance to the target must be determined as accurately as possible and the sights set accordingly. Aside from training and morale this is the most important single factor in securing effective fire at the longer ranges.

Except in a deliberately prepared defensive position, the most accurate and only practicable method of determining the range, in absence of a suitable mechanical range finder, will generally be to take the mean of several estimates, made independently.

Estimation of ranges.—Five or six officers and men, selected from the most accurate estimators in the troop and designated as *range finders*, should be specially trained in estimating distances.

Whenever necessary and practicable, the captain assembles the range finders, points out the target to them, and adopts the mean of their estimates. The range finders then take their customary posts.

When a range is announced, the men at once set their sights to correspond, and whenever practicable an examination of the pieces is made in order to verify the sight setting.

RECONNAISSANCE BEFORE COMBAT.

670. Combat, mounted or dismounted, should always be preceded by a reconnaissance suited to give the leader the best practicable idea of the terrain and of the conditions, and to enable him to utilize both to the fullest advantage. The form and extent of such reconnaissance will necessarily vary from the hurried glance, for which alone there may be time before making dispositions to meet a sudden emergency, to the deliberate survey and study that may be practicable in exceptionally favorable cases. The leader's personal reconnaissance will ordinarily be supplemented by the use of scouts or patrols or both. The reconnaissance must in no case be overlooked and must always be made in as complete and careful a manner as the circumstances of the case permit. It will frequently be advisable for a leader to push rapidly ahead of his command for this purpose when combat is imminent, taking with him such subordinate leaders as he sees fit and leaving the command to follow (par. 456).

PLATE III.—THE TROOP.

(Par. 584.)

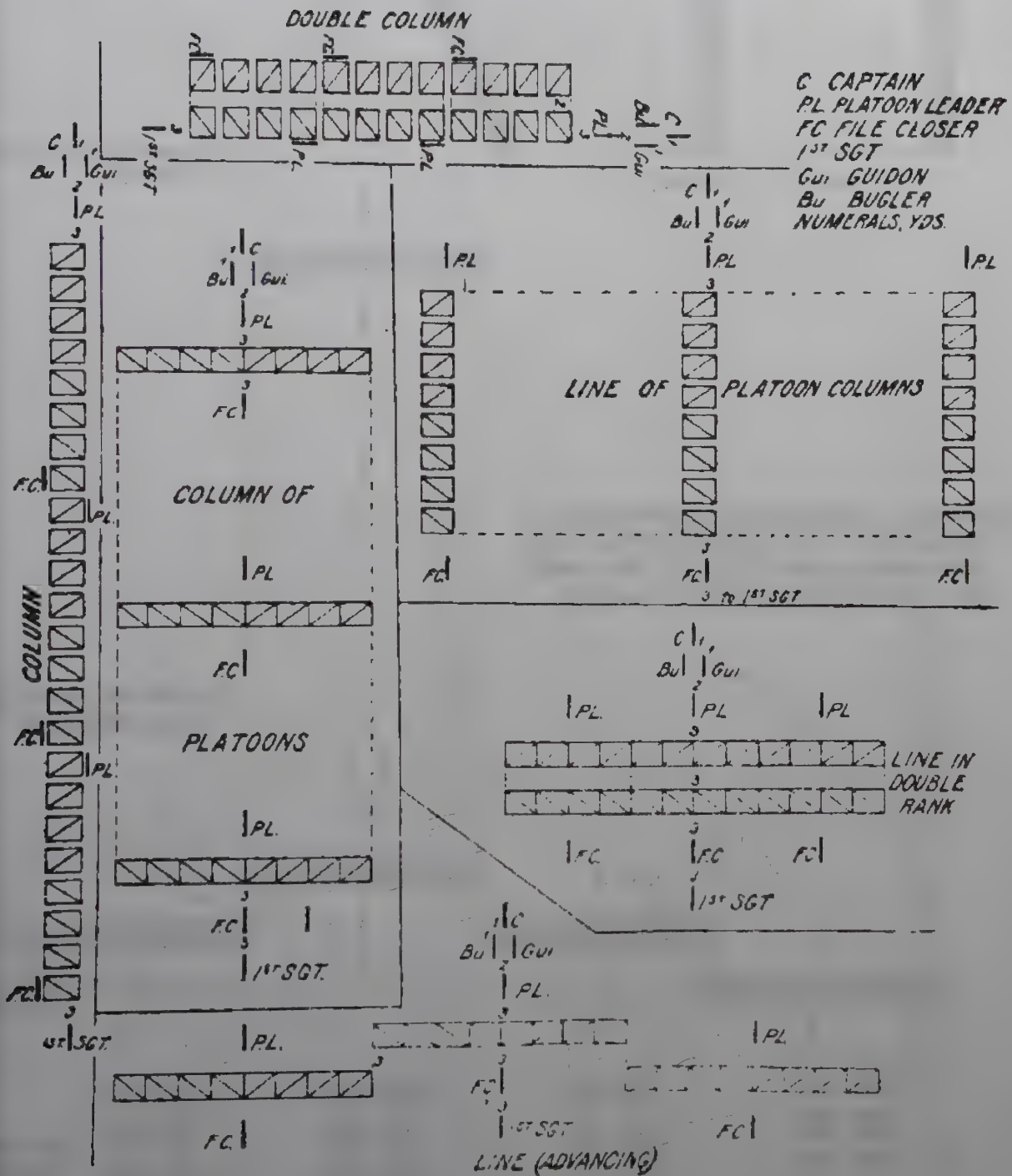


PLATE IV.—THE TROOP.

(Pars. 617 (*b*), 623 (*a*).)

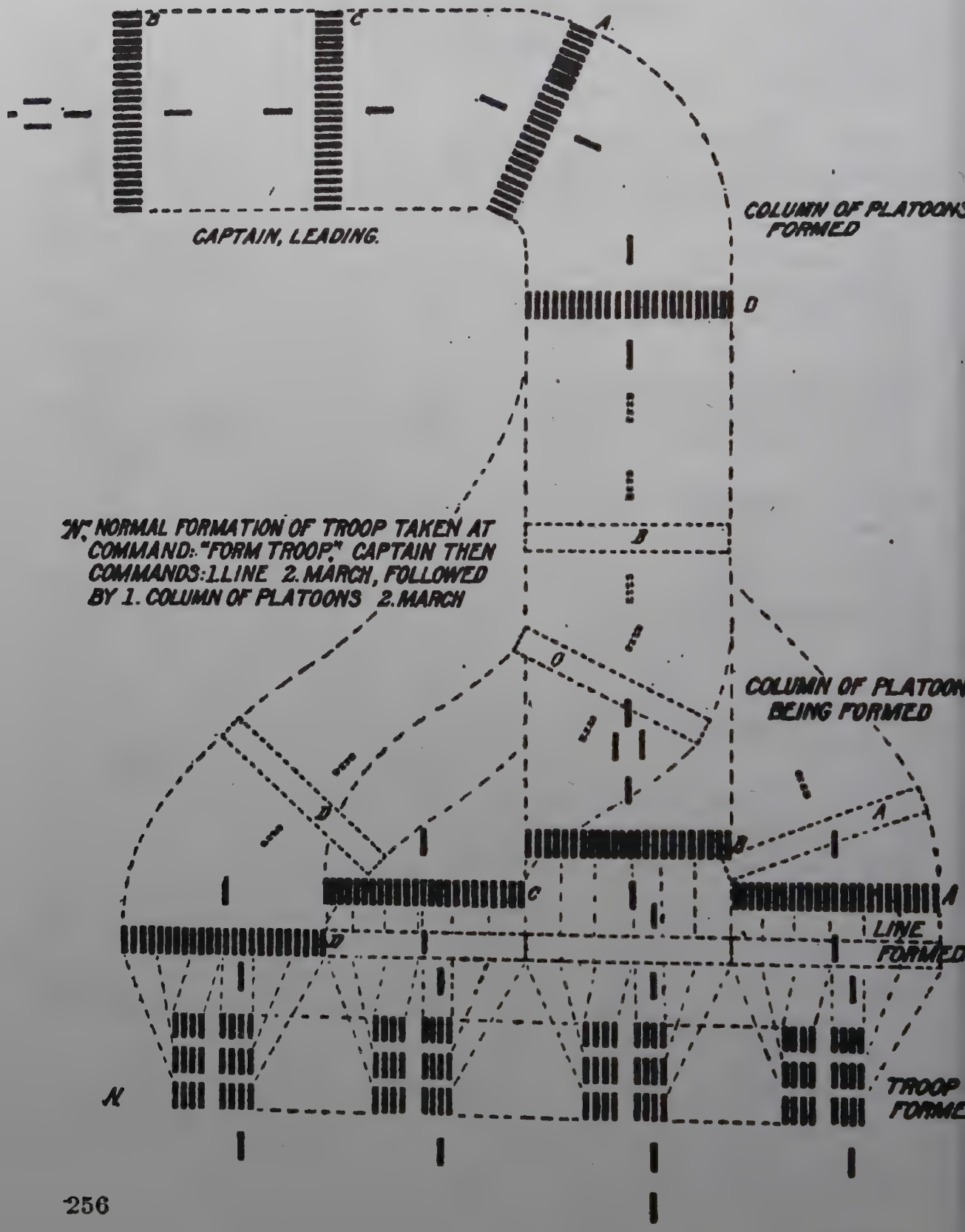


PLATE V.—THE TROOP.

(Pars. 625 (*e*), 627 (*b*).)

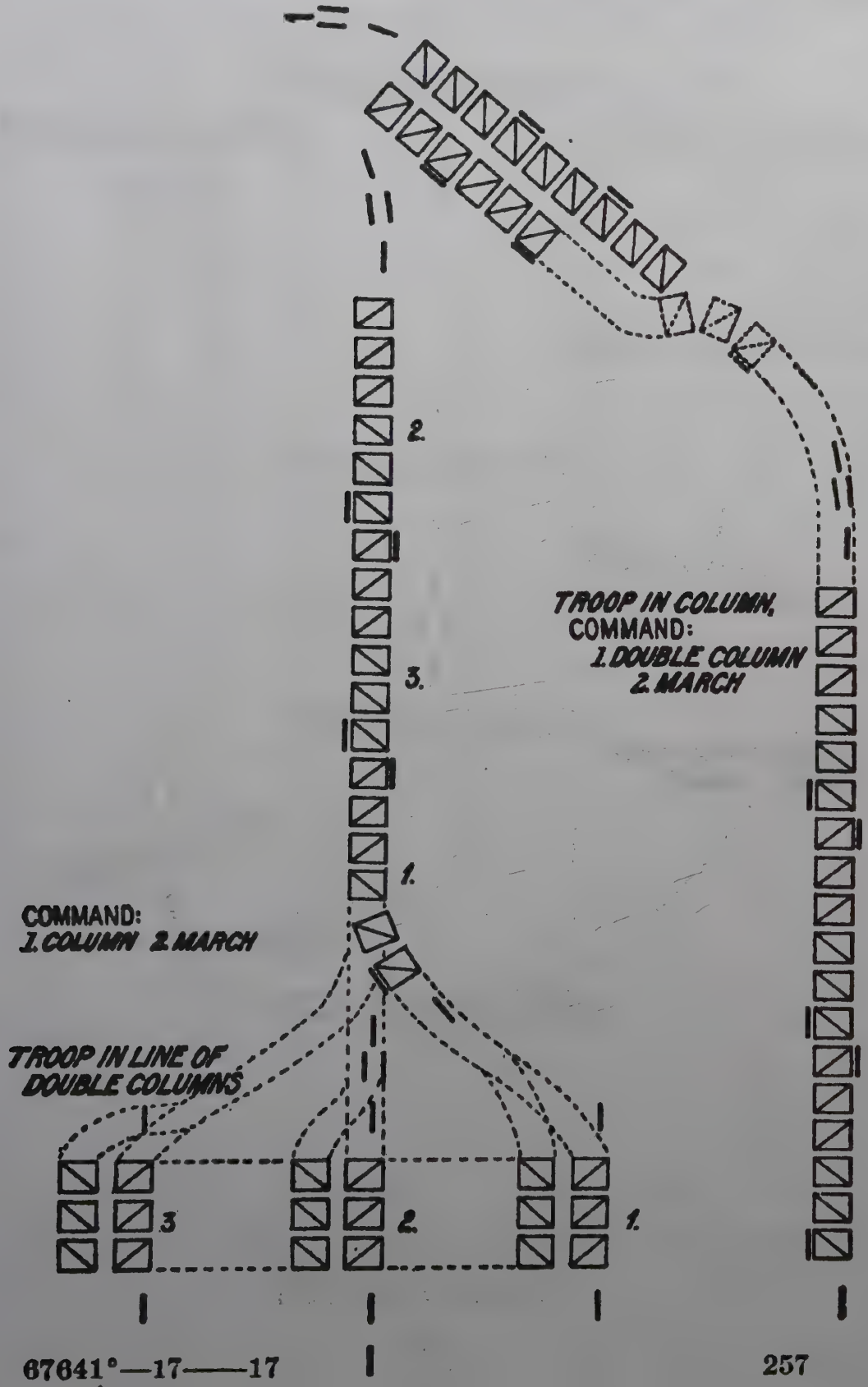


PLATE VI.—THE TROOP.
(Par. 617 (*c*).)

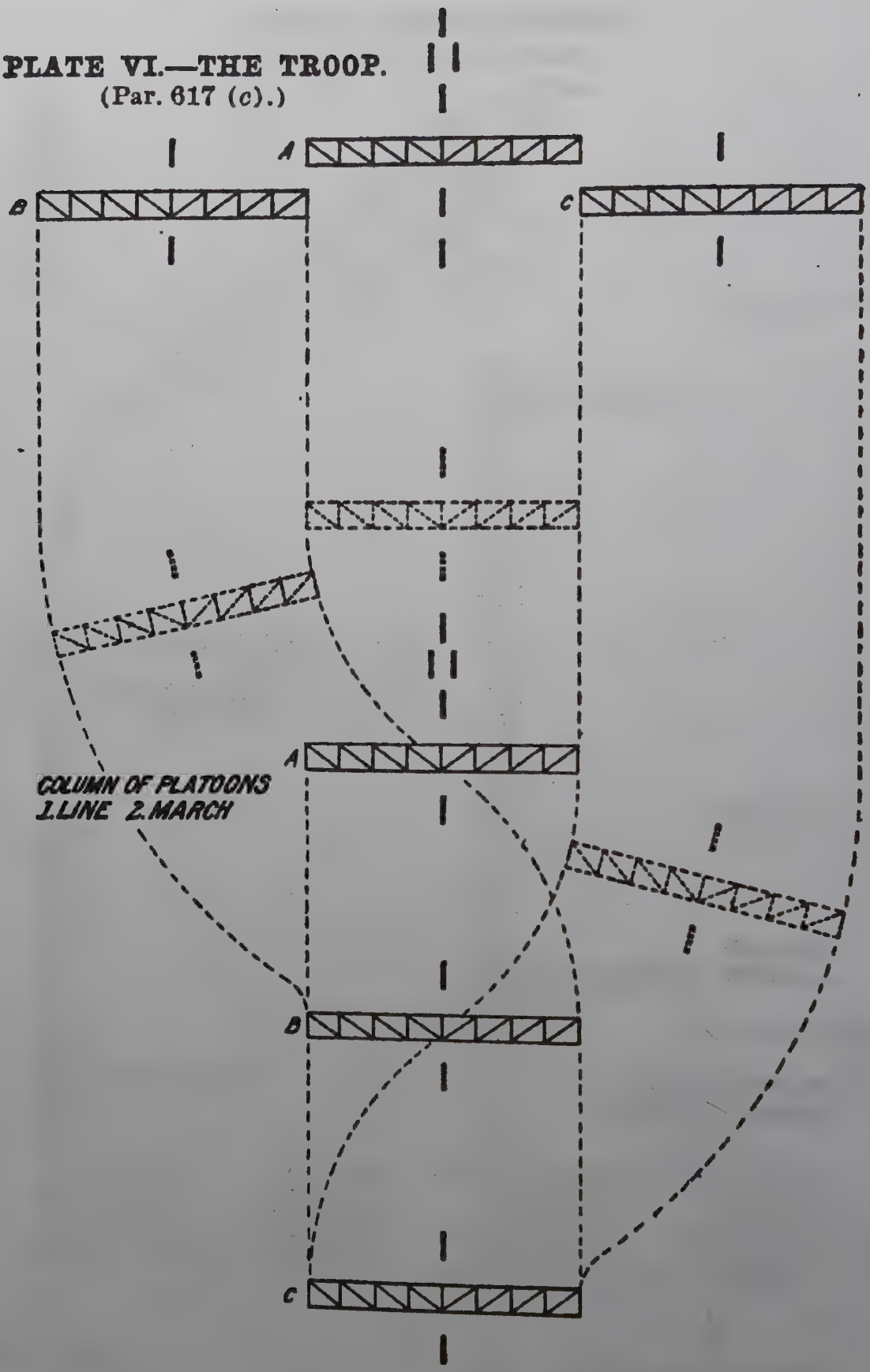
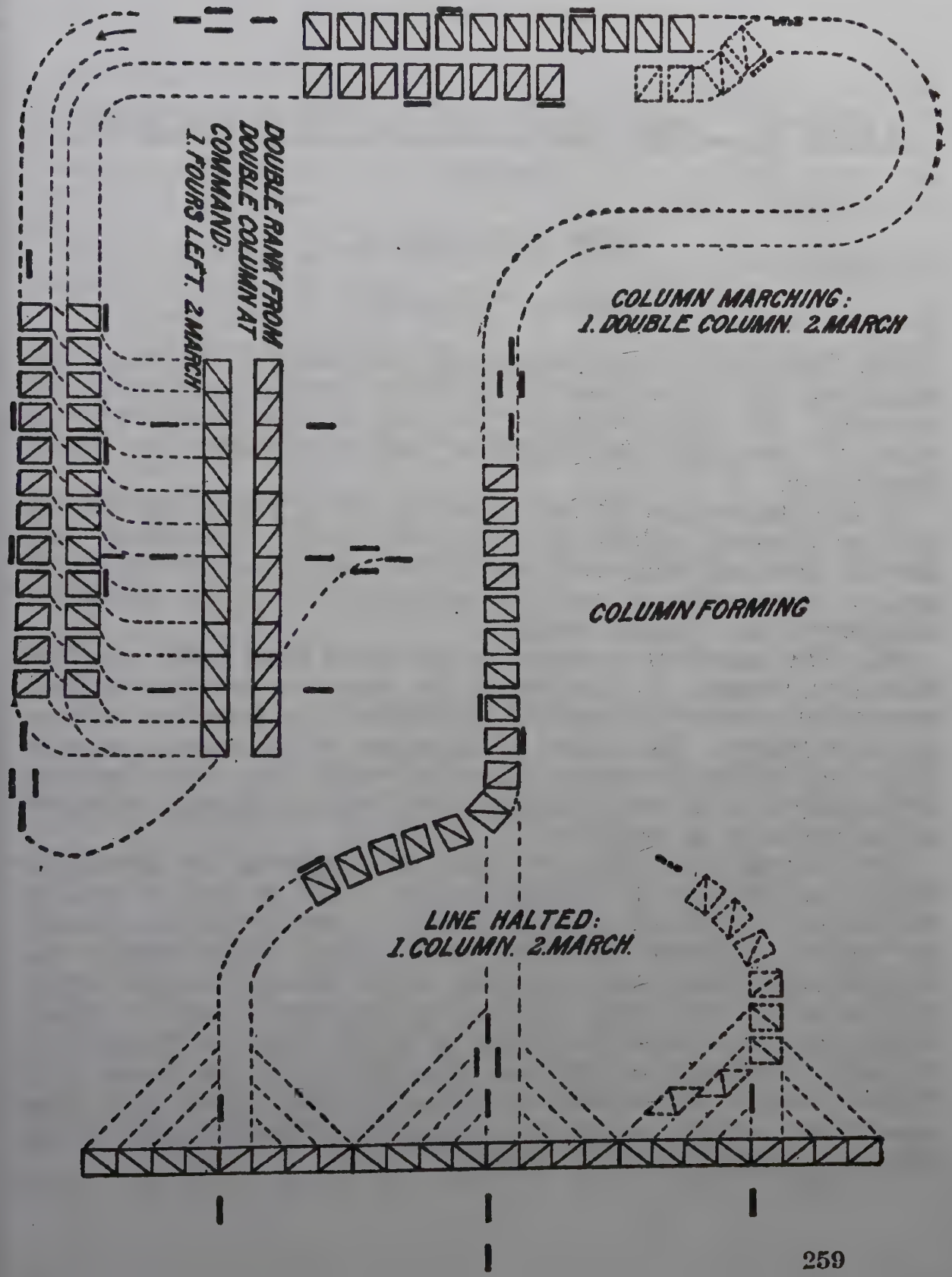


PLATE VII.—THE TROOP.

(Pars. 620, 625 (*e*), 627 (*a*).)



PART V.—THE SQUADRON AND HIGHER UNITS.

THE SQUADRON.

Special Provisions.

671. The major is the commander and tactical leader of the squadron. He is responsible for its theoretical and practical training. He supervises the training of the troops with a view to securing thoroughness and uniformity in their instruction.

In the instruction of the squadron as a whole his efforts will be directed chiefly to the development of *tactical efficiency*, devoting only such time to the mechanism of the drill and to ceremonies as may be necessary to insure precision, smartness, and proper control.

672. The squadron consists of not more than four, nor less than two, troops. In this school the squadron consists of four troops, but the drill is equally applicable to a squadron of two or three troops. The object of the school of the squadron is to train the troops to execute together what they have learned separately and to teach the squadron its movements, whether acting alone or in regiment.

673. Except at ceremonies (par. 787), troops are arranged from front to rear in column or from right to left in line, in the order of their letter designations. Their arrangement may be varied, however, to afford each troop opportunities for maneuvering both as a flank and as an interior troop. After the squadron has been formed, in whatever way it faces, troops are numbered from right to left in line and from front to rear in column or echelon, *first troop*, *second troop*, etc. Troops have a fixed place in squadron only when it is first assembled, and the squadron maneuvers without regard to the order of troops in line or column.

To Form the Squadron.

674. The troops having been formed, mounted, and marched to the place of assembly, the major commands: **FORM SQUADRON.** The squadron is formed in rear of the major in **mass.** The troops are led in succession to their places in **mass;** the captain of the base troop halts 12 yards directly in rear of the major.

For ceremonies or for special purposes the squadron may be formed in **line** or in **platoon mass** (pars. 797–799).

The squadron may be formed in **platoon mass, column of fours** or **column of platoons** by adding **IN PLATOON MASS, IN COLUMN,** or **IN COLUMN OF PLATOONS** to the command **FORM SQUADRON.** If not already in the required troop formation, the troops make the necessary change before taking their places in squadron. If a line formation is ordered, the squadron, unless otherwise directed, forms on the base troop. The major may direct the squadron to form on a flank troop. If a column formation is ordered, the squadron forms on the troop that will lead in column.

675. To dismiss the squadron the major commands: **DISMISS YOUR TROOPS.**

Posts of Officers, etc.

676. Except in route order (par. 706) the captain of the base troop follows the major at 12 yards. The adjutant is 2 yards on the left of the major and abreast of him. The sergeant major and bugler follow the adjutant and major, respectively, at 1 horse length. The squadron orderlies, if present, are abreast of the sergeant major and 2 yards to his left.

In column formations the captains of the troops other than the leading troop take post 3 yards from the flank of the column on the same side as and abreast of the chiefs of their leading platoons. In column of platoons they are on the right flank of the column unless the latter has been formed by the execution of **platoons right turn,** in which case they take post on the left flank (par. 451).

If the column be marched to the rear by a movement of fours, the captains on the flank of the column, turn about,

and take post as above prescribed, but do not change post to the opposite flank.

When the squadron is in **column of fours, twos, or troopers,** or in **double column,** the first sergeants take post on the flank of the column, on the same side as the platoon file closers and abreast of the next to the last element of the rear platoons of their troops. (Pl. VIII.)

677. The major regulates the direction and gait by signals, messengers, or by the voice. Trumpet signals are only used when the squadron is alone, and then only to the extent necessary to instruct the squadron in this method of command.

Although the major gives his command to all the troops, their execution in each troop is determined by the command of its captain. The captains give the necessary commands to cause their troops to conform to the movement directed and to insure its execution at the proper moment.

When the commands are given by the voice the captains repeat such of the commands as are to be immediately executed by their troops, such as **forward, fours right, halt,** etc. They do not repeat the major's commands which are not essential to the execution of the movement by their troops.

678. In all formations and movements of the squadron the captains conform to the principles, whenever applicable, laid down for platoon leaders in the **School of the Troop.** The squadron in any close-order formation (except in column of twos or troopers) may gain ground to a flank, or to the rear, by a movement by fours.

The captains must constantly bear in mind the vital importance of order and cohesion. Regularity and uniformity of the gaits are indispensable.

SQUADRON FORMATIONS.

(PLATE VIII.)

LINE FORMATIONS.

679. Close order:

(*a*) **Line:** The troops are in line with their base platoons abreast of each other. The interval between troops is 8 yards.

(*b*) **Line of troop columns.**

(*c*) **Line of platoon columns.**

(*d*) **Mass.**

In line of troop columns and mass, the troops are in column of fours. In line of platoon columns, the platoons are in column of fours. In each case the columns are parallel, with their heads abreast of each other. In line of troop columns the interval between troops is troop front and 4 yards. In line of platoon columns the interval between troops is platoon front and 4 yards. In mass the interval between troops is 8 yards.

(*e*) **Platoon mass:** The troops are in column of platoons, with their leading platoons abreast of each other. The interval between troops is 8 yards.

(*f*) **Double rank:** The troops are in double rank line, with their base platoons abreast of each other. The interval between troops is 8 yards.

COLUMN FORMATIONS.

(*g*) **Column of fours.**
(*h*) **Column of platoons.**
(*i*) **Double column.**

In these formations the troops are in column of fours, column of platoons, and double column, respectively. The troops are arranged one behind the other and, in marching, the rear troops follow in the trace of the leading troop. In column of fours and double column the distance between troops is 9 yards. In column of platoons the distance between troops is platoon front and 5 yards.

(*j*) **Column of troops:** The troops are in line, and are arranged one behind the other. Column of troops is taken for the purpose of inspection (par. 883) or for camping, and will result when a line of troop columns is marched to a flank by a movement of fours. Its use is exceptional for march or maneuver. The distance between troops is troop front and 5 yards.

ORDER IN ECHELON.

(*k*) **Echelon:** The leading element is a flank troop of the squadron. The troops are so arranged that each is less advanced than the troop next toward the leading flank and is unmasked by the troops which proceed it. In whatever for-

mation the troops may be, such intervals and distances are maintained as will permit the troops to form line to the front or to a flank and retain echelon formation without overlapping or undue extension. While neither a line nor a column, echelon has certain characteristics of both.

Extended order: The squadron takes extended order for the purposes of maneuver only. Extended-order formations by formal command are confined to units not larger than the troop.

Route order (par. 706).

Commands and Signals.

680.

Commands.	Pars.	Arm Signals.
(*a*) 1. **Line**, 2. **MARCH**.....	683	**Line.***
(*b*) 1. **Line of troop columns**, 2. **MARCH**.	685	**Line**, followed by **column.**†
(*c*) 1. **Line of platoon columns**, 2. **MARCH**	686	**Line of platoon columns.**
(*d*) 1. **Mass**, 2. **MARCH**.....	688	**Mass.***
(*e*) 1. **Platoon mass**, 2. **MARCH**.....	690	**Platoon mass.***
(*f*) 1. **Double rank**, 2. **MARCH**.....	692	No signal.
(*g*) 1. **Column**, 2. **MARCH**.....	696	**Column.***
(*h*) 1. **Column of platoons**, 2. **MARCH**...	698	**Column**, followed by **platoon.**†
(*i*) 1. **Double column**, 2. **MARCH**.....	700	**Double column.**†
(*k*) 1. **On first (fourth) troop, echelon**, 2. **MARCH.**	703	No signal.
1. **Right (left) front into echelon**, 2. **MARCH.**	704	No signal.

* Signals marked thus are preparatory signals; the signal of execution in each case is made as prescribed in par. 990.

† In signals marked thus the preparatory signal consists of more than one element; the signal of execution follows the last element of the preparatory signal.

681. The squadron maneuvers in line of troop columns, line of platoon columns, mass, platoon mass, column of fours, column of platoons, double column and echelon.

It marches in column of fours, twos, or troopers, and, under favorable conditions, in double column. It takes extended order and dismounts to fight on foot.

Close Order.

LINE.

682. Except when used as an attack formation, the march in line is an exceptional movement. As a rule the squadron in close order will advance in column, double column, or a line of columns.

The squadron in line is led on the same principles as apply to the troop in line, and changes of direction are accomplished by corresponding commands and methods.

Errors in direction should be corrected gradually.

To make slight changes of direction, the major leads in the new direction, and may caution: **Incline to the right** (par. 396).

The base troop follows the major, making the necessary change in direction. The other troops take a parallel direction and resume their places in line by increasing or decreasing the gait as may be necessary.

If it is desired to execute a complete change of front at right angles to its former direction as a general rule the squadron forms column to a flank and then forms line on the head of the column.

683. To form line to the direction of march:

1. **Line**; or 1. **On (such) troop, line**; 2. **MARCH.**

From **line of troop columns**, or **line of platoon columns**: A simultaneous movement; the troops form line to the direction of march at the command of execution (par. 617–*b*, *d*).

From **mass**, or **platoon mass** (Pl. IX): A successive formation; the base troop forms line when it has sufficient space, the other troops as they approach their places in line (pars. 480, 481–*f*, *g*, 617–*c*, *d*).

From **column of fours**, **column of platoons**, or **double column**: A successive formation; the base troop forms line at the command of execution; the other troops as they approach their places in line (pars. 481–*e*, *f*, 617–*c*, *d*).

To form line to a **flank**:

From **column of fours**: 1. **Fours right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.**

From **column of platoons**: 1. **Platoons, right (left) turn**; 2. **MARCH** (par. 618).

LINE OF TROOP COLUMNS.

684. Line of troop columns and line of platoon columns are formations for maneuver and may be used for an approach preceding a deployment. They are dispositions which facilitate handling the squadron and a rapid formation in line. The troops or platoons may vary their intervals to conform to the terrain or to avoid fire-swept areas. They should regain their intervals when a deployment is imminent.

685. To form line of troop columns to the direction of march:

1. **Line of troop columns**; or, 1. **On (such) troop, line of troop columns**; 2. **MARCH.**

From **line** or **line of platoon columns**: A simultaneous movement; the troops form column of fours to the direction of march at the command of execution (par. 627–*a*, *c*).

From **double column**: A successive formation; the base troop forms column of fours at the command of execution, the other troops form column of fours successively (pars. 481–*e*, 627–*e*).

From any other formation: **A successive formation**; at the command of execution the troops, unless already in that formation, form column of fours at the command of execution (pars. 480, 481–*d*, *e*, 627–*d*).

To form line of troop columns to a **flank**:

From column of fours: 1. **Troops, column right (left)**; 2. **MARCH** (par. 475).

LINE OF PLATOON COLUMNS.

686. To form line of platoon columns to the direction of march:

1. **Line of platoon columns**; or, 1. **On (such) troop, line of platoon columns**, 2. **MARCH.**

From **line** or **line of troop columns** (Pl. X): A simultaneous movement; the troops form line of platoon columns to the

direction of march at the command of execution (par. 622–*a*, *d*).

From **mass**: A successive formation; the base troop forms line of platoon columns to the direction of march when it has sufficient space, the other troops when they approach their places in **line of platoon columns** (pars. 480, 622–*d*).

From **column of fours**: A successive formation; the base troop forms line of platoon columns to the direction of march at the command of execution, the other troops as they approach their places in **line of platoon columns** (pars. 481–*e*, 622–*d*).

From **platoon mass**: The troops form column of fours at the command of execution, and the movement is completed as from **mass**.

From **column of platoons**: The troops form column of fours at the command of execution, and the movement is completed as from **column of fours**.

From **double column**: A successive formation; the base troop forms column of fours at the command of execution; the other troops form column of fours successively; the movement is completed as from **column of fours**.

To form line of platoon columns **to a flank**:

From **column of fours**: 1. **Platoons, column right (left),** 2. **MARCH** (par. 475).

From **column of platoons**: 1. **Fours right (left),** 2. **MARCH** (par. 479).

MASS.

687. Mass is a formation for concentration in a position of readiness. Beyond the zone of hostile fire it may be used as a maneuver formation or as a march formation under cover of an advance guard.

On account of its great vulnerability mass should not be used in the approach. As soon as troops in mass enter the dangerous zone they should open out.

688. To form **mass**:

1. **Mass**; or, 1. **On (such) troop, mass**; 2. **MARCH.**

From **double column**: A successive formation; the base troop forms column of fours at the command of execution, the other troops form column of fours successively (pars. 481–*e*, 627–*e*).

From any other formation: A successive formation; at the command of execution the troops, unless already in that formation, form column of fours to the direction of march (pars. 480, 481–*e*, 627–*a*, *c*, *d*). (Pl. XI.)

PLATOON MASS.

689. Platoon mass is a formation for maneuver and for mounted attack when more than one line is required to add weight to the charge. It may also be used as a ceremonial formation.

690. To form platoon mass:

1. **Platoon mass**; or, 1. **On (such) troop, platoon mass, 2. MARCH.**

From **column of platoons**: A successive formation (par. 481–*e*).

From **line**: A successive formation; at the command of execution the troops form column of platoons to the direction of march (pars. 480, 623–*a*).

From **line of troop columns, column of fours,** or **double column**: A successive formation; the base troop forms column of platoons at the command of execution, the other troops as they approach their places in **platoon mass** (pars. 480, 623–*c*, *d*).

From **mass**: A successive formation; the base troop forms column of platoons when it has a sufficient space, the other troops as they approach their places in **platoon mass** (pars. 480, 623–*d*).

From **line of platoon columns** (Pl. X): A successive formation; at the command of execution the troops form column of fours to the direction of march; the movement is completed as from **line of troop columns.**

TO CHANGE DIRECTION.

691. The squadron in line of troop columns, line of platoon columns, mass or platoon mass, is marched to the front, halted, executes movements by fours, obliques, and changes direction by the commands and means prescribed for the squadron in line, except as indicated below.

When in line of troop columns, line of platoon columns or mass, in executing the oblique the change of direction is made by heads of columns.

DOUBLE RANK.

692. The squadron in line or double column forms double rank by the same commands and by similar means as in The Troop. In forming double rank from line the troops execute double rank simultaneously at the command of execution and then close interval upon the base troop.

When the squadron marches in double-rank line, the troops are echeloned in a manner similar to that prescribed for platoons in troop (par. 587). The interval between troops will be preserved.

693. The squadron in double rank line forms single rank by the same commands and by similar means as in The Troop (par. 620). The troops other than the base troop are led diagonally to their places in line and form single rank on approaching the same.

694. The squadron in double rank is subject to the same limitations as to movements and changes of formation as The Troop in double rank (par. 619).

COLUMN OF FOURS.

695. Column of fours is a formation for march and maneuver.

696. To form column of fours to the direction of march:

1. Column; or, 1. On (such) troop, column; 2. MARCH.

From column of platoons: A simultaneous movement; the troops form column of fours at the command of execution (par. 627–*d*).

From double column: A successive formation; at the command of execution the base troop forms column of fours, the other troops form column of fours successively (par. 627–*c*).

From any other formation: A successive formation; at the command of execution the troops, unless already in that formation, form column of fours to the direction of march (pars. 481–*d*, 627–*a*, *c*, *f*). (Pl. XI.)

To form column of fours to a flank:

From line: 1. Fours right (left), 2. MARCH (par. 479).

From line of troop columns: 1. Troops, column right (left), 2. MARCH.

From line of platoon columns: 1. Platoons, column right (left), 2. MARCH (par. 475).

COLUMN OF PLATOONS.

697. Column of platoons is a formation for maneuver. In open country or for ceremonial purposes it may be used as a march formation.

To avoid checks in the march distances between platoons may be reduced, and a platoon may uncover or overlap the preceding platoon temporarily.

698. To form column of platoons to the direction of march.

1. **Column of platoons;** or, 1. **On (such) troop column of platoons,** 2. **MARCH.**

From **column of fours:** A simultaneous movement; the troops form column of platoons at the command of execution (par. 623–*d*).

From **platoon mass:** A successive formation (par. 481–*d*).

From **line** (Pl. IX): A successive formation; at the command of execution the troops form column of platoons to the direction of march (pars. 481–*d*, 623–*a*).

From **line of troop columns:** A successive formation; the base troop forms column of platoons at the command of execution, the other troops as they approach their places in **column of platoons** (pars. 481–*d*, 623–*d*).

From **line of platoon columns:** A successive formation; at the command of execution the troops form column of fours to the direction of march, and the movement is completed as from **line of troop columns.**

From **mass:** A successive formation; the troops form column of platoons successively, each when it has sufficient space (pars. 481–*d*, 623–*d*).

From **double column:** A successive formation; the base troop forms column of platoons at the command of execution, the other troops form column of platoons successively (par. 623–*c*).

To form column of platoons to a flank:

From **line:** 1. **Platoons right (left) turn,** 2. **MARCH** (par. 624–*a*).

From **line of platoon columns:** 1. **Fours right (left),** 2. **MARCH** (par. 479).

DOUBLE COLUMN.

699. Double column is a formation for march and maneuver. It may be used as a march formation when conditions permit

the squadron to advance on a broader front than that ordinarily practicable for route column. It facilitates a rapid deployment to the front by reason of the reduction in the depth of the column.

700. To form double column to the direction of march.

1. **Double column**; *or*, 1. **On (such) troop, double column**, 2. **MARCH.**

From **line, line of platoon columns, or platoon mass**: A successive formation; the troops form double column at the command of execution (pars. 481–*d*, 625–*a*, *b*, *d*).

From **line of troop columns**: A successive formation; the base troop forms double column at the command of execution, the other troops as they approach their positions in double column (pars. 481–*d*, 625–*e*).

From **mass**: A successive formation; the troops form double column successively, each when it has sufficient space (pars. 481–*d*, 625–*e*).

From **column of platoons**: A successive formation; the troops form double column at the command of execution (pars. 480, 625–*d*).

From **column of fours** (Pl. XI): A successive formation; the base troop forms double column at the command of execution, the other troops form double column successively (pars. 480, 625–*e*).

To form **double column** *to a flank* from **double rank**: 1. **Fours right (left)**, 2. **MARCH.**

ECHELON.

701. Echelon formation permits of advancing a flank to overlap the enemy, at the same time remaining ready to face him at any instant or avoid envelopment by refusing a flank. Echelon is a formation for maneuver only.

In forming echelon the troops will retain the formation they have when the movement is ordered. If conditions necessitate a change in troop formation, the major will give the appropriate command.

Changes in troop formation may be effected during the formation of echelon. In whatever formation the troops may be such intervals and distance will be maintained as to per-

mit the troops to form line to the front or to a flank and retain echelon formation without overlapping or undue extension.

In echelon the most advanced troop is the base troop. Echelon is always formed on a flank troop in line or the leading troop in column.

702. Echelon is formed from **line, line of troop columns, or line of platoon columns** on the base troop at the gait of the march, or at the gait ordered. The other troops take or maintain a slower gait or halt until they can take their places in echelon.

Echelon is formed from any other formation on the base troop at the gait of the march or gait ordered. The gait of the other troops is so regulated by their captains that they will take their places in echelon promptly and with as few changes of gait as practicable.

703. The squadron being in any line formation, to form echelon:

1. **On first (fourth) troop, echelon,** 2. **MARCH.**

If the squadron is in **line, line of troop columns** or **line of platoon columns,** echelon is formed as prescribed in par. 702. If the squadron is in **mass** or **platoon mass,** the base troop maintains gait and direction and the other troops move by the most direct route to their places in echelon. (Pl. XII.)

704. The squadron being in any column formation:

1. **Right (left) front into echelon,** 2. **MARCH.**

The leading troop advances. The other troops move diagonally to the right (left) front and take their places in echelon. (Pl. XIII.)

705. The squadron in echelon is not readily maneuvered by oral commands or visual signals. The captain of the base troop follows the major's movements and causes his troop to execute any changes of formation that the major may indicate. The other troops conform to the movements and formations of the base troop, preserving their relative positions with respect to the latter. Should the squadron in echelon be marched to the flank or rear, the major takes position in front of the new base troop, unless the march to the original front is to be resumed promptly.

To re-form the squadron in line or other formation, the major commands or signals: 1. **Assemble,** 2. **MARCH.**

The troops are led toward the major, who indicates as they approach the formation that he desires the squadron to take.

Route Marches.

706. In route marches the major and adjutant ride at the head of the column, followed respectively at 4 feet by a bugler and sergeant major. The squadron orderlies follow the sergeant major and trumpeter. At the command **ROUTE ORDER** the troops take route formation (par. 604). The leading troop follows the major's party at 12 yards. The prescribed distance between troops will be retained unless a greater distance is authorized.

THE ASSEMBLY.

707. The squadron is assembled when the troops of the squadron are united in any authorized formation of the squadron and each troop is assembled (pars. 635–637). The assembly is executed in mass unless the major indicates some other formation, in which case the indication is given as the troops approach the major's position and sufficiently in advance for each captain to lead his troop to its proper position.

The order taken by the troops in assembling will be the same as that taken at the original formation of the squadron unless the major directs otherwise.

The commands of the major are: 1. **Assemble,** 2. **MARCH.** Each troop, if not already assembled, is assembled by its captain before taking its place in the squadron.

THE RALLY.

708. The command **RALLY**, given by the major, is repeated by all officers, noncommissioned officers, and buglers. The squadron rallies in line, unless the major indicates some other formation. Each troop is rallied by its captain (par. 638) and led at an extended gallop toward the major. Any troop that is not in a formation to be rapidly led, as just indicated, will be rallied immediately by its captain and then led toward the major. The first troop to arrive in rear of the major is desig-

nated as the base troop, its captain following the major. The other troops place themselves to the left and right of the base troop if the rally be in line. Should the major indicate a formation other than line, the troops successively take positions so as to extend the formation.

It is very important that each trooper rally with his own troop in so far as practicable; but this must not operate to unduly delay the execution of the movement. A trooper who is unable for any reason to locate and join his own organization attaches himself temporarily to the nearest troop.

Extended Order.

709. Extended order may be used in mounted combat where the pistol or saber is employed, and it has a specially important application in connection with dismounted fire action. It also forms a convenient method of making a rapid advance over fire-swept areas. The extension may, as in the troop, be taken in line with increased intervals or in depth by successive subdivisions.

A formation of special value for the squadron, due to decreased vulnerability to artillery fire, is line of columns, or an echelon of columns with wide intervals, moving at a rapid gait. To cross ground without cover exposed to infantry or artillery fire, lines of foragers may be thrown forward at a rapid gait, the troops halting and re-forming when cover is reached.

Regular drills *by command*, in extended order, habitually terminate with the instruction of the troop. Two or more troops may be extended upon the same principles as apply to a single troop, but the major usually effects the desired disposition of the squadron by means of *tactical orders*, instead of through formal *commands* of the character employed in drill. The major's orders habitually indicate the objective, the gait, and the formation, and they may also state the interval or distance which is to separate the troops. The base troop is led accordingly. The other troops conform in general to the base troop, but the captains may modify their formation according to circumstances. In extended-order formation the major's position is that from which he can best control and regulate the movements of the squadron. If he

does not lead the squadron, the captain of the base troop directs the march in accordance with the major's direction.

In the *exceptional case* where the extension *by command* of two or more troops into a line of platoons or a line of foragers may be desired, the commands prescribed for the troop may be employed. The base troop is designated before the commands for the deployments are given and conforms to the movements or indication of the major or other officer commanding the particular troops designated to deploy. Each of the other troops designated to deploy is led by its captain so as to deploy and extend the line according to the principles prescribed in the troop.

The squadron in extended order is assembled and rallied as indicated in pars. 707 and 708. Any troops (for example, those of the reserve) not deployed move toward the major and execute the assembly with the other troops, unless the major directs otherwise. Should the rally be commanded, any troops not deployed are, in the absence of other instructions, led rapidly toward the major and ordinarily form the nucleus of the new formation.

Mounted Attack.

710. In the mounted attack, the squadron follows, in general, the methods prescribed for the troop.

711. The close-order attack may be made in one or more lines, in platoon mass, or in echelon. The formations employed will depend upon the tactical situation. Under certain conditions it may be necessary to charge in column of platoons.

THE SQUADRON ACTING ALONE.

712. When acting alone, the squadron is formed in two or three parts—an attacking line and reserve, or an attacking line, support, and reserve. The attacking line should consist of at least half the squadron. The senior officer with each line is the leader of that line and takes post as such.

The major designates the troops that compose each line, indicates the objective, and, if there is an opportunity, states the special mission of each line. He provides for the necessary flank defense and gives instructions for any flank attack

he may have in view. His orders will generally take the form suggested in par. 644.

In the absence of special instructions, the support, or the reserve if there be no support, follows the attacking line at from 80 to 100 yards. If there be a support, the reserve follows the attacking line at from 150 to 200 yards. Distances will vary with the character of the terrain and the condition of the horses. The support and reserve may be disposed on the same or on opposite flanks of the attacking line.

The major may accompany any fraction of the squadron. Whichever he selects he takes post on the left of the leader of the line; the adjutant and others accompanying the major take post, in line, on his left.

The rally, or assembly, following a charge, is executed as prescribed in pars. 707 and 708.

713. Owing to the extension of front required for the pistol attack it will generally be impracticable to make the same by units larger than the troop. When the terrain permits the deployment, as foragers, of more than one troop in a single line the difficulties of control by a single leader are such that better results can be expected if the control of each troop is left to its captain. The simplest form of pistol attack is by successive lines of foragers, each line composed of one troop, led by its captain. In such case the major indicates the objective and may prescribe the distances at which the successive lines follow the leading troop.

When the attack is made in successive lines each line after attacking will rally to a flank as quickly as possible to avoid masking the fire of the lines which follow.

Where an opportunity is offered for a converging attack the major may indicate a special mission for each troop of the attacking line. The troops then take the necessary intervals before deploying as foragers.

In every case the major holds out a reserve, or a support and a reserve, which retain close-order formations as long as practicable.

714. The squadron may combine pistol attack with close-order attack. The enemy's front may be attacked in close order, and his flank by a line of foragers using the pistol. The pistol is a most efficient weapon for individual combat,

and the pistol attack may be employed to good advantage by the support or reserve, or both, in the mêlée which may follow a charge, or in the pursuit.

THE SQUADRON IN REGIMENT.

715. In the mounted attack, when the squadron is in regiment, the major, in the discretion of the colonel, may hold out a support. He makes the necessary arrangements for the defense of his exposed flank.

DISMOUNTED FIRE ACTION.

716. Certain elementary principles are enunciated under **Dismounted combat** in **The Troop** (pars. 650–669).

The principles and methods here discussed pertain more especially to the squadron, either acting alone or as part of a larger unit.

717. The squadron dismounted, whether acting alone or in regiment, is the tactical unit best suited to carry on the fire fight; this holds in both attack and defense. In dismounted combat, by reason of smaller units and deductions for horse holders, the squadron at war strength would ordinarily occupy about half the front allotted to an infantry battalion at war strength, but the organization of the two units being the same the duties of officers and noncommissioned officers, as herein explained, correspond.

718. To the major, the captains, and the lieutenants of a squadron (subject to limitation imposed by higher authority) are committed the initiative, direction, and control in fire action. To efficiently carry out the duties pertaining to their grades practical experience in combat exercises is a prime requisite; knowledge of a technical nature is also necessary.

719. A guiding principle in dismounted action is that cavalry should employ its mobility to compensate for its lack of numbers.

Its power to break off the action in one part of the field and resume it in another, to pass at a favorable moment from fire action to mounted attack, or vice versa, to break off an action and withdraw mounted, as in rear guard or delaying actions, should never be lost sight of.

Rapidity of movement in dismounting, in assuming battle formations on foot, in moving horses to shelter, and in opening and maintaining accurately aimed fire are characteristics of well-trained cavalry.

720. The fire fight of dismounted cavalry acting alone, as distinguished from that in which they participate with other arms, frequently presents points of difference that demand consideration. In the former case the combat is likely to occur when separated by long distances from supporting troops and their own field trains so that it is imperative that a tactical decision should be reached quickly, even though some chances are taken; this being the case, the reconnaissance must be prompt and aggressive and the attack must be characterized by a surprise, if possible, or, in any event, by the most energetic measures and a full development of fire at the beginning of the action. The principles of the infantry fire attack are modified accordingly.

While infantry bases the details of combat upon a succession of progressive efforts made by troops echeloned in depth, dismounted cavalry is frequently compelled to rush the attack or to stop the advancing enemy at a distance by employing at once upon an extended front all the men and rifles available. The relative weakness in numbers of the cavalry and responsibility for the led horses are not favorable to a combat of long duration. On the contrary the facility afforded by its horses for carrying additional ammunition, its spirit of enterprise, its characteristics of action and of mobility fit it admirably for enveloping movements rapidly executed and for maneuvering on the defensive to avoid the blows of an adversary.

Skill and rapidity in the execution of the approach, promptness in decision, and celerity in opening the action furnish an element of surprise which in actions of this nature is essential to success.

721. Occasions will arise, however, when dismounted cavalry, either acting alone or in conjunction with other arms, will have to drive home a determined attack. In such cases the principles and methods governing the employment of fire action by infantry must control. Some of the more generally accepted of these principles, modified only to the extent necessary to conform to dismounted cavalry and their led horses,

here follow. They are in a measure supplementary to those given under **The Troop.**

722. Deployment: The following principles of deployment are applicable to attack or defense.

After dismounting, the approach, taking advantage of cover, should be continued as long as possible in some open formation, such as line of columns, before deployment into line of skirmishers, which latter necessitates a fatiguing and disorganizing advance and should not be assumed until fire may reasonably be anticipated. The depth of deployment and the density and extent of the firing line are regulated by the major, subject to such restrictions as may have been prescribed by his senior.

During and after deployment into extended order, movements of units larger than a troop are not controlled by drill commands, but by orders; troops designated for the firing line are marched or led independently to the place of deployment, are deployed and advanced, conforming in general to the base troop.

723. Designation of objective and of sectors: In defense, with squadron dismounted, the major designates the portions of the line to be held by each troop and the sector to be observed by each.

In attack, he designates the base or directing troop, the direction of the enemy or objective, and the order and extent of front of troops in the attacking line.

724. Distribution of fire: Greater difficulty is always encountered in securing a proper distribution of fire than in maintaining a concentrated fire. If the enemy's whole line is kept under fire, it neutralizes, to an extent, his fire, which otherwise could be concentrated on exposed parts of our lines with increased effectiveness.

In many instances portions of the assigned target will be indistinct and in some cases invisible. The tendency of men is to fire only on that part which can be seen. This tendency must be overcome and men taught that when given a sector of a target every part of it must be kept under fire whether it can be seen or not (par. 663). As a rule, whatever the size of a sector assigned to a troop, the troop commander should cover it all by fire by assigning parts to his platoon commanders corresponding to their positions in line, and they in turn

should require their sections to similarly cover the parts allotted to their platoons.

725. Fire: Fire direction and fire control are functions of troop and platoon commanders, respectively. The major makes the primary apportionment of the target in defense by assigning sectors of fire and in attack by assignment of the objectives. If impracticable for the major to assign sectors of fire or objectives, each captain takes that part of the general objective which lies in his own front.

The major, whether the squadron is acting alone or as part of a larger unit, should indicate the point or the time at which the fire fight is to open. He may do this in his order for deployment (par. 729), or he may follow the firing line close enough to do so at the proper time. If impracticable to do either, the senior officer with the firing line in each squadron decides upon the time or place for opening fire.

726. Firing line; supports; reserves: When the squadron is acting alone, the major designates the size of the troop supports and makes suitable disposition of the machine-gun unit if attached to his squadron. He also designates which troops are to constitute the firing line and which are to form the squadron reserve. By a judicious use of this reserve he can exert an influence over his firing line not otherwise possible and can control within reasonable limits an action once begun. It may, according to circumstances, be held in one or two bodies and placed behind one or both flanks of the firing line. It should be of sufficient strength to maintain the original fire power of the firing line (after the troop supports have been absorbed) and also to perform the functions of a reserve, whatever the issue of the action. The functions of a reserve are: In attack, to protect the flanks, to secure the full advantage of a victory, or to cover defeat; in defense, to extend the firing line, to effect a counter attack, or to cover a withdrawal. The reserve should be held in readiness, awaiting the proper moment for its deployment. Fire action will seldom come to a successful issue without its employment in some form. The local reserve of a squadron, acting as part of a larger force which has its own reserve, becomes actually a "support" (par. 761) and is used by the major in replacing depleted troop supports and in strengthening and protecting the firing line in the charge.

The distance from the firing line to the supports should be as short as the necessity for protection from heavy losses will permit. No distance, even approximate, can be laid down as a guide.

After the supports have joined the firing line, whether the squadron is acting alone or as part of a larger force, the functions of its reserve include those of a support, and the reserve is moved closer to the firing line.

727. Flanks: When the squadron is operating alone the major provides for the reconnaissance and protection of his flanks; if part of a larger force, the major makes similar provisions when on an exposed flank without waiting for orders from higher authority, but in neither case does it relieve commanders of flank troops from taking necessary precautions for protecting their own flanks. In other words, patrols are always sent out by flank troops for the purposes of reconnaissance and combat unless the captain is instructed to the contrary.

728. Led horses: The troops designated for the dismounted attack are led mounted as close to the position each is to occupy on the firing line as a consideration of all the circumstances, including the safety of the led horses, will permit. After dismounting, the led horses should be held as near to their respective troops as concealment from the fire and view of the enemy will justify; this is especially necessary in rear guard and delaying actions. The horses should be so faced and be in such formation as to permit their movement without delay toward the firing line; they should, however, be constantly under the effective protection of the reserve for the reason that efforts of the enemy to stampede them may otherwise be expected.

729. Orders: Initial combat orders issued to units smaller than a brigade are usually oral. In the case of a squadron, either in attack or defense, the major assembles his captains, if practicable, and directs the disposition of the troops by means of *tactical orders*. He controls subsequent movements of the squadron by signals, by orders, or, occasionally, by *commands* prescribed in drill regulations.

In a deployment of the squadron for combat, either in attack or defense, the major's order should give subordinates sufficient information of the enemy, of the position of sup-

porting and neighboring troops, and of the object sought, to enable them to conform intelligently to the general plan. It should specify the troops which are to constitute the firing line, the order and extent of front of troops in that line, and (if the squadron is *acting alone*) the size of the troop supports and the size and location of the squadron reserve. If the squadron is *part of a larger unit* the major's order, conforming to instructions given him by higher authority, would, ordinarily, specify the troops for the firing line and those to constitute the squadron support.

In attack, the major's order should, in addition, designate the objective or the direction of the attack and one of the flank troops as the base or directing troop.

In defense, the order should apportion the target by assigning the sector to be observed by each troop.

When the squadron is acting alone the major's order should provide, in addition, for the reconnaissance and protection of his flanks; when part of a larger force he makes similar provision, when necessary, without waiting for orders from higher authority.

As a general rule, in combat, actual or pending, the commander of any flank unit as large as a troop is responsible for the flank protection of the firing line, and if orders fail to reach him he must, of his own initiative, provide such protection by means such as reconnoitering or combat patrols.

Extra ammunition is always ordered issued by the major when he dismounts the squadron in anticipation of fire action, and he takes advantage of supports going forward to send extra bandoliers to the front.

730. Reconnaissance, preceding a fire attack, is made by the major, accompanied by his captains, who move wherever necessary in rear of the scouts. During this reconnaissance the major gives his officers such information of the enemy as he possesses, also the positions of the supporting and adjacent troops and the object sought, so that each may be able to conform intelligently to the general plan.

731. Scouts and patrols: The rules governing the use of scouts and patrols in dismounted action are in no sense invariable. The initiative and responsibility for making suitable provision for their use rests with certain commanders.

The usual method followed is for each troop to have its two scouts reconnoiter to the front before the beginning of the action and for them to be absorbed by the line during its advance. They communicate by signals. Patrols for combat and for observation, when used, remain on the flanks, advance with the firing line, and keep in touch by signaling. They do not join in the main attack.

732. The fire attack: The squadron, whether acting alone or as part of a larger unit, is the **attack unit.**

If his squadron be one of several in the firing line, the major, in executing his part of the attack, pushes his squadron forward as vigorously as possible within the front, or section, assigned to it. The great degree of independence allowed to him as to details demands, in turn, the exercise of good judgment on his part. Better leadership, better troops, and more favorable terrain enable one squadron to advance more rapidly in attack than another less fortunate, and such a squadron will insure the further advance of the others. The leading squadron should not, however, become isolated; isolation may lead to its destruction.

The deployment having been made, the firing line advances without firing. The predominant idea must be to close with the enemy as soon as possible, without ruinous losses. The limited supply of ammunition and the uncertainty of resupply, the necessity for securing fire superiority in order to advance to within the shorter ranges, and the impossibility of securing such fire superiority at ineffective ranges, make it imperative that fire be not opened as long as the advance can be continued without demoralizing losses. The attack which halts to open fire at long range (over 1,200 yards) is not likely ever to reach its destination. Every effort should be made, by using cover or inconspicuous formations (par. 652), or by advancing the firing line as a whole, to arrive within 800 yards of the enemy before opening fire.

Occasionally the fire of adjacent squadrons, or of troops employing fire of position, or of supporting artillery, will permit the further advance of the entire firing line from this point, but it will generally be necessary to advance by rushes of fractions of the line (par. 654).

The fraction making the rush should be as large as the hostile fire and the necessity for maintaining fire superiority

will permit. Depending upon circumstances, the strength of the fraction may vary from a troop to a few men.

The advance is made as rapidly as possible without losing fire superiority. The smaller the fraction that rushes the greater the number of rifles that continue to fire upon the enemy. On the other hand, the smaller the fraction that rushes, the slower will be the progress of the attack.

Enough rifles must continue in action to insure the success of each rush. Frequently the successive advances of the firing line must be effected by rushes of fractions of decreased size; that is, advances by rushes may first be made by troop, later by platoon, and finally by sections or files; but no subsequent opportunity to *increase* the rate of advance, such as better cover or a decrease of the hostile fire, should be overlooked.

Whenever shelter for the entire firing line is practically the same, the rush is begun by a flank fraction of the line. In the absence of express directions from the major, the captain of a flank troop determines when an advance by rushes shall be attempted. A troop which inaugurates an advance by rushes, crawling, etc., becomes the base or directing troop; others conform to it and move forward in succession. Whenever shelter exists for part of the line, the advance should ordinarily begin there, and the units thus advanced assist in keeping down the enemy's fire so as to protect the advances of the others which follow. The fractions need not be uniform in size. Each captain indicates how his troop shall rush, having due regard to the ground and the state of the fire fight.

A fraction about to rush is sent when the rest of the line is firing vigorously, otherwise the chief advantage of this method of advancing is lost.

The length of the rush will vary from 30 to 80 yards, depending upon the existence of cover, positions for firing, and the hostile fire.

When the entire firing line of the squadron has advanced to the new line, fresh opportunities are sought to advance as before.

Two identical situations will never confront the squadron; hence at drill it is prohibited to arrange the details of an advance before the preceding one has been concluded or to employ a fixed or prearranged method of advancing by rushes.

The major posts himself so as best to direct the reinforcing of the firing line from the squadron support (or reserve when the squadron is acting alone). When all or nearly all of the reinforcements have been absorbed by the firing line, he joins and takes full charge of the latter.

Reinforcing the firing line by driblets of a few men has no appreciable effect. The firing line requires either no reinforcement or a strong one. Generally one or two platoons at a time will be sent forward under cover of a heavy fire of the firing line.

To facilitate control and to provide intervals in which reinforcements may be placed, the troops in the firing line should be kept closed in on their centers as they become depleted by casualties during the advance.

When this is impracticable, reinforcements must mingle with and thicken the firing line. In battle the latter method will be the rule rather than the exception, and to familiarize the men with such conditions the combat exercise of the squadron should include both methods of reinforcing. Occasionally, to provide the necessary intervals for reinforcing by either of these methods, the firing line should be thinned by causing men to drop out and simulate losses during the various advances. Under ordinary conditions the depletion of the firing line for this purpose will be from one-fifth to one-half of its strength.

733. Subject to orders from higher authority, the major determines the point from which the assault is to be made. The firing line having arrived at that point and being in readiness, the major causes the **charge** to be sounded. The signal is repeated by the buglers of all parts of the line.

The platoon and troop commanders repeat the command **charge**, spring in front of their units and lead them to the assault.

The further conduct of the assaulting troops will depend upon circumstances. They may halt and engage in pursuing fire; they may advance a short distance to obtain a better field of fire or to drive the enemy from the vicinity; they may rally; or they may assemble and reorganize. If the enemy vacates his position, every effort should be made to open fire at once on the retreating mass, reorganization of the attacking troops being of secondary importance to the infliction of further losses upon the enemy and the increase of his confusion.

The horses may be brought up and a portion of the attacking line may be quickly mounted to conduct a more rapid pursuit and to intercept the enemy's retreat.

734. The defense: In defense, as in attack, the squadron is the tactical unit best suited to independent assignment. Defensive positions are usually divided into sections and a regiment assigned to each.

The colonel assigns to squadrons portions of the section allotted to the regiment.

The major locates such fire, communicating, and cover trenches and obstacles as are to be constructed. He assigns troops to construct them and details the troops to occupy them.

The major reinforces the firing line in accordance with the principles applicable to the attack and explained in connection therewith, maintaining no more rifles in the firing line than are necessary to prevent the enemy's advance.

The supply of ammunition in the defense being usually ample, fire is opened as soon as it is possible to break up the enemy's formation, stop his advance, or inflict material loss; but this rule must be modified to suit the ammunition supply.

If ordered or compelled to withdraw under hostile rifle fire, the reserve will be posted so as to cover the retirement of the firing line.

When the squadron is operating alone, the reserve must be strong and—all troop supports being in action—it must be fed sparingly into the firing line, especially if a counter attack is planned. Opportunities for counter attack should be sought at all times.

COMBAT EXERCISES.

735. In combat exercises the major will assume a situation and terminate the assault accordingly.

PLATE VIII.—THE SQUADRON.

(Pars. 676, 679.)

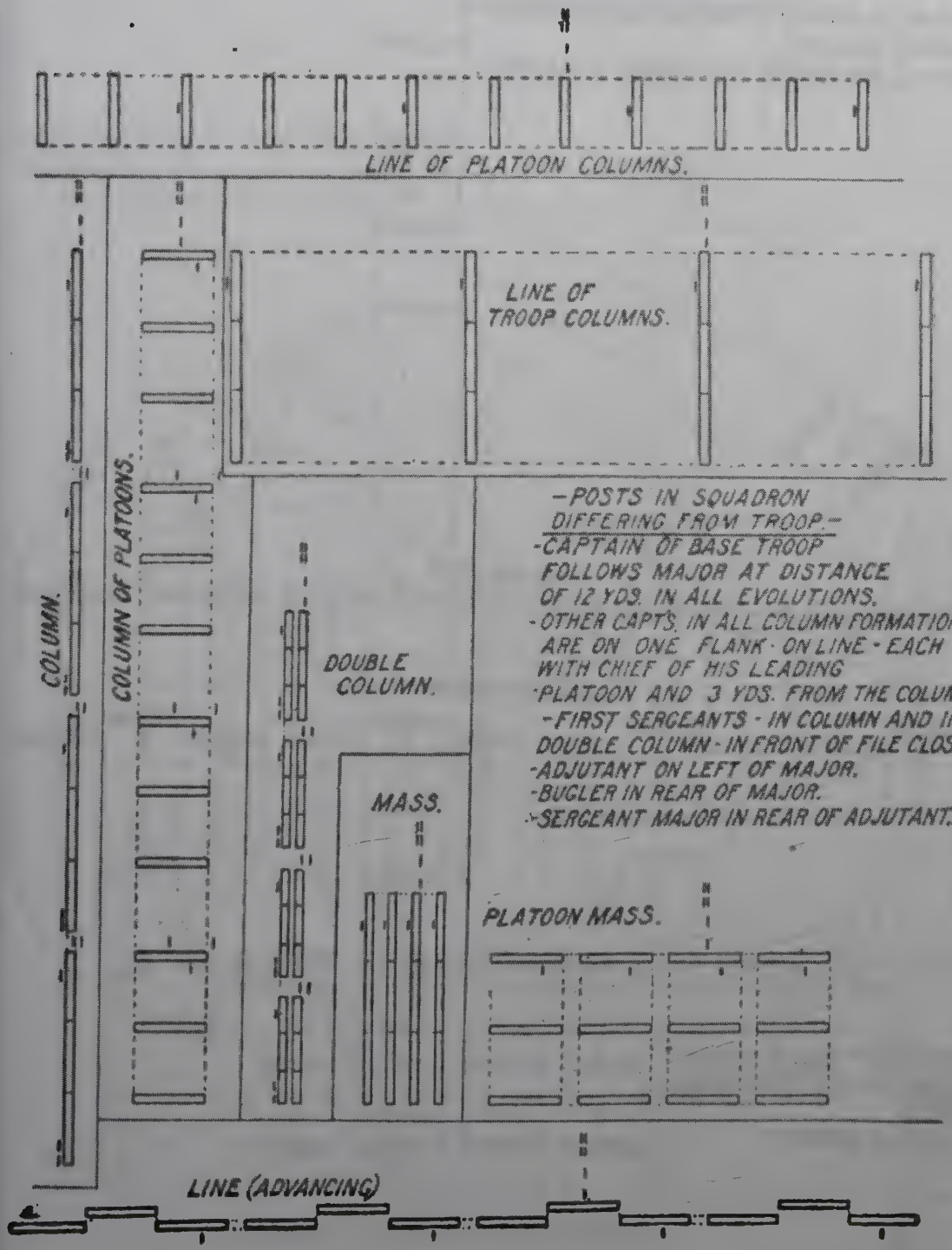

LINE OF PLATOON COLUMNS.
LINE OF TROOP COLUMNS.
COLUMN.
COLUMN OF PLATOONS.
DOUBLE COLUMN.
MASS.
PLATOON MASS.
LINE (ADVANCING)
—POSTS IN SQUADRON DIFFERING FROM TROOP.—
-CAPTAIN OF BASE TROOP FOLLOWS MAJOR AT DISTANCE OF 12 YDS. IN ALL EVOLUTIONS.
-OTHER CAPTS. IN ALL COLUMN FORMATIONS, ARE ON ONE FLANK · ON LINE · EACH WITH CHIEF OF HIS LEADING
-PLATOON AND 3 YDS. FROM THE COLUMN.
-FIRST SERGEANTS · IN COLUMN AND IN DOUBLE COLUMN · IN FRONT OF FILE CLOSERS.
-ADJUTANT ON LEFT OF MAJOR.
-BUGLER IN REAR OF MAJOR.
-SERGEANT MAJOR IN REAR OF ADJUTANT.

PLATE IX.—THE SQUADRON.

(Pars. 683, 698.)

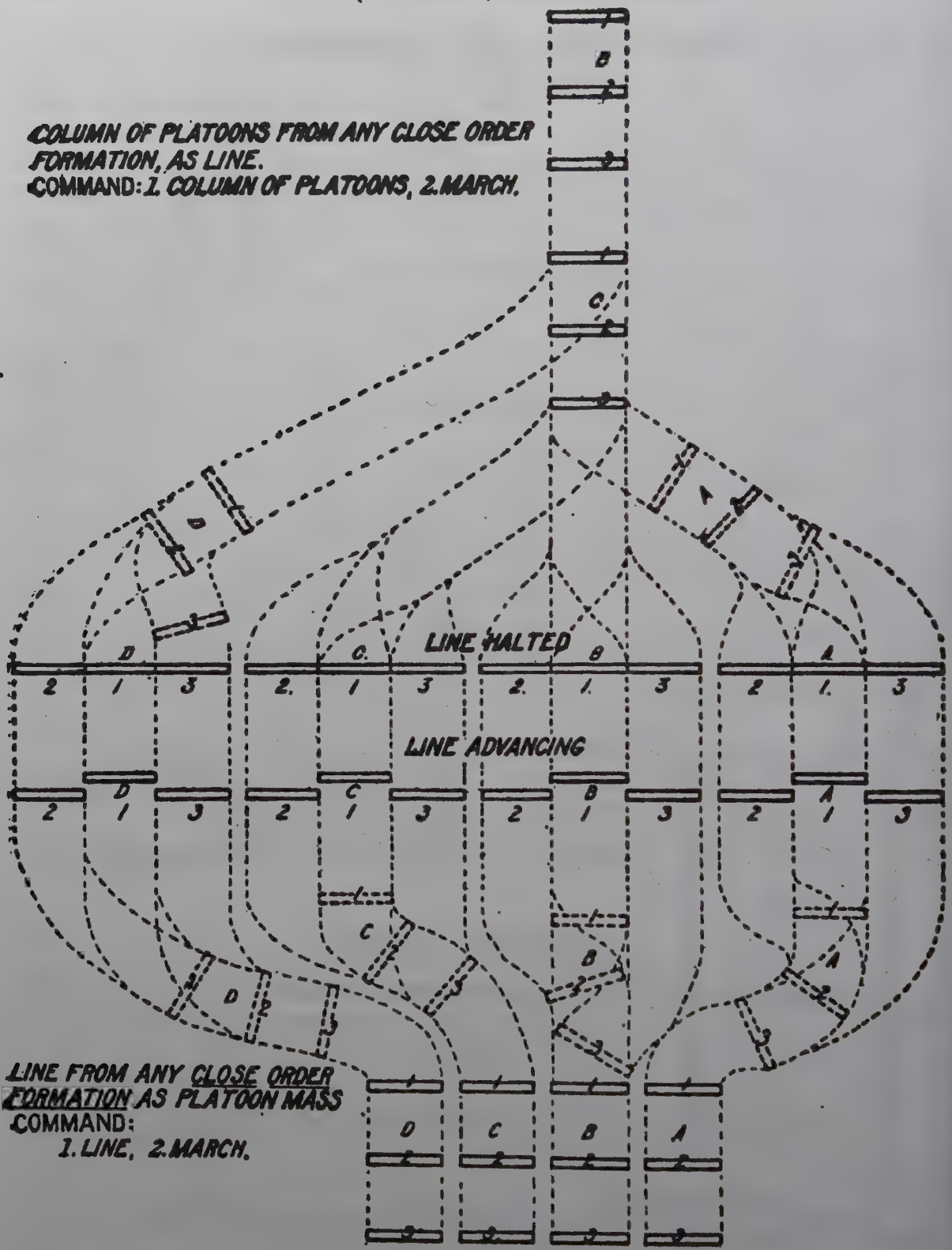
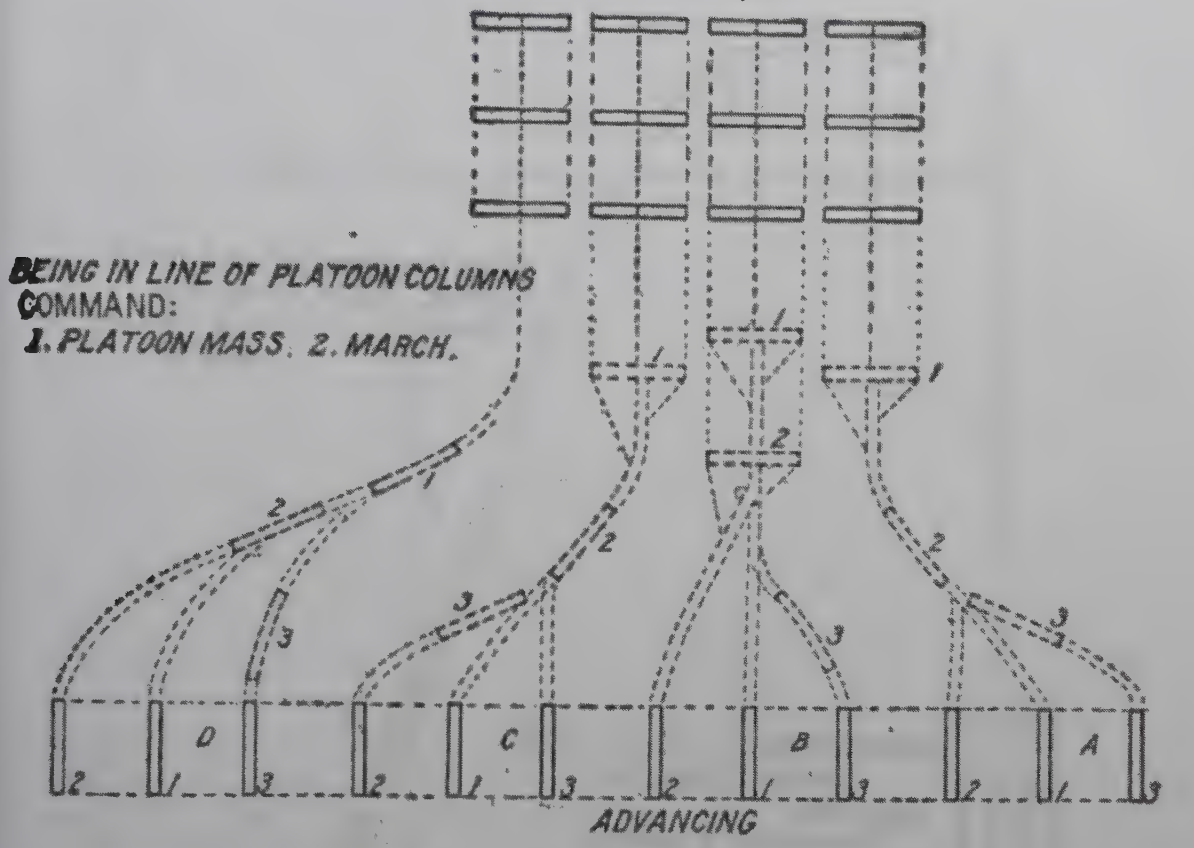

COLUMN OF PLATOONS FROM ANY CLOSE ORDER FORMATION, AS LINE.
COMMAND: 1. COLUMN OF PLATOONS, 2. MARCH.
LINE HALTED
LINE ADVANCING
LINE FROM ANY CLOSE ORDER FORMATION AS PLATOON MASS
COMMAND:
1. LINE, 2. MARCH.

PLATE X.—THE SQUADRON.

(Pars. 686, 690.)



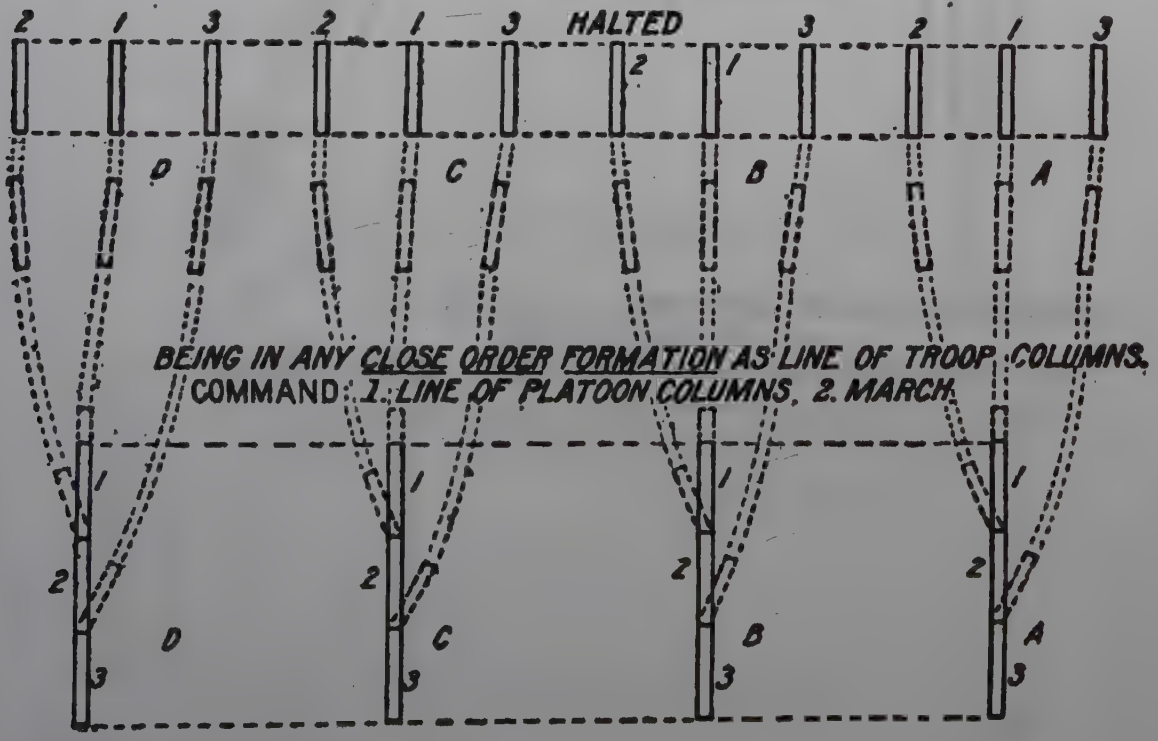


PLATE XI.—THE SQUADRON.

(Pars. 688, 696, 700.)

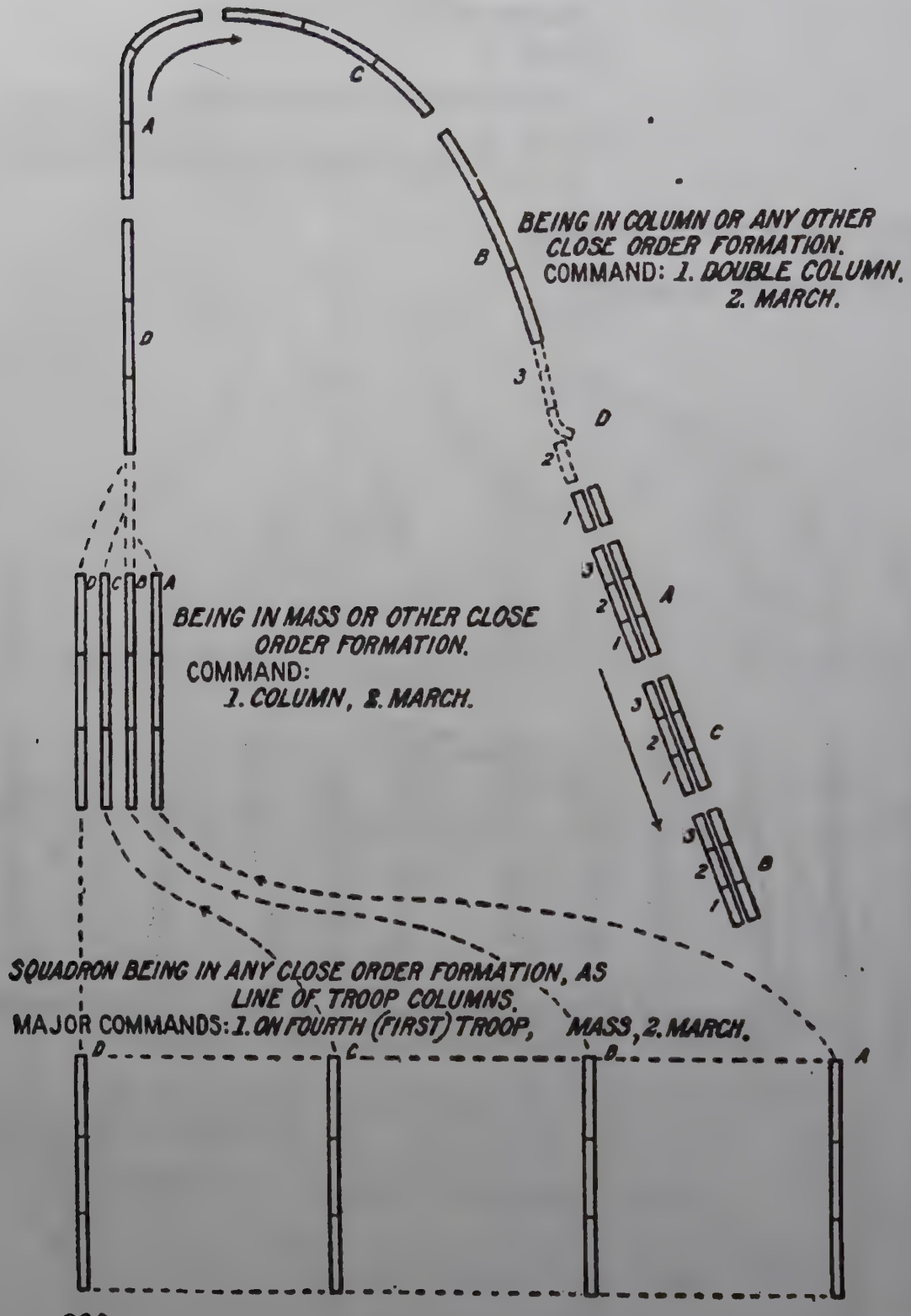

A
C
B
D
3
2
1
BEING IN COLUMN OR ANY OTHER CLOSE ORDER FORMATION.
COMMAND: 1. DOUBLE COLUMN. 2. MARCH.
D C B A
BEING IN MASS OR OTHER CLOSE ORDER FORMATION.
COMMAND:
1. COLUMN, 2. MARCH.
SQUADRON BEING IN ANY CLOSE ORDER FORMATION, AS LINE OF TROOP COLUMNS.
MAJOR COMMANDS: 1. ON FOURTH (FIRST) TROOP, MASS, 2. MARCH.

PLATE XII.—THE SQUADRON.

(Par. 703.)

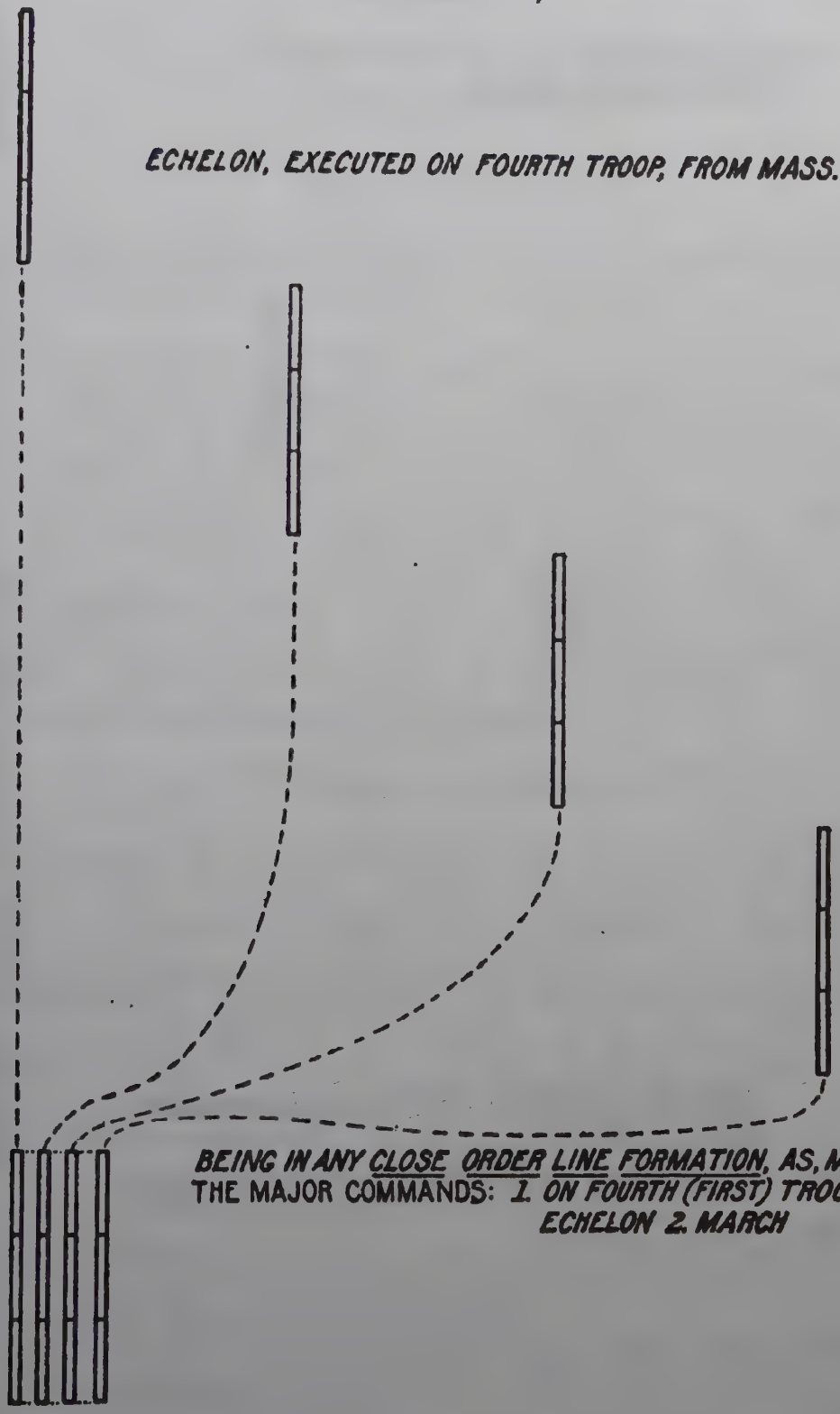
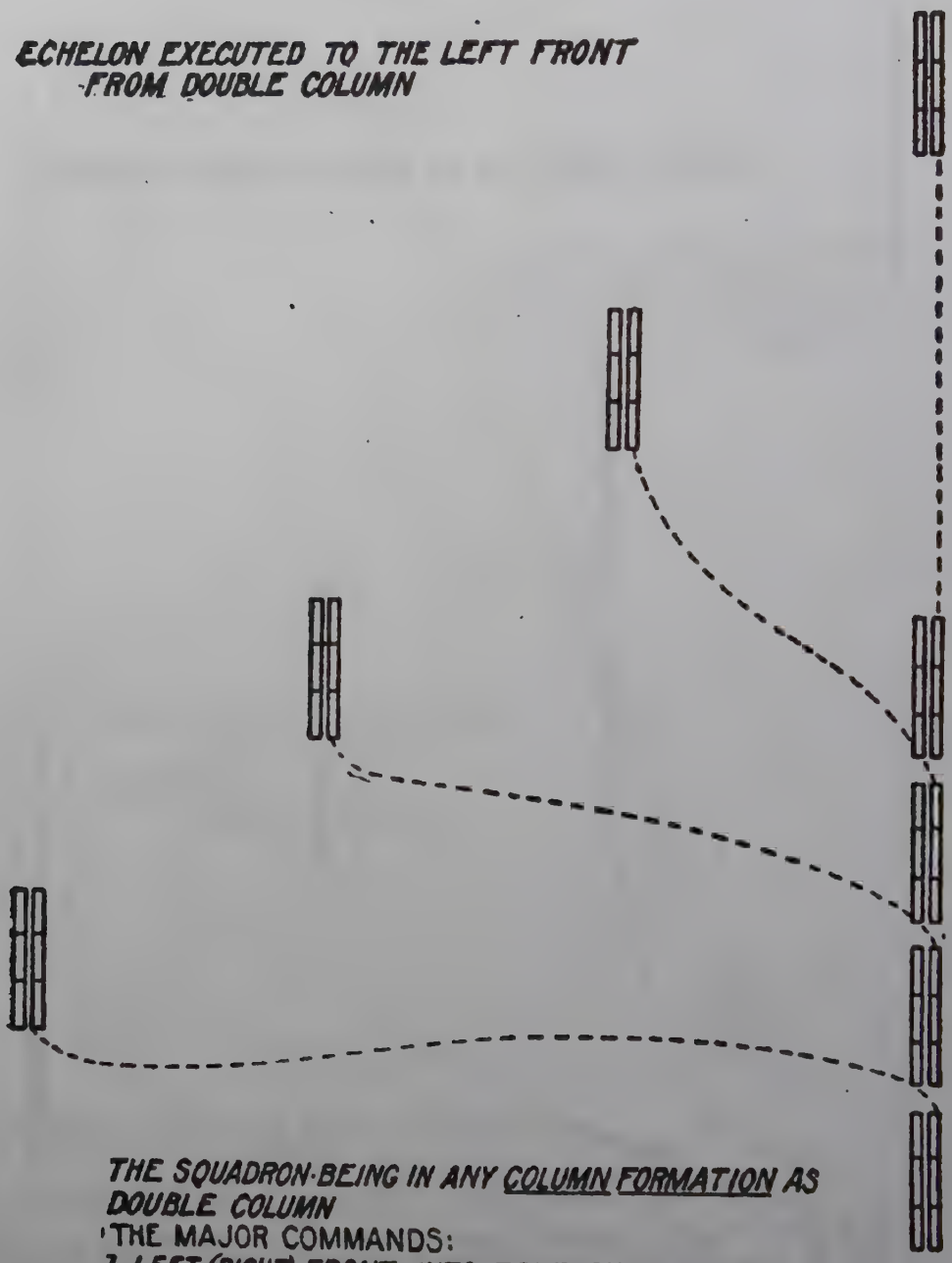

ECHELON, EXECUTED ON FOURTH TROOP, FROM MASS.
BEING IN ANY CLOSE ORDER LINE FORMATION, AS, MASS.
THE MAJOR COMMANDS: 1. ON FOURTH (FIRST) TROOP,
ECHELON 2. MARCH

PLATE XIII.—THE SQUADRON.

(Par. 704.)


ECHELON EXECUTED TO THE LEFT FRONT FROM DOUBLE COLUMN
THE SQUADRON BEING IN ANY COLUMN FORMATION AS DOUBLE COLUMN
THE MAJOR COMMANDS:
1 LEFT (RIGHT) FRONT INTO ECHELON 2. MARCH

THE REGIMENT.

Special Provisions.

736. The colonel as commander of the regiment is responsible for the preparedness of his regiment for war service (pars. 1–33).

For the purposes of drill and maneuver, the regiment consists of three squadrons and a machine-gun troop. The movements prescribed apply equally to a less number of squadrons.

In whatever formation the regiment may be, or in whatever direction it may be facing, the squadrons retain their permanent administrative designations of first squadron, second squadron, etc.; for convenience at drill, however, they are always designated when in line as right, center, or left squadron, and whenever in column, as leading, center, or rear squadron, these designations applying to their actual positions at the time in line or in column.

To Form the Regiment.

737. Except for ceremonies, the regiment is habitually formed in **line of masses.** It may be formed in **line of platoon masses,** in **column of fours,** or in **column of masses** by first notifying squadron commanders as to the formation desired.

At **adjutant's call,** sounded by the sergeant bugler, each squadron is formed by its major as in the squadron. The squadrons being formed and in the vicinity of and in rear of the line on which the regiment is to form, the colonel commands: **Form regiment** (or has his bugler sound **adjutant's call,** followed by **regimental call**), and with his staff takes post facing in the direction the line is to face.

The squadrons are led to their positions in succession from the rear, the leader of the base squadron halting it when he is 24 yards in rear of the colonel.

As soon as the last squadron is in line, the machine-gun troop takes its post.

The regiment is similarly formed in line of platoon masses, in column of fours, or in column of masses.

To form the regiment for a ceremony, *see* par. 810.

To Rest or Dismiss the Regiment.

738. The regiment is rested and called to attention as in the squadron, substituting *squadrons* for *troops* wherever used in the commands. To dismiss the regiment the colonel commands: **DISMISS YOUR SQUADRONS.** Each major conducts his squadron to its parade ground, where it is dismissed as prescribed.

Base Squadron.

(*See* par. 459.)

Posts of Officers, Etc.

739. *The colonel.*—Except in route column and in ceremonies, the major of the base squadron follows the colonel at a distance of 24 yards, when the latter is acting as leader of the regiment. When not leading, the colonel goes wherever his presence is necessary (par. 448).

740. *The lieutenant colonel.*—In all line formations the post of the lieutenant colonel is *30 yards* in front of the right flank of the regiment. In column his post is abreast of the major of the leading squadron and 6 yards from either flank.

During field exercises and marches the duties of the lieutenant colonel are to assist the colonel as the latter may direct, and, unless charged with regulating the pace and direction of the march (par. 454), he is not restricted to any particular post.

741. *Majors.*—In line formations posts are the same as in *The Squadron.* In column formations the post of the major of the leading squadron is as in *The Squadron;* the post of each of the others is abreast of his leading captain and 6 yards from the column on the same side as the captains who march on the flank of the column. (Pl. VIII.)

For posts at ceremonies and inspections, *see* pars. 798, 801, 812, 830, 883.

During route marches and field exercises majors go wherever they can best command their squadrons.

742. *Staff and noncommissioned staff.*—At all regimental exercises except ceremonies (par. 775), the adjutant rides on the colonel's left; other staff officers (if present) in line in order of rank from right to left, the senior 3 yards in rear of the colonel; the sergeant bugler 3 yards in rear of the staff officer on the right of the line, the sergeant major, other members of the noncommissioned staff (if present), and orderlies on his left.

743. *Band.*—In line and in line of columns the left of the front rank of the band is 12 yards to the right of, and in line with, the rank of the right squadron or leading subdivision. In column it is 12 yards in front of the officers of the leading subdivision.

744. *Guard to the standard.*—In line and in line of columns the guard is posted by itself, midway between the second and third troops of the center squadron, on line with the leading unit. If there be but two squadrons it is similarly posted between them. In column, it maintains a corresponding position in the center of the column. In route marches the guard to the standard is at the head of the column, in rear of the orderlies.

745. *Headquarters troop, supply troop.*—As organizations these troops have no assigned posts in regimental formations. In marches and in campaign the headquarters troop (except the members assigned to squadrons) marches and camps with the colonel; the supply troop marches and camps with the regimental train.

746. *Machine-gun troop.*—The position of the machine-gun troop is usually designated by the colonel. In the absence of such designation its position in all line formations except ceremonies (par. 783) is 30 yards in rear of the center. In all column formations, except inspections (par. 883), it is 30 yards in rear of the rear unit of the column. In campaign the machine-gun troop will be employed as the colonel may direct.

General Provisions as to Regimental Drills and Exercises.

(*See also* pars. 322–339 and 446–467.)

747. A squadron, while awaiting the completion of a movement by other squadrons, may be permitted by its major to stand *at ease.*

748. When leading in person and not certain that his commands will be heard or his signals observed, the colonel utilizes messengers.

749. When the leadership of the regiment is temporarily turned over to a junior, the staff and noncommissioned staff accompany the junior (par. 456).

750. If the colonel's orders are transmitted by messenger (whether an officer or an enlisted man) the messenger uses the formula, **Colonel's (Regimental commander's) orders, Sir,** and then repeats the message in the exact words in which given, or delivers the message if a written one.

751. The colonel signals or has sounded **attention** preparatory to giving an oral command or a signal. When the regiment is in more than one line, if the movement is to be executed by one of the lines only, *first* (*or such*) *line* is specified in the preparatory command; the commander of the designated line alone repeats and executes the command.

Regimental Formations.

(Plates XIV, XV, XVI.)

LINE FORMATIONS.

752. **Close order:**

(1) **Line** (exceptional for regiment, intervals between squadrons, 16 yards).

(2) **Line of platoon columns** (each squadron in line of platoon columns, all on line, squadron interval, platoon front plus 12 yards).

(3) **Line of troop columns** (each squadron in line of troop columns, all on line, squadron interval, troop front plus 12 yards).

(4) **Line of platoon masses** (the squadrons, each in platoon mass, are abreast with intervals of 16 yards).

(5) **Line of masses** (the squadrons, each in mass, are abreast with intervals of 16 yards).

COLUMN FORMATIONS.

(1) **Column of fours** (each squadron in column of fours, with distances between squadrons of 17 yards).

(2) **Double column** (each squadron in double column, squadron distance, 17 yards).

(3) **Column of platoons** (each squadron in column of platoons, squadron distance, platoon front plus 13 yards).

(4) **Column of masses** (each squadron in mass, squadron distance, 40 yards).

(5) **Column of troops** (each squadron in column of troops, squadron distance, troop front plus 13 yards; exceptional formation for evolutions; used for squadron and regimental inspections and for camps) (par. 476).

Echelon: As in squadron, a maneuver formation (normally the squadrons maintain the formations they had when the evolution was ordered).

Two (or more) lines: Maneuver formations.

Extended order: Maneuver formations through squadron commanders.

753. The command for the regiment to pass to the direction of march from any one of the foregoing close-order formations to any other such formation consists of the name of the formation desired followed by the command of execution. Thus, to form **column of fours** from any other close-order formation, as line of platoon columns, the command is: 1. **Column**, 2. **MARCH** (par. 478).

The commands for taking formations to a flank correspond to those in **The Squadron.**

Signals are the same as in **The Squadron** for formations of like names. For **Line of Masses** and **Line of Platoon Masses** the corresponding signals in **The Squadron** are preceded by the signal for **line; for column of masses,** by that for **column.**

Certain formations and evolutions are indicated in Plates XIV and XV, also an elementary regimental maneuver against an outlined enemy in Plate XVI. The formation for the charge is suggestive only and for greater clearness shows but one (the base) troop of the charging squadron, which latter actually consists of four troops (less one platoon) led by the major, the second and third platoons of each troop regulating on their own base platoons.

Route Marches.

754. The regiment takes route formation at the command, **ROUTE, ORDER.**

In route marches, the colonel rides at the head of the column with the adjutant on his left. They are followed by the lieutenant colonel, the senior surgeon (if there be more than one surgeon), and such other staff officers, except supply officers and junior surgeons, that may be attached to regimental headquarters. They are followed by such of the headquarters troop as do not properly ride with the squadron or the train in the following order: The regimental noncommissioned staff, the orderlies, the color guard, and the band. Regimental headquarters usually marches in column of twos.

The supply officers, the supply troop, and those members of the headquarters troop whose duties properly lie therewith, ride with the train. The surgeon, if there be but one; or, if there be more than one, the junior surgeons, ride with the sanitary train.

The major of the leading squadron follows regimental headquarters at 20 yards and the squadrons increase their distance to 20 yards (par. 706).

The Charge.

755. The mounted charge may be executed by the regiment in accordance with methods prescribed for the squadron, the colonel and staff taking posts on left of the major and staff of the base squadron.

The Assembly.

756. At the command, 1. **Assemble,** 2. **MARCH, the squadron** commanders form their squadrons (par. 707) and lead them toward the colonel. The regiment, without further commands, is formed as in par. 737. Should the command be, 1. **Squadrons assemble,** 2. **MARCH,** the squadrons are formed and held in place awaiting instructions from the colonel.

The Rally.

757. The command, **RALLY,** by the colonel is repeated as in **The Squadron.** Squadron commanders rally their squadrons (par. 708) and lead them toward the colonel, who gives such further instructions as circumstances require.

Extended Order.

758. Formations in extended order are taken as in the squadron; they are not taken directly by the regiment.

759. After the mechanism of the drill has been learned, every exercise, in so far as practicable, should be in the nature of a maneuver against an *outlined* or *represented* enemy. Such exercises should always be conducted under an assumed situation, which should have been carefully worked out beforehand, and each should be followed by a discussion of the principles involved (pars. 12–22). Fixed or prearranged methods of attack or defense are prohibited.

The value in action of the regiment as a tactical unit depends not only upon the actual efficiency of its component units but upon the facility with which the commander can handle such units in combination.

Dismounted Action.

760. When it is impracticable, owing to the tactical situation, to the nature of the terrain, or to other causes to accomplish by mounted action a mission assigned to the regiment, it resorts to dismounted combat.

Under tactical situations so considered may be:

(*a*) Occasions when the proximity of the opposing forces has practically reduced operations to those of a siege, and the enemy's numbers and dispositions prevent turning his flanks.

(*b*) Instances in which important defensive positions at a distance from our main body have been seized and must be held pending the arrival of our infantry.

(*c*) Forcing a defensive position held by the enemy in order to clear the way for further advance.

(*d*) In pursuit, to take up positions on the enemy's line of retreat.

(*e*) In retreat, to take up corresponding positions in order to delay his advance.

Under nature of the terrain there may be:

(*a*) Country that is densely wooded, exceedingly rough, or very marshy.

Under other causes may be classed conditions such as:

(*a*) That the horses have become so worn down by service conditions as to render mounted action inadvisable.

(*b*) That the time may have been too short to train the regiment for effective mounted action.

761. The colonel (subject to orders from higher authority if the regiment be not acting alone) in his orders gives his squadron commanders information as to the situation and the proposed plan of action, he designates the troops (ordinarily a squadron) for the regimental reserve, and may designate the number of troops of each of the other squadrons for the firing line. The remaining troops of such squadrons constitute the squadron supports under their respective majors and are used by them in reinforcing their firing lines after the troop supports have been absorbed (par. 726).

The regiment is deployed by the colonel's orders.

The fire attack in each squadron is conducted by its major, captains, and lieutenants as in **The Squadron.** The colonel, in attack, designates the base squadron and the general direction of the enemy; in defense, the portions of the line to be held by each squadron and, in general, the sector to be observed by each; in both attack and defense, the employment of the machine guns should be prescribed and the position of the reserve indicated.

The Regiment in the Brigade.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.

762. The regiment as part of a larger Cavalry unit conforms to the principles heretofore laid down, except in so far as modifications are necessary in order to act harmoniously as a fraction of the whole.

A brigade reserve is always held out by the brigade commander, thus minimizing the necessity for a regimental reserve (which is always required when the regiment is acting alone). The regimental reserve should, however, be retained for use as a local reserve by the colonel and as a support to his own attacking line in case of need.

THE BRIGADE.

763. The typical Cavalry brigade is a tactical unit and consists of a headquarters and three regiments of Cavalry, commanded by a brigadier general.

Brigade Formations.

764. The brigade is formed in line of masses, in line of platoon masses, or in column of masses; intervals and distances may be varied to suit the occasion.

Regiments in a brigade are posted in line and in column as the brigade commander may direct. For convenience (such) regiment is said to be the leading, center, or rear regiment if in column, or the right, center, or left regiment if in line.

In route marches the brigade moves by regiment and, if possible, on parallel roads.

Field Exercises.

765. The brigade does not engage in prescribed drills, but is maneuvered by regiments in field exercises which are conducted by tactical orders formulated to suit the assumed situation.

766. The general's orders are transmitted by *agents of communication;* as a rule each regiment detaches for this purpose an officer and a bugler for duty at brigade headquarters.

767. The brigade is maneuvered by *tactical orders* sent to regimental commanders.

THE DIVISION.

768. The typical Cavalry division is both an administrative and a tactical unit, and consists of a headquarters, three Cavalry brigades, one regiment of Field Artillery (horse), one battalion of mounted engineers, one field signal battalion (mounted), one aero squadron, one ammunition train, one supply train, one engineer train, and one sanitary train, and is commanded by a major general.

769. Batteries of horse artillery that accompany brigades when detached are, when the division is united, formed with their regiment.

770. Brigades in the division have designations corresponding to those of regiments in brigade and the same principles as in the brigade apply to both field and combat exercises.

771. Positions of the Artillery and of special units are prescribed by the division commander.

PLATE XIV.—THE REGIMENT.

(Pars. 752, 753.)

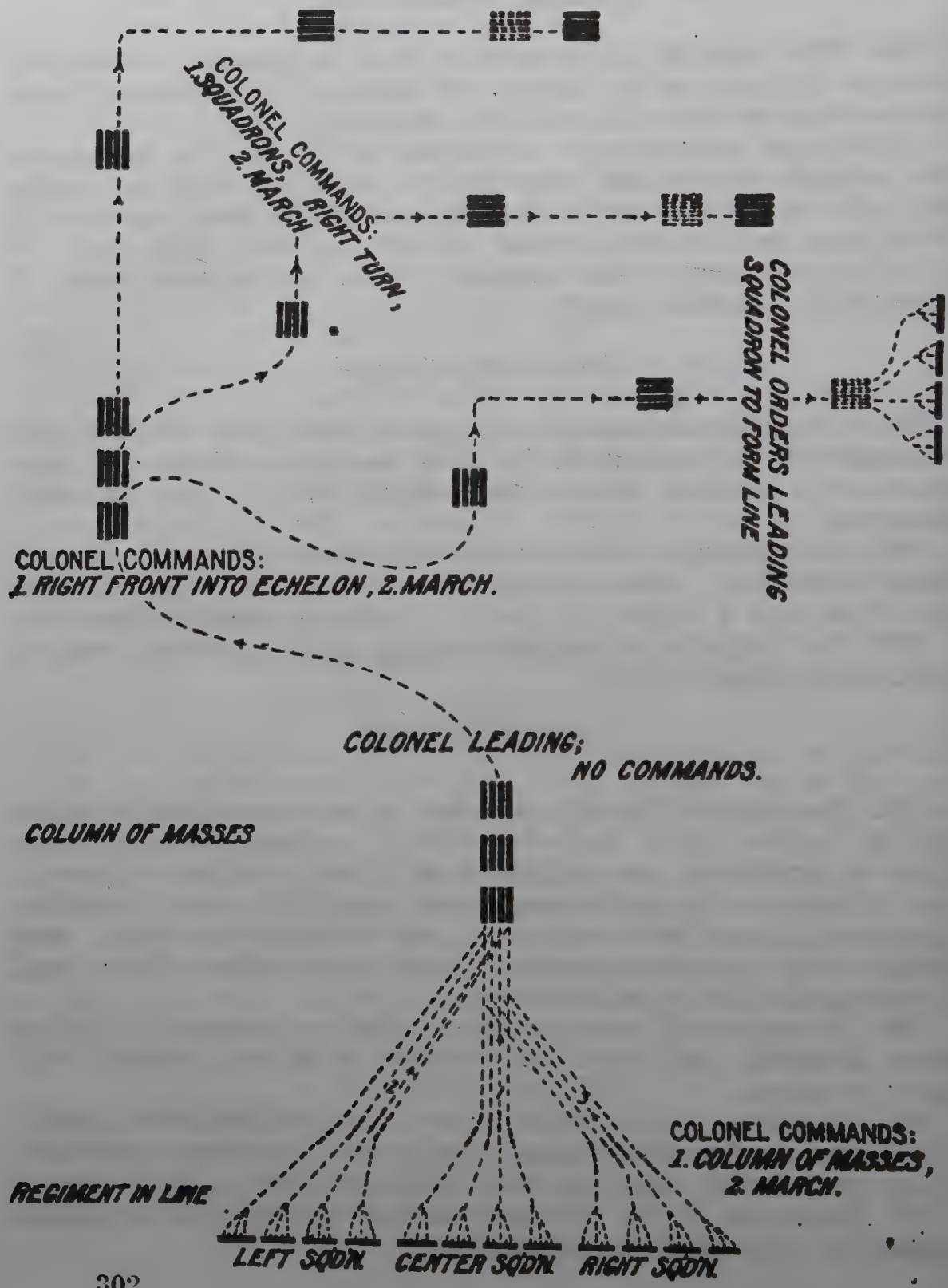


PLATE XV.—THE REGIMENT.

(Pars. 752, 753.)

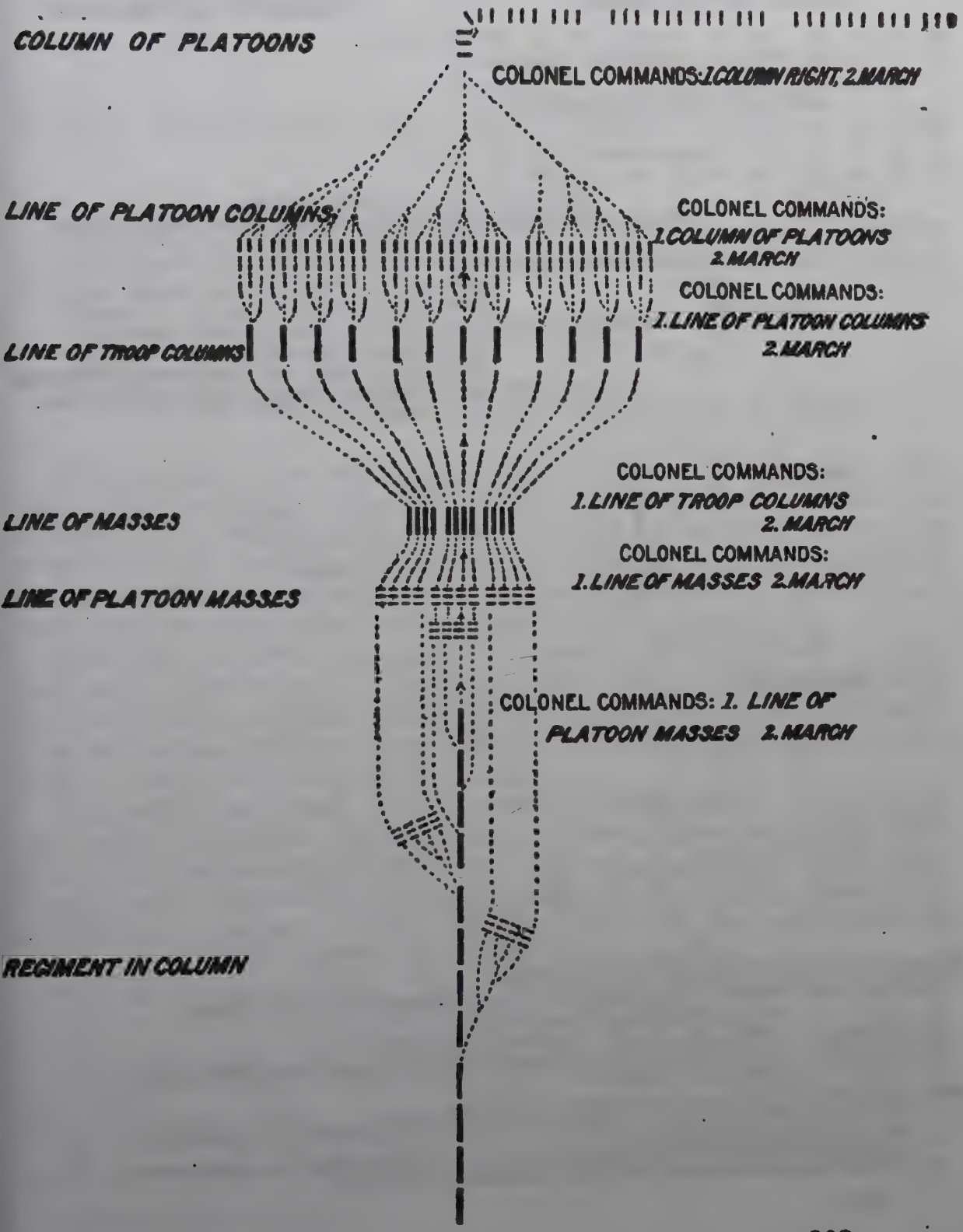
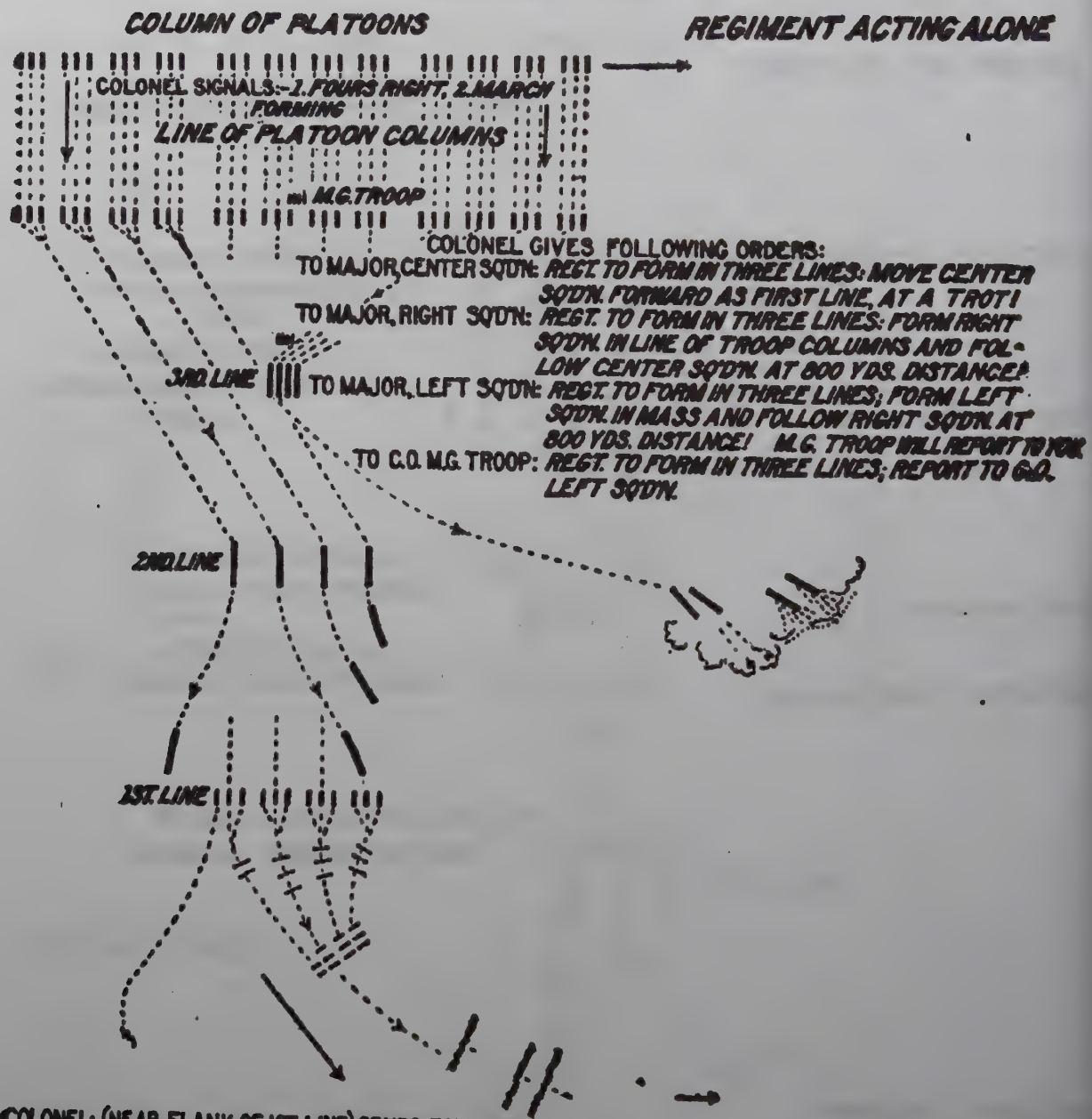

COLUMN OF PLATOONS
COLONEL COMMANDS: 1. COLUMN RIGHT, 2. MARCH
LINE OF PLATOON COLUMNS
COLONEL COMMANDS: 1. COLUMN OF PLATOONS 2. MARCH
COLONEL COMMANDS: 1. LINE OF PLATOON COLUMNS 2. MARCH
LINE OF TROOP COLUMNS
COLONEL COMMANDS: 1. LINE OF TROOP COLUMNS 2. MARCH
LINE OF MASSES
COLONEL COMMANDS: 1. LINE OF MASSES 2. MARCH
LINE OF PLATOON MASSES
COLONEL COMMANDS: 1. LINE OF PLATOON MASSES 2. MARCH
REGIMENT IN COLUMN

PLATE XVI.—THE REGIMENT.

(Pars. 752, 753.)


COLUMN OF PLATOONS
REGIMENT ACTING ALONE
COLONEL SIGNALS:—1. FOURS RIGHT, 2. MARCH
FORMING
LINE OF PLATOON COLUMNS
M.G. TROOP
COLONEL GIVES FOLLOWING ORDERS:
TO MAJOR, CENTER SQDN: REGT. TO FORM IN THREE LINES: MOVE CENTER SQDN. FORWARD AS FIRST LINE, AT A TROT!
TO MAJOR, RIGHT SQDN: REGT. TO FORM IN THREE LINES: FORM RIGHT SQDN. IN LINE OF TROOP COLUMNS AND FOLLOW CENTER SQDN. AT 600 YDS. DISTANCE!
3RD LINE
TO MAJOR, LEFT SQDN: REGT. TO FORM IN THREE LINES; FORM LEFT SQDN. IN MASS AND FOLLOW RIGHT SQDN. AT 600 YDS. DISTANCE! M.G. TROOP WILL REPORT TO YOU.
TO C.O. M.G. TROOP: REGT. TO FORM IN THREE LINES; REPORT TO C.O. LEFT SQDN.
2ND LINE
1ST. LINE
COLONEL: (NEAR FLANK OF 1ST. LINE) SENDS FOLLOWING:
TO C.O. 1ST. LINE: FORM PLATOON MASS AND CHARGE ENEMY TO LEFT FRONT. 2ND. LINE WILL SUPPORT YOU!
TO C.O. 2ND. LINE: FIRST LINE ABOUT TO CHARGE, SUPPORT IT!
TO C.O. 3RD. LINE: ACT AS REGIMENTAL RESERVE: MOVE TO SHELTER OF WOODS ON YOUR LEFT FRONT!
NOTE: C.O. 1ST. LINE DETACHES A PLATOON AS RIGHT FLANK GUARD.
C.O. 2ND. LINE, UPON RECEIVING ORDER, DECIDES TO FOLLOW FIRST LINE IN ECHELON OF COLUMNS, WITH ONE TROOP AS RIGHT FLANK GUARD.
C.O. 3RD. LINE, UPON REACHING WOODS, RECONNOITRES TO FRONT AND FINDING FIRE ACTION POSSIBLE PLACES THE MACHINE GUNS AND TWO TROOPS DISMOUNTED ON THE LINE.

PART VI.—CEREMONIES, INSPECTIONS, AND MUSTER.

772. The prescribed ceremonies are reviews, parades, escorts of honor, funeral escorts, escorts to the standard, and guard mounting.

General Rules for Reviews.

(When applicable to other ceremonies, reference is made.)

773. Reviews are ceremonies tendered to high civil or military officials, or to foreign dignitaries; they may also be ordered by commanders for the purpose of making a general inspection of the arms, clothing, equipment, and personnel of an organization, as well as a test of horsemanship, condition and endurance of mounts, precision of evolutions, etc.

774. The reviewing ground is usually rectangular in shape and of a size suited to the command; the troops are formed on the middle portion of one of the long sides facing the field, the reviewing officer's post being at the middle point of the opposite side and facing the troops.

775. Adjutant, staff, and noncommissioned staff: As soon as the unit has formed on the line and been reported (pars. 797, 810), its commander, staff, and noncommissioned staff turn about and take corresponding positions facing to the front, except that the adjutant's post is not with the commanding officer (par. 742), but on the right of the staff.

776. Band, field music: The band of an organization plays while the reviewing officer is passing in front and in rear of the organization. In the march past, it changes direction at the markers without command and immediately after passing the reviewing officer, turns out of the column, takes post in front of and facing the reviewing officer and continues to play until its regiment has passed. In a review of more than one

regiment when the band of the following regiment arrives within 100 yards of the reviewing officer the band of the preceding regiment ceases playing and joins its regiment. The band of the following regiment then begins to play. Whenever the regimental standard salutes in formations for review, the *National Anthem* will be played by the band or *To the Standard,* the *General's March* and *flourishes* will be sounded by the buglers, according to the rank of the personage saluted; also in passing in review with the band halted in front of the reviewing officer, the band continues to play while the *flourishes* and *march* are sounded by the buglers with the band (pars. 908, 922).

When the command is to pass at an increased gait, the band remains in front of the reviewing officer and continues to play until the column has completed its first change of direction after passing the reviewing officer. As soon as the increased gait is taken up by the column, the band plays in appropriate time. Upon completion of the review, the band returns to the position it occupied before marching in review or is dismissed as may be directed.

If, after the first march past, a formation with a front so wide as to interfere with the band is ordered, the latter takes position 12 yards to the right of and on line with the reviewing officer.

When mounted, the band is usually formed in column of fours; dismounted, it is formed in two or more ranks with sufficient intervals between the musicians and distances between the ranks to permit the free use of instruments.

The buglers, when united, form with and in rear of the band, their intervals and distances corresponding to those of the band. When the band is not present, the posts, movements, and duties of the united buglers are similar to those prescribed for the band. The posts of the band, dismounted, correspond to those when mounted.

The post of the first sergeant (drum major) of the band is 3 yards in front of the center of the band; he gives the signals for its movements; when signals are not used, the band is marched as explained for The Squad, substituting in the command the word "band" for "squad."

Signals for movement of the band correspond to the saber signals as far as practicable.

777. Brigades and larger bodies: In review of brigades and larger or mixed commands, the commander of each regiment or corresponding unit will maintain the gait and pace after passing the reviewing officer and, unless otherwise ordered, will leave the column and return to camp or stables by the most practicable route, so conducting its march after leaving the column as not to interfere with the march of the units in rear.

778. Commanding officer and staff: When the commanding officer of the unit being reviewed faces the line to give commands, the staff, noncommissioned staff, and orderlies do not change position.

During each march past the commanding officer of troops and his staff, after passing the reviewing officer, turn out of the column, the commanding officer takes post at the right of the reviewing officer and the members of his staff take post on the right of the reviewing officer's staff; sabers are not returned. When the rear element of his command has passed, the commanding officer of troops, without changing his position, salutes the reviewing officer; he and the members of his staff then rejoin the command.

If the person reviewing the command be not mounted the commanding officer and his staff on turning out of the column, after passing the reviewing officer, dismount, preparatory to taking post. In such case the salute of the commanding officer, prior to rejoining his command, is made with the hand before mounting.

779. Formations: To secure uniformity and precision of movement platoons should be equalized throughout, as nearly as practicable, avoiding, however, transfers from one troop to another.

In forming for review the troops may be placed in any authorized line formation. The squadron is usually formed in line; it may be in platoon mass; the regiment is usually in line of platoon masses or line of masses; the brigade in line of masses. If the ground is restricted formations and movements must be adapted to the space and intervals and distances reduced.

780. Gaits: Mounted troops pass in review the first time around at a walk and thereafter at such gaits as the review-

ing officer may direct. For gaits, if formations are changed (par. 337).

781. Guidon: At all ceremonies the post of the guidon is on the right of the rank if the troop is in line, or on the right of the leading platoon if it is in column of platoons.

782. Headquarters troop: The organization, as such, does not attend ceremonies, inspections, and muster with the regiment; unless excused, all enlisted men, however, attend, forming on line with and to the left of the regimental noncommissioned staff. For formation of the headquarters troop by itself for inspection and muster *see* par. 886.

783. Machine-gun troop: When the machine-gun troop is present at review or other ceremonies it maintains its habitual formation. Its post, in line, is 16 yards to the left of the rank; in column, 16 yards in rear of the last element.

784. March in review: The first march past is always made at a walk and (except in brigades and larger units) in column of platoons. The reviewing officer may direct subsequent passings in review at any gait or in any authorized formation. If he orders the formation changed the evolution is made immediately after the second change of direction beyond the reviewing stand. In commands comprising more than one arm the width of front in the march past is made, as nearly as is practicable, the same for all arms. Troops march in review with the reviewing officer on the right or the left of the column; in the latter case the commander and his staff, on turning out of the column, take post as prescribed, but to the left of the reviewing officer. The march past will be so regulated that the different arms when passing the reviewing officer will be separated by a distance of about 100 yards.

785. Markers: The adjutant posts mounted men, or otherwise marks the points where the column is to change direction in such manner that the right flank of the column in passing will be about 10 yards from the reviewing officer.

786. Precedence of troops, squadrons, regiments, and brigades: On occasions of ceremony, except funerals and reviews of large forces, troops will be arranged from right to left in line and from head to rear in column in the following order: First, Infantry; second, Field Artillery; third, Cavalry. Artillery, Engineer, and Signal Corps troops, equipped as Infantry, are posted as Infantry; dismounted Cavalry and Ma-

rines attached to the Army are on the left of the Infantry in the order named; companies or detachments of the Hospital Corps and mounted detachments of Engineers are assigned to places according to the nature of the ceremony; mounted companies and detachments of the Signal Corps are posted as Cavalry. When Cavalry and Field Artillery are reviewed together without other troops, the Artillery is posted on the left. Troops in column in funeral escorts will be arranged from head to rear in the following order: First, Cavalry; second, Field Artillery; third, Infantry. In the same arm Regulars, militia in the service of the United States, and Volunteers are posted in line from right to left or in column from head to rear, in the order named. In reviews of large bodies of troops the different arms and classes are posted at the discretion of the commanding general, due regard being paid to their position in camp. On all other occasions troops of all classes are posted at the discretion of the general or senior commander. (Par. 6, A. R.)

787. When forming for ceremonies, the troops in the squadrons, the squadrons in the regiment, and the regiments in the brigade are posted from right to left in line and from front to rear in column in the order of rank of their respective commanders present in the formation, the senior on the right in line or at the head in column.

788. In commands larger than a brigade, the order in column or in line is as prescribed by the general commanding. When an organization is to be reviewed by an inspector junior in rank to the commanding officer, the commanding officer receives the review and is accompanied by the inspector, who takes post on his left.

789. **Reviewing officer and his staff:** The post of the reviewing officer, usually opposite the center of the line, is marked by a flag.

790. Officers of the same or higher grade and distinguished personages invited to accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on his left; their staffs and orderlies place themselves, respectively, on the left of the staff and orderlies of the reviewing officer; all others who accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on the left of his staff, their orderlies in rear. The flag of a general officer is on the right of his

orderly. A staff officer is designated to escort distinguished personages and to indicate to them their proper positions.

791. The troops being in readiness, the reviewing officer, as an indication to the commanding officer to proceed with the review, rides alone a few steps toward him and receives the salute; then, accompanied or not by his staff, he either joins the commanding officer and rides around the troops or instead thereof directs the commanding officer to march the troops in review, he (the reviewing officer) returning to his post at the flag.

When passing around the troops (which may be dispensed with, if desired), the reviewing officer and those accompanying him salute the standard when passing in front of it, the standard not saluting. The reviewing officer and others at the reviewing stand salute the standard as it passes; the reviewing officer returns the salute of the commanding officer of troops only. Those who accompany the reviewing officer salute only the standard.

792. When riding around the troops, the reviewing officer may direct his staff, flag, and orderlies to remain at the post of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag shall accompany him. In either case the commanding officer alone accompanies the reviewing officer. If the reviewing officer is accompanied by his entire staff, the staff officers of the commander place themselves on the right of the staff of the reviewing officer.

793. Salutes by standards and guidons: The standards, national and regimental, are with the squadron designated by the colonel, usually the center, the color guard being posted on line with the rank and midway between the second and third troops; in line of columns the guard is similarly placed on line with the leading subdivisions. In column formations it occupies a corresponding position near the center of the column, equally distant from the flanks. When but two squadrons are present, the color guard is posted between the squadrons.

794. Each guidon and, when the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each regimental standard salutes at the command, *Present saber*, and again in the first march past. The troops may pass several times at different gaits, in which case the salutes are rendered the first time only. In

the first march past, at the walk, all officers and all commanders of platoons, the noncommissioned staff, and the guidons salute; those saluting turn the head and eyes toward the reviewing officer (par. 922).

795. Supply troop: The supply troop attends with the field train all reviews, inspections, and musters at which the train is present. At other such ceremonies officers and men, unless excused, attend individually, the officers as members of the colonel's staff and the men in a group on line with and to the left of the headquarters troop detachment (par. 888).

796. The national standard renders no salutes.

To Form the Squadron for Ceremonies.

797. In line: Each troop, having been formed, mounted, and inspected by its captain, proceeds to the place designated for the formation, and is halted in line in rear of the ground on which the squadron line is to be formed.

The buglers and band, if there be one, take position in rear and a little to the right of the point at which the right of the line is to rest after the squadron has been formed.

The adjutant, accompanied by the sergeant major, the latter on his left, precedes the troops to the place of the formation. When the troops, band, and field music are all on the ground, the adjutant signals the field music to sound **ADJUTANT'S CALL.** The adjutant and sergeant major then post themselves, facing each other, the adjutant a few yards outside of the point where the right, and the sergeant major a few yards outside of the point where the left, of the squadron is to rest.

The squadron is formed on its right troop (par 787), which approaches from the rear, and is led toward the line established by the adjutant and sergeant major. The troop is halted a little short of the line and the captain followed by the guidon turns about and faces it. The platoon leaders then signal **disregard** and place themselves on the line. The adjutant aligns the platoon leaders on the sergeant major, and when their positions have been verified, the captain commands **DRESS** and **FRONT** (par. 611). The guidon then takes post on the right of the rank after which the captain turns about and takes post accurately in front of the leader of his base platoon. The other troops are led successively, in their

proper order from right to left, to their places in line, and are aligned as prescribed for the base troop.

798. During the formation of the line the band plays. As the right troop is approaching its place in line, the band and buglers advance and take post 12 yards from the right of the squadron, with its front rank in line with the squadron front. When the last troop has arrived on the line and the color guard if present has taken its post (par. 793), the band ceases playing.

The major takes post in front of the center of the line and facing the squadron at a convenient distance, generally about half its front.

When the adjutant has aligned the platoon leaders of the last troop, he turns to the front, and passing in front of the line of captains, moves at the trot or gallop to a point midway between the center of the line and the major, faces toward the line, and halts.

The sergeant major joins the major at the trot or gallop.

When the alignment is complete the adjutant turns to the front, salutes the major, and reports: *Sir, the squadron is formed.*

The major returns the salute and directs the adjutant: *Take your post, Sir.*

The adjutant moves at the trot or gallop and takes post on the left of the major, passing by his right and rear.

799. **In platoon mass:** The squadron is formed in platoon mass on the same principles as in line. As the base troop approaches the line, distances in column of platoons will be carefully corrected. The leaders of the rear platoons of the troops other than the base halt their platoons abreast of the corresponding platoon of the base troop. The adjutant aligns the leaders of the leading platoons only, but before leaving the right of the squadron he verifies the general alignment of the rear platoons and directs any changes necessary to secure a good appearance. The post of each guidon at the command **FRONT** is on the right of the leading platoon of the troop.

800. In forming the squadron for ceremonies, the troops will complete any necessary change in troop formation at least 30 yards in rear of the line on which the squadron is formed.

Squadron Review.

801. In line: The squadron having been formed and reported to its commander (par. 797), he and his staff take their posts (par. 775). The reviewing officer moves a few steps toward the major and halts, the major then turns to the right about and, facing the squadron, commands: 1. **Draw,** 2. **SABER;** 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER,** and again turns to the right about and salutes the reviewing officer (par. 794).

802. The reviewing officer returns the salute, the major turns about as before, commands: 1. **Carry,** 2. **SABER,** and again turns about, facing to the front. The reviewing officer, if he does not desire to ride around the line, returns at once to his post and the march past follows; otherwise he approaches the major, who then joins the reviewing officer, salutes him, and riding on his right both proceed to the right of the band and ride around the squadron, passing in front of the troop officers to the left of the line and in rear of the file closers and band in returning to right.

803. When the major joins the reviewing officer preparatory to riding around the squadron each captain proceeds to the right of his troop and takes post facing to the front 6 yards in front of the guidon.

804. As the reviewing officer approaches the right of each troop, its captain joins him, salutes with the saber, and, riding on his left, accompanies him as far as the left of his troop. When the reviewing officer in returning passes in rear of a troop its captain rides on his left as far as the right of the troop, whence he returns to his post in front of the leader of his base platoon.

805. On arriving again at the right of the line, the major salutes, halts, and when the reviewing officer and staff have passed moves direct to his post in front of the squadron, faces it, and commands: 1. **Platoons right turn,** 2. **MARCH;** 3. **Squadron,** 4. **HALT.**

806. The band, at the command **march,** moves (without playing) to the front sufficiently to be directly in front of the leading platoon when the latter has changed direction to the right; it then executes **column right,** and is halted when 12 yards in front of the leader of the first platoon (par. 776).

807. The major then commands: 1. **Pass in review**, 2. **Forward**, 3. **MARCH**, and, followed by his staff, sergeant major, bugler, and orderlies, takes post in column 24 yards in front of the band and leads the column. When at 6 yards from the reviewing officer, the major and his staff salute together, turning the head and eyes toward the reviewing officer; the staff return to the carry with the major when they have passed 6 yards beyond the reviewing officer. The major then signals **disregard** and, followed by his staff, sergeant major, bugler, and orderlies, leaves the column and joins the reviewing officer (par. 778). When the squadron arrives near its original position in column the major gives appropriate commands for taking up the gait directed and the squadron again passes in review as before (par. 784). The review terminates when the column has passed the reviewing officer for the last time; the band then ceases to play and, unless otherwise directed by the major, is dismissed; the major and his staff rejoin the squadron. The squadron then executes such movements as the reviewing officer may direct or is marched to its parade ground and dismissed.

808. **In platoon mass**: With the following exceptions, the rules for the review in line apply:

(*a*) The major's command (par. 807) is: 1. **Pass in review**, 2. **Column of platoons**, 3. **MARCH**. The base troop moves to the front and is led at once to the right by its captain; the other troops follow successively; the column moves out without halting, maintaining its distance from the band.

(*b*) The band (par. 806), at the command **MARCH**, moves (playing) to the front, executes **column right**, and is not halted.

809. **The march in review**: In case the reviewing officer, after the first march past in column of platoons, directs that the squadron be marched in review in platoon mass at a designated gait, the major forms the squadron in *platoon mass* on the long side of the reviewing field opposite the reviewing officer. Similarly other required formations or gaits are taken up.

To Form the Regiment for Ceremonies.

810. **In line of platoon masses**: With the following exceptions and additions, the formation corresponds to that of the squadron:

(*a*) At adjutant's call each squadron, formed in platoon mass (par. 799), is held in rear of the line on which the regiment is to form.

(*b*) At *adjutant's call*, followed by *regimental call*, the regimental adjutant and regimental sergeant major take posts facing each other at a distance apart slightly greater than the front of the regiment and establish the line on which the regiment is to form.

(*c*) As the senior major (par. 787) leads his squadron toward the right of the line, its squadron adjutant and squadron sergeant major ride ahead and take posts on the line, facing the regimental adjutant at a distance apart equal to the front of the squadron, the adjutant on the right. Their positions are verified by the regimental adjutant.

(*d*) The squadron, in proper alignment, is halted with the chiefs of its leading platoons on the line established by its adjutant and sergeant major. The other squadrons in succession are similarly placed on the line, and the machine-gun troop takes its post (par. 783). When the last squadron is halted, the regimental sergeant major moves at a gallop to his post (par. 742).

(*e*) No commands for dressing are given. After verifying the general alignment of the rear platoons, the regimental adjutant moves rapidly to a point midway between the center of the regiment and the colonel, faces the regiment, and commands, **POSTS**, at which the squadron adjutants and sergeants major take their posts (par. 676). He then faces to the front, salutes, and reports as in the squadron and takes his post (par. 775).

811. In line: The regiment is formed in accordance with the same principles.

Regimental Review.

812. In line of platoon masses: The regiment is formed and reported to its commander (par. 810), after which the commander and staff take their posts (par. 775).

With the following exceptions, the review corresponds to that of the squadron.

(*a*) In case the reviewing officer indicates his intention of riding around the regiment with the colonel, each major moves

to the right of his squadron and, as the reviewing officer approaches, joins him, salutes with the saber, and, riding on his left, accompanies him, passing in front of the line of captains as far as the left of his squadron. When the reviewing officer, in returning, passes in rear of a squadron, its major rides on his left as far as the right of the squadron, whence he returns to his post. Captains remain at their posts.

(*b*) To march the regiment in review in column of platoons (first march past), the colonel commands: 1. **Pass in review,** 2. **On right squadron, column of platoons,** 3. **MARCH.**

The major of the right squadron commands: 1. **Column of platoons,** 2. **MARCH.** The center and left squadrons follow in succession, each by command of its major, and conform to the movements of the right squadron.

(*c*) The post of the band in column of platoons is 12 yards in front of the major of the leading squadron, who, with his staff, occupies his normal position.

(*d*) As soon as the march in review begins the colonel, followed by his staff, takes post 24 yards in front of the band and leads the column.

813. Formation in line of masses: The commands of the colonel and majors are as in par. 812–*b*.

814. Formation in line: The commands of the colonel are the same as of the major in squadron review, substituting *squadrons* for *squadron.*

815. The march in review: In case the reviewing officer, after the first march past in column of platoons, directs that the regiment be marched in review in any other formation, each squadron takes the required formation as in squadron review.

Brigade Review.

816. The brigade is formed in line of platoon masses, or in line of masses, with intervals of 48 yards between regiments. The reviewing officer being at his post, each colonel calls his regiment to attention, causes it to mount and to draw saber.

The command **Pass in review** is not given, the brigade is not reported to its commander, does not execute present saber, and the ride around the line is usually dispensed with. If, however, the reviewing officer should ride around the brigade, he passes in front of the line of majors, the colonel of each

regiment joining and riding with him while in front and in rear of his regiment.

At the sounding of **attention** and **forward march** by the brigade commander's bugler, the brigade is broken into column by regiment in succession and the march in review is conducted as previously explained, except that in brigades and larger units the first march in review may be in *column of masses* or *column of platoon masses.*

Unless otherwise directed, the review of each regiment terminates when it has passed the reviewing officer.

Garrison Review.

817. A review of larger bodies or of a body of troops composed of different arms is conducted on the principles laid down for a brigade, the senior officer present with each arm commanding the troops of that arm. For passing in review, mounted troops will not be put in march until the foot troops have gained sufficient distance to prevent a check in the column.

Parades.

818. Formal parades are ceremonies ordered by the commander for the purpose of publishing complimentary orders, of presenting medals, and of emphasizing the importance of smartness in appearance of men and horses and of smoothness and life in evolutions.

The squadron is always formed in line, the regiment in line or line of platoon masses.

Armament—saber only.

SQUADRON PARADE.

819. In line: At adjutant's call the squadron is formed as in par. 797, with the following modifications:

The position of the platoon leaders having been verified, the sergeant major takes post 4 yards to the left of the rank, other noncommissioned staff, 2 yards to his left; the adjutant 2 yards to the right of the rank on the line of captains and facing to the left; the adjutant and noncommissioned staff draw saber.

The major takes post a convenient distance in front of the center of the line facing the squadron; staff officers other than the adjutant take posts as in par. 742. All buglers form with the band.

820. As soon as the formation is complete, the adjutant directs the captain of the first troop to **draw saber.** The captains, commencing at the right, successively draw saber, turn about and command: 1. **Troop A (or B, etc.),** 2. **Draw,** 3. **SABER,** and resume their front. When the last troop has drawn saber, the adjutant faces to the front and commands: **SOUND OFF.** The band, playing a march, passes in front of the captains to the left of the line and back to its post on the right; it then ceases playing. At evening parade, when the band, after sounding off, ceases playing, the **retreat** is blown by the buglers; the major then draws saber, commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER,** and the band plays the National Anthem, or, if the band is not present, the buglers sound **to the standard.** During the playing all officers retain the position of **present** and complete **present saber** at the last note of the anthem.

821. When the music has ceased the major commands: 1. **Carry,** 2. **SABER;** the adjutant then moves up to the line of captains, turns to the left and commands: 1. **Squadron,** 2. **Attention,** 3. **Prepare for parade,** 4. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH** the rank stands fast, commissioned officers commanding platoons ride forward and halt on the line of captains; noncommissioned officers commanding platoons take post on the line of the rank, 1 yard to the right of the guidon, or 1 yard to the left of the troop, according as their platoons are on the right or left of the center of the troop; a noncommissioned officer commanding a troop takes post on the line of the rank, to the right of the chiefs of platoon who are on the right of the troop.

The adjutant verifies the alignment of the officers, who cast their eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified.

The adjutant then commands: **FRONT,** moves at the trot or gallop by the shortest line to a point midway between the major and the center of the squadron, faces the squadron, halts, and commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER.** He then turns left about, salutes the major, and reports: **Sir, the parade is formed.**

822. The major returns the salute and directs the adjutant: **Take your post, Sir.** The adjutant moves at the trot or gallop, and passing by the major's right takes post facing the squadron, 3 yards to the left of the major and 1 yard less advanced, or, if other staff officers are present, he takes post on their right.

823. The adjutant having taken his post, the major commands: 1. **Carry,** 2. **SABER,** and adds such exercises in the manual of the saber, or other saber exercise, as he may desire, concluding with the squadron at **return saber.**

He then directs the adjutant, **Receive the reports, Sir,** and returns saber; staff officers other than the adjutant draw and return saber with the major. The adjutant, passing by the major's left, advances at the trot or gallop toward the center of the line, halts midway between it and the major, and commands: 1. **First sergeants,** 2. **Front and center,** 3. **Trot** (or **Gallop**), 4. **MARCH.**

At the first command the first sergeants draw saber.

At the command **MARCH** they leave their posts, and, passing between the rank and the line of officers, assemble opposite the center, facing to the front. The adjutant then commands: **REPORT.**

The first sergeants, commencing on the right, successively salute and report: *Band and buglers present or accounted for;* or (*so many*) *musicians or buglers absent; Troop A,* etc., *present or accounted for;* or (*so many*) *sergeants or corporals* or *privates absent.*

The reports having been made, the adjutant commands: 1. **First sergeants,** 2. **Posts,** 3. **Trot** (or **Gallop**), 4. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH** the first sergeants successively turn to the right or left, and passing in rear of the line of officers, resume their posts; all except the drum major then return saber. Each troop first sergeant in leaving and in returning to his post passes around the right flank of his troop.

824. The adjutant then turns about, salutes, and reports: *Sir, all are present or accounted for;* or (*so many*) *officers or enlisted men are absent.* The major returns the salute and directs: *Publish the orders, Sir.*

The adjutant turns about and commands: **ATTENTION TO ORDERS.** After publishing the orders, he commands: 1. **Officers,** 2. **Center,** 3. **MARCH.**

At the command **CENTER** all officers except the adjutant return saber.

At the command **MARCH** officers turn and close toward the center and successively turn to the front and halt 15 yards from the line; the adjutant returns saber, turns about, and takes his post to the rear of the major as before.

825. The officers having formed, the senior troop officer commands: 1. **Officers, forward,** 2. **MARCH.**

The officers advance, the band playing; the captain of the base troop is the guide, and marches on the major; at 6 yards from the major the senior troop officer commands: 1. **Officers** 2. **HALT.**

The music ceases; the officers halt and salute, keeping the hand at the visor till the salute is returned; all drop the hand at the same time with the major. The major then gives such instructions as he may deem necessary; this concludes the ceremony unless the major directs otherwise (par. 827).

826. As the officers disperse the music is resumed, the sergeant major and other noncommissioned staff fall out, each first sergeant draws saber, rides in front of his troop, commands, **POSTS**, at which the guidon and noncommissioned officers in command of platoons resume their posts. The first sergeants then march their troops to the stables or picket lines and dismiss them, the band playing until the troops leave the parade ground.

827. The commanding officer may direct that the sergeant major march the squadron in column of platoons around the parade ground with sabers drawn, changing direction and saluting as in passing in review. In this case the officers align themselves in order of rank on the left of the staff. After the squadron has passed the major the sergeant major commands: *Dismiss your troops,* and falls out; the first sergeants march their troops to the stable or picket lines.

828. Previous to executing saber exercise, the major causes the troopers to take distances to the front (par. 87). In this the troop officers, noncommissioned staff officers, guard of the standard, band, and noncommissioned officers commanding troops or platoons advance with and preserve their positions relative to the rank of Nos. 1; the guidons stand fast until Nos. 4 advance, then move up and halt in line with them. The file closers preserve their relative distances in rear of

Nos. 4. At the conclusion of saber exercise the major orders sabers returned and distances closed.

829. The machine-gun troop, headquarters troop, and supply troop do not ordinarily attend parade. If for the publication of orders or for other reasons they do attend, the machine-gun troop takes post as in par. 783 and conforms; the personnel of the headquarters troop and the supply troop take posts as in pars. 782 and 795.

REGIMENTAL PARADE.

830. In line of platoon masses: Regimental parade corresponds to that of the squadron, with the following additions and exceptions:

(*a*) The regiment is formed as in par. 810, except that the command **POSTS** is given by the regimental adjutant from his original position on the right of the regiment, at which command squadron adjutants take post with their majors (par. 676) and sergeants major take post as in squadron parade; the regimental sergeant major takes post 3 yards to the left of the sergeant major of the left squadron and the regimental adjutant 6 yards to the right of the lieutenant colonel.

(*b*) The colonel takes post at a convenient distance in front of the center of the regiment, facing it.

(*c*) The colonel's commissioned staff (except the adjutant) take posts (par. 742).

(*d*) The lieutenant colonel's post is as in **The Regiment** (par. 740).

(*e*) Each major, as soon as the command **POSTS** has been given by the regimental adjutant, draws saber, commands, **1. Prepare for parade, 2. MARCH;** verifies the alignment, if necessary, regulating on the base squadron, commands, **FRONT,** and, moving at the trot or gallop, takes post 12 yards in front of and facing the captain of his center troop. The majors then, in turn, beginning on the right, command: **1. Draw, 2. SABER,** and face to the front.

(*f*) When the left squadron has drawn saber the adjutant, from his post 6 yards to the right of the post of the lieutenant colonel, commands, **SOUND OFF.** and faces to the front.

(*g*) The band, playing, passes in front of the adjutant and field officers to the left of the regiment and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing. If the line is very long the band, on indication from the adjutant, may sound off from its post on the right of the regiment. The colonel gives the commands for presenting saber before the playing of the National Anthem or to the standard, and afterward the commands for carrying saber.

(*h*) The adjutant then moves rapidly by the shortest line to a point midway between the colonel and the center of the regiment, faces the regiment, and commands: 1. **Squadrons**, 2. **Attention**, 3. **Present**, 4. **SABER**, faces the colonel, salutes, and reports: *Sir, the parade is formed.*

(*i*) When the colonel directs the adjutant, *Receive the reports, Sir*, the adjutant faces the line and commands: 1. **Adjutants**, 2. **Front and center**, 3. **Trot (or Gallop)**, 4. **MARCH**. At the command **MARCH** the squadron adjutants, passing in front of the troop officers, close to the center, and halt, facing to the front, midway between the line of field and troop officers. The adjutant then commands, **REPORT**; the squadron adjutants, commencing on the right, successively salute and report: (*Such*) *squadron present or accounted for;* or, (*Such*) *squadron* (*so many*) **officers and enlisted men are absent.** The adjutant then commands: 1. **Adjutants**, 2. **Posts**, 3. **Trot (or Gallop)**, 4. **MARCH**. The squadron adjutants, moving by the shortest lines, return to their posts.

(*k*) At the command: 1. **Officers**, 2. **Center**, 3. **MARCH**, the lieutenant colonel, the majors, and their adjutants turn individually left about and form on the line of troop officers; the lieutenant colonel and the major of the right squadron with his adjutant on his left, on the right of the line; the majors of the center and left squadrons, each with his adjutant on his left, are on the left of the line.

(*l*) The lieutenant colonel or, if not present, the senior major commands: 1. **Officers**, 2. **Forward**, 3. **MARCH**. The officers advance, the band playing; the captain of the center troop is the guide and marches on the colonel; at 6 yards from the colonel the senior commands: 1. **Officers**, 2. **HALT**.

The lieutenant colonel and adjutant join the colonel, other officers rejoin their squadrons: the squadrons are marched by their majors to their parade grounds and dismissed; or, other-

wise, if the colonel so directs, the regiment may be marched in review by the lieutenant colonel.

In line: The formation corresponds to **line of platoon masses.**

Escorts.

ESCORTS OF HONOR.

831. Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military, when they arrive and depart. The troops for this purpose are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

The escort forms in line opposite the place where the personage is to present himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it will march. On the appearance of the personage he is received with the honors due his rank. The escort is formed into column of platoons or fours and takes up the march without halting, the personage and his staff or retinue taking positions in rear of the column. When he leaves the escort line is formed and the same honors are paid as before.

An officer is appointed to attend the personage and bear such communication as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is to be received, as, for instance, where a courtyard or wharf intervenes, a double line of troopers, with intervals, facing inward, may be posted from that point to the escort; the troopers successively salute as he passes and are then relieved and join the escort.

FUNERAL ESCORT.

832. "The funeral escort of the Secretary of War or General of the Army will consist of a regiment of Infantry, a squadron of Cavalry, and a battalion of Field Artillery; of the Assistant Secretary of War or the lieutenant general, a regiment of Infantry, a squadron of Cavalry, and a battery of Field Artillery; of a major general, a regiment of Infantry, a troop of Cavalry, and a battery of Field Artillery; of a brigadier

general, a regiment of Infantry, a troop of Cavalry, and a platoon of Field Artillery; of a colonel, a regiment; a lieutenant colonel or major, a battalion or squadron; a captain, one company; a subaltern, a platoon." * * * (A. R. 426.)

833. "The funeral escort of a noncommissioned staff officer will consist of 16 men commanded by a sergeant; of a sergeant, of 14 men commanded by a sergeant; of a corporal, of 12 men commanded by a corporal; of a private, of 8 men commanded by a corporal." * * * (A. R. 428.)

834. "Six pallbearers will be selected as far as practicable from the grade of the deceased." (A. R. 429.)

835. If a commissioned officer, the casket is borne by eight noncommissioned officers; if a noncommissioned officer or private, by eight privates.

836. The escort is formed opposite the chapel or the quarters of the deceased; the band on that flank of the escort toward which it is to march.

837. Upon the appearance of the casket the commander commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER,** and the band sounds a dirge.

838. The casket having been placed on the caisson or in the hearse, the escort is next formed into column of platoons or fours. The procession is formed in the following order:

1. Band.
2. Escort.
3. Clergy.
4. Casket and pallbearers.
5. Mourners.
6. Members of the former command of the deceased.
7. Other officers and enlisted men.
8. Distinguished persons.
9. Delegations.
10. Societies.
11. Civilians.

Officers and enlisted men (Nos. 6 and 7), with side arms, are in the order of rank, seniors in front.

839. The escort marches slowly, the band playing a dirge. The column having arrived opposite the grave, line is formed facing it.

The casket is then carried along the front of the escort to the grave; sabers are presented, the band sounds a dirge, and the casket having been placed over the grave, sabers are brought to the carry.

During the funeral service, officers and men bow the head.

840. When the casket is lowered into the grave and the funeral service concluded, the commander causes the escort to

return saber and dismounts it. He then forms the escort at a convenient place opposite the grave and fires three rounds of blank cartridges over the grave, the muzzles of the rifles being elevated. When the escort is greater than a squadron, one squadron only is designated to dismount and fire the volleys.

A bugler at the head of the grave then sounds taps, which concludes the ceremony.

841. The escort is then formed into column, marched to the point where it was assembled, and dismissed.

842. The band does not play until it has left the inclosure.

When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, the escort, after having left the camp or garrison, may march at ease until it approaches the burial ground, when it is brought to attention.

843. When arms are presented at the funeral of a person entitled to special honors (pars. 907, 908), the band plays the prescribed *national air* or the buglers sound *to the standard, march,* or *flourishes,* according to the rank of the deceased, after which the band plays an appropriate air.

844. At the funeral of a mounted officer or man his horse, in mourning caparison, follows the hearse.

845. Should the entrance to the cemetery prevent the caisson from accompanying the escort to the grave, the column is halted at the entrance long enough to take the casket from the caisson, when it is again put in march. The Cavalry and Artillery, when unable to enter the inclosure, turn out, form line facing the column, and salute the remains as they pass. If necessary, the Cavalry may be dismounted and marched into the cemetery on foot.

When the remains are escorted from the quarters of the deceased to the church before the funeral service, arms are presented upon receiving them and as they are borne into the church.

The commander of the escort, previous to the funeral, gives the clergyman and pallbearers all needed directions.

846. Funeral ceremonies, dismounted, are conducted according to the same principles. After the coffin has been placed over the grave, the command is brought to *parade rest,* and heads are bowed during the service.

ESCORT TO THE STANDARD.

847. Colors and standards: The silken national and regimental colors or standards shall be carried in battle, campaign, and on all occasions of ceremony at regimental headquarters in which two or more companies (troops) of the regiment participate. * * *

When not in use as prescribed in this paragraph, colors and standards will be kept in their waterproof cases. (A. R. 232.)

848. When new national or regimental standards are furnished to a regiment they are received with the ceremony **Escort to the standard.**

849. If the ceremony is for both standards, both color sergeants go with the escort; if for the national standard only, the regimental standard remains with the regiment; if for the regimental standard only, the national standard is not brought out to the ceremony.

The directions following are for escorting the national standard only; with modifications above noted, they apply to the other cases.

850. The regiment being formed in line of platoon masses or in line at carry saber, the colonel details a troop other than the standard troop to receive and escort the national standard to its place in line. During the ceremony the regimental standard remains with the guard of the standard at its post with the regiment.

851. The band upon intimation from the adjutant moves straight to the front until clear of the line of field officers, changes direction to the right and is halted; the designated troop is moved to the front and formed in column of platoons in rear of the band, the standard bearer between the platoons. The escort then marches without music to the colonel's office or quarters, is formed in line facing the entrance and halted, the band on the right, the standard bearer in the line of file closers.

The first lieutenant, standard bearer, and a sergeant, designated by the troop commander, dismount in front of the colonel's quarters, their horses being held by a bugler; the standard bearer, preceded by the first lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, then goes to receive the standard.

When the standard bearer comes out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, they halt before the entrance and mount,

the lieutenant on the right, the sergeant on the left; the bugler returns to his post; the captain then commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER;** the escort presents saber; the buglers sounding *to the standard.*

852. The sabers are brought to the carry; the lieutenant and sergeant return to their posts; the troop is broken into column of platoons to the right and halted; the standard bearer places himself midway between the first and second platoons.

The escort marches back to the regiment, the band playing; the march is so conducted that when the escort arrives at 50 yards in front of the right of the regiment, the direction of the march shall be parallel to its front, when the standard arrives opposite its place in line the escort is formed in line to the left and halted; the standard bearer, passing between the platoons, advances and halts 12 yards in front of the colonel.

853. The standard bearer having halted, the colonel faces the line, commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER,** faces to the front, and salutes; the buglers sound *to the standard,* and the regimental standard and guidons execute the prescribed salute.

The colonel then faces about, brings the regiment to a carry, and the standard bearer takes his place in the guard of the standard.

The escort presents and carries saber with the regiment, at the command of the colonel, after which the captain forms it in column and, preceded by the band, marches it to its place in line, passing around the left flank of the regiment.

The band plays until the escort passes the left of the line, when it ceases playing and returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment.

854. The standard is escorted by the guard of the standard from the parade ground of the standard troop to the colonel's quarters or office.

855. Escort to the standard is executed by a squadron according to the same principles, the formation being in line or in platoon mass.

Guard Mounting.

856. Guard mounting will be formal or informal, as the commanding officer may direct. It will be held as prescribed

in the drill regulations of the arm of the service to which the guard belongs; if none is prescribed, then as for Infantry. In case the guard is composed wholly of mounted organizations, guard mounting may be held mounted. (Manual of Interior Guard Duty.)

FORMAL GUARD MOUNTING—MOUNTED.

857. Formal guard mounting will ordinarily be held only in posts or camps where a band is present. At the *assembly* the men of each troop designated for guard form at stand to horse on their troop parade grounds, the noncommissioned officers falling in as file closers; the supernumeraries do not fall in; each first sergeant verifies his detail and inspects the dress and general appearance, replaces any man unfit to go on guard, turns the detail over to the senior noncommissioned officer and retires. The senior noncommissioned officer then mounts, draws saber and causes the detail to mount. The band, accompanied by the buglers, takes its place on the parade ground so that the left of its front rank shall be 12 yards to the right of the rank when the guard is formed.

858. At *adjutant's call* the adjutant takes post so as to be 12 yards in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed; the sergeant major takes post facing to the left 12 yards to the left of the front rank of the band; the band plays in appropriate time, the details are marched to the parade ground by their senior noncommissioned officers; the detail that arrives first is marched to the line so that upon halting the head of the horse of the man on the right shall be on line with and near to the sergeant major's horse, the noncommissioned officer having halted his detail places himself facing the sergeant major at a distance from him a little greater than the front of his detail, and commands: **DRESS.** The detail dresses on its right trooper; the noncommissioned officers of the detail in the line of file closers rein back so as to be six yards in rear of the rank; the noncommissioned officer in command of the detail then commands, **Front,** salutes and reports, *The detail is correct,* or (*so many*) *sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent;* the sergeant major returns the salute; the noncommissioned officer in charge of the detail then passes by the right of the guard and takes post

on the line of noncommissioned officers in rear of the right trooper of his detail. Should there be more than one detail it is formed in like manner on the left of the one preceding; the privates, noncommissioned officers, and commander of each detail dress on those of the preceding details in the same rank or line.

Should the detail from a troop not include a noncommissioned officer, one will be detailed to perform the duties of commander of the detail. In this case such noncommissioned officer after reporting to the sergeant major passes around the right flank between the guard and the band and retires.

The troops detailed alternate in taking the right of the line.

859. When the last detail has formed the sergeant major draws saber, verifies the details, causes the guard to count fours, and, if there be more than five fours, divides the guard into two or more platoons; he designates the center guide or guides and then commands, **DRESS** (par. 362), verifies the alignment of rank and the line of noncommissioned officers, and then returns to the right of the rank, turns to the left, commands, **FRONT**, passes to a point midway between the adjutant and center of the guard, halts facing the adjutant, salutes, and reports: *Sir, the details are correct;* or, *Sir, (so many) sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent;* the adjutant returns the salute, directs the sergeant major: *Take your post*, and then draws saber; the sergeant major turns to the left about and takes post 3 yards to the left of and on a line with the rank. When the sergeant major has completed his report the officer of the guard takes post facing to the front 8 yards in front of the center of the guard and draws saber. The adjutant then directs, *Inspect your guard, Sir*, at which the commander of the guard turns about, commands: 1. **Draw**, 2. **SABER**; 3. **Prepare for inspection**, 4. **MARCH**, moves toward and inspects the guard, as in troop inspection. During the inspection the band plays.

The adjutant returns saber, observes the general condition of the guard, and falls out any man who is unfit for guard duty or does not present a creditable appearance. Substitutes will report to the commander of the guard at the guard house.

The adjutant when so directed selects orderlies and color sentinels as prescribed in the Manual of Interior Guard Duty and notifies the commander of the guard of his selection. He

may require a trooper to move out of the rank and to dismount for a more minute inspection. He also notifies the two senior noncommissioned officers to act as platoon leaders if there has been a division into platoons. If there be a junior officer of the guard, he takes post at the same time as the senior, facing to the front 3 yards in front of the guide of the first platoon, and the senior of the two noncommissioned officers acts and takes post as chief of the second platoon. The junior officer of the guard may be directed by the commander of the guard to assist in inspecting the guard.

860. If there be no officer of the guard the adjutant inspects the guard and during the inspection notifies the senior noncommissioned officer to command the guard and the next two senior noncommissioned officers to serve as platoon leaders. A noncommissioned officer commanding the guard takes the post of the officer of the guard, the next senior noncommissioned officer fhe post of the junior officer of the guard.

The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about 30 yards in front of and facing the center of the guard and draws saber. The new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the guard about 30 yards from the adjutant. The old officer of the day takes post 3 yards to the right of and 1 yard less advanced than the new officer of the day. The commander of the guard takes post 8 yards in front of the right trooper, facing to the front, and draws saber.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Draw**, 2. **SABER**, 3. **SOUND OFF**.

The band, playing, passes in front of the commander of the guard to the left of the line and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing.

The adjutant then commands **POSTS**, at which platoon leaders take their posts 3 yards in front of the guides of their platoons, facing to the front, and the commander of the guard takes post 6 yards in front of the leader of the center (right) platoon, facing to the front, and the file closers resume their places 3 yards in rear of the rank. If there be no junior officer of the guard, the commander of the guard takes post 3 yards in front of the center guide.

The commander of the guard and the chiefs of platoon and file closers having taken their posts, the adjutant commands:

1. **Present**, 2. **SABER**, faces toward the officer of the day, salutes, and then reports, *Sir, the guard is formed.*

The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, salutes with the hand and directs the adjutant, *March the guard in review, Sir.*

861. The adjutant turns about, brings the guard to a carry, and commands: 1. **Platoons right turn**, 2. **MARCH**; 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT.** The platoons execute the movement as in the troop, the band takes post in front of the column (par. 806). The adjutant places himself abreast of the first platoon and 6 yards from its left flank; the sergeant major abreast of the second platoon and 6 yards from its left flank. The adjutant then commands: 1. **Pass in review**, 2. **FORWARD**, 3. **MARCH.**

The guard marches at the walk past the officer of the day, according to the principles of squadron review, the adjutant, commander of the guard, chiefs of platoon, sergeant major, and drum major saluting. The new officer of the day returns the salute of the commander of the guard and the adjutant only, making one salute with the hand.

862. The band, having passed the officer of the day, turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite to and facing him, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground. The buglers detach themselves from the band when the latter turns out of the column and remain in front of the guard, commencing to play when the band ceases. In the absence of the band the buglers do not turn out of the column, but continue to play in front of the guard.

863. The guard having passed 12 yards beyond the officer of the day, the adjutant halts; the sergeant major halts alongside of the adjutant and 1 yard to his left; they then return saber, salute, and retire. The commander of the guard then, without halting, breaks the guard into column of fours and marches it to its post.

864. The officers of the day turn toward each other and salute, the old officer of the day turning over the orders to the new officer of the day.

While the band is sounding off and while the guard is passing in review the officers of the day remain at attention.

865. If the guard be not divided into platoons the adjutant commands: 1. **Guard right turn**, 2. **MARCH**; 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT**, and it passes in review as explained; the commander of the

guard is 3 yards in front of its center guide, the adjutant is 6 yards from the rank and abreast of the commander, the sergeant major covers the adjutant and marches abreast of the rank.

RELIEVING THE OLD GUARD—(FORMAL GUARD MOUNTING, MOUNTED).

866. As the new guard approaches the guardhouse the old guard is formed in line at the carry saber, its buglers 3 yards to its right; when the buglers at the head of the new guard arrive opposite the left of the old guard its commander commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER;** both commanders salute and, when the new guard has passed the commander of the old guard, the latter commands: 1. **Carry,** 2. **SABER.** The buglers and guard continue marching without changing direction until the rear of the column has passed 9 yards beyond the buglers of the old guard, when the commander of the new guard commands: 1. **Fours right,** 2. **MARCH.**

867. The buglers and guard are marched 3 yards in rear of the line of the old guard, when the commander of the new guard commands: 1. **Fours right about,** 2. **MARCH;** 3. **Guard,** 4. **HALT;** 5. **DRESS;** he then, facing to the front, aligns his guard so as to be on a line with the old guard and commands, **Front;** the buglers of the new guard are 3 yards to the right of the rank.

868. The new guard being dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and facing its center, commands: 1. **Present,** 2. **SABER,** resumes his front, salutes, resumes the carry, faces his guard, and commands: 1. **Carry,** 2. **SABER.**

Each guard is then presented by its commander to its officer of the day; if there be but one officer of the day present, or if an officer acts in the capacity of old and new officer of the day, each guard is presented to him by its commander.

869. If another person entitled to a salute approaches, each commander of the guard brings his own guard to attention if not already at attention. The senior commander of the two guards then commands: 1. **Old and new guards,** 2. **Present,** 3. **SABER.** The junior will salute at the command "Present, Saber," given by the senior. After the salute has been ac-

knowledged the senior brings both guards to the "Carry, Saber."

870. After the salutes have been acknowledged by the officers of the day each guard returns saber by command of its own officer of the guard; the commander of the new guard then directs the orderly or orderlies to fall out and report.

871. The commander of the new guard then falls out members of the guard for detached posts placing them under charge of the proper noncommissioned officer, divides the guard into three reliefs, *first*, *second*, and *third*, from right to left, and directs a list of the guard to be made by reliefs. The sentinels and detachments of the old guard are at once relieved by members of the new guard, the two guards standing at ease or dismounted while these changes are being made. The commander of the old transmits to the commander of the new guard all his orders, instructions, and information concerning the guard and its duties.

872. The commander of the new guard then has his own guard fall out, takes possession of the guardhouse and verifies the articles in charge of the guard.

873. If considerable time is required to bring in that portion of the old guard still on post, the commanding officer may direct that as soon as the orders and property are turned over to the new guard the portion of the old guard at the guardhouse may be marched off and dismissed. In such case the remaining detachments of the old guard will be inspected by the commander of the new guard when they reach the guardhouse. He will direct the senior noncommissioned officer present to march these detachments off and dismiss them in the prescribed manner.

874. In bad weather, at night, or after long marches the music may be omitted or the buglers may take the place of the band and sound off standing on the right of the guard and the march in review be omitted.

In cases in which an organization, entire or in part, is detailed for guard, it is marched to the parade ground as a single detail (par. 858).

875. For detailed instructions for guards and sentinels see Manual of Interior Guard Duty.

FORMAL GUARD MOUNTING, DISMOUNTED.

876. Guard mounting, dismounted, and relieving the old guard are conducted on the same principles as when mounted, with the following modifications:

(*a*) The men designated for guard fall in, dismounted, on their troop parade grounds; noncommissioned officers not commanding detail, 2 paces in rear of rank.

(*b*) The detail that is to be on the right is marched to the line so that upon halting the breast of the man on the right shall be near to and opposite the left arm of the sergeant major. At the command **DRESS**, the detail dresses up to the line of the sergeant major and its commander, the man on the right placing his breast against the left arm of the sergeant major.

(*c*) When the last detail has formed, the sergeant major takes a side step to the right, draws saber if armed with one, verifies the detail, takes post 2 paces to the right and 2 paces to the front of the guard, facing to the left and causes the guard to count fours.

(*d*) When the sergeant major has reported, the officer of the guard takes post 3 paces in front of the center of the guard, *draws saber* and *orders saber*, the guard being at order arms.

The inspection which corresponds to that of par. 882 being ended, and the officers of the day, the adjutant, and the commander of the guard having taken their posts, the commander of the guard draws saber with the adjutant and comes to the order.

The adjutant then commands: 1. **Parade**, 2. **Rest**, 3. **SOUND OFF**, and comes to the *order* and *parade rest*.

(*e*) After the band has sounded off, the adjutant, commander of the guard and platoon leaders come to attention, and the adjutant commands: 1. **Present**, 2. **ARMS**, faces toward the officer of the day and reports: *Sir, the guard is formed.* The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, returns the salute with the hand and directs the adjutant: *March the guard in review, Sir.* The adjutant carries saber, faces about, brings the guard to an order and commands: 1. **At trail, platoons (or guard) right turn**, 2. **MARCH**; 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT**.

The guard marches in quick time past the officer of the day, according to the principles as when mounted.

While the band is sounding off and while the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at parade rest with arms folded. They take this position when the adjutant comes to parade rest, resume the attention with him, again take the parade rest at the first note of the march in review, and resume attention as the head of the column approaches.

(*f*) If the guard be not divided into platoons, the adjutant commands: 1. **At trail, guard right turn**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **Guard**, 4. **HALT**, and it passes in review as explained; the commander of the guard is 3 paces in front of its center guide.

INSPECTIONS.

TROOP INSPECTION, MOUNTED.

877. The troop being in line at a halt, the captain draws saber and commands: 1. **Prepare for inspection**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **FRONT.**

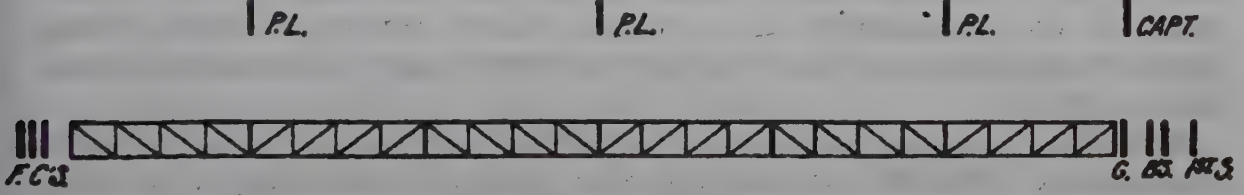


FIG. 52, par. 877.

At the command **MARCH** the troop is aligned (par. 611) and posts taken as follows: The guidon on the right of the rank; buglers 2 yards to the right of the guidon; file closers 2 yards to the left of the troop; platoon leaders (as soon as the positions of their center guides are assured) 8 yards in front of their respective guides.

After commanding **FRONT** the captain takes post facing to the left 8 yards in front of the guidon and commands: 1. **Draw**, 2. **SABER.**

If pistols are not to be inspected the captain then so announces (par. 259).

The captain habitually requires the chiefs of platoon to inspect their own platoons in accordance with his instruc-

tions; if not required to inspect their platoons they turn about and remain at ease, facing their platoons. When a platoon is inspected by its chief the men raise their weapons for inspection at his approach instead of at the captain's.

As the inspector approaches the buglers they raise their bugles for inspection (par. 886).

The inspection of the rank is conducted as in **Inspection of Arms and Equipments, mounted** (pars. 256–268).

878. When the troop is to be dismounted, the platoon leaders return saber, dismount with the troop and inspect their platoons; or otherwise, if instructed not to inspect, they face toward the troop and after dismounting remain at ease, resuming their front on the completion of the inspection of arms.

When the captain dismounts his horse is held by his bugler; the horses of the chiefs of platoon, if they are to inspect their platoons, are held by a bugler or by a designated trooper.

The guidon dismounts with the troop, acting as an even number in dismounting and in mounting.

While inspecting the troop or accompanying the inspector the captain does not return his saber while mounted; in either case, if he dismounts, he returns saber before dismounting. Upon completion of the inspection the troop is mounted and rank formed.

879. To resume posts in line after inspection the captain commands, **POSTS**, at which the platoon leaders, the first sergeant, the file closers, the guidon, and the buglers resume their posts. The troop is dismissed as in **The Troop.**

880. Should the inspector be other than the captain, the captain prepares the troop for inspection, causes sabers to be drawn, commands **REST**, faces to the front, and awaits the arrival of the inspector. Upon the approach of the inspector the captain calls the troop to attention and salutes him; the inspector returns the salute and, if he so desires, instructs the captain as to the kind of inspection he wishes. If necessary to give any instructions the captain turns about, gives them, and then faces to the front. When inspected he accompanies the inspector. Unless the inspector gives instructions requiring it the troop will not be dismounted. Upon intimation from the inspector the troop is dismissed.

881. At inspection of quarters, the men, without accouterments, stand uncovered in front of their respective bunks; in camp they stand covered, without accouterments, in front of their tents; accouterments and horse equipment are laid out for inspection as required; the senior noncommissioned officer upon the approach of the inspector commands: **ATTENTION.**

TROOP INPECTION, DISMOUNTED.

882. The troop, armed with rifle and pistol only; is formed dismounted. The inspection corresponds to that mounted, with the exceptions noted in par. 268 and the following:

(*a*) The posts of officers are 3 yards in front of the rank.

(*b*) Platoon leaders after drawing saber come to the order. At the command: 1. **Prepare for inspection,** 2. **MARCH,** they resume the carry. If not required to inspect their platoons they face about and stand **at ease** at the order. Upon the completion of the inspection they come to attention and resume the order facing to the front.

SQUADRON INSPECTION, MOUNTED.

883. If there be both inspection and review, the inspection may either precede or follow the review.

With the following additions and exceptions squadron inspection corresponds to troop inspection:

(*a*) The squadron being in column of troops, the major commands: 1. **Prepare for inspection,** 2. **MARCH,** and, if not the inspector, takes his post 12 yards in front of the captain of his leading troop and awaits the arrival of the inspector.

(*b*) Each troop prepares for inspection, its captain, when his troop is dressed, giving the commands, **FRONT,** and 1. **Draw,** 2. **SABER.**

(*c*) The machine-gun troop, if present, takes post 16 yards in rear of the last troop and prepares for inspection (par. 885).

(*d*) The band, if there be one, passes by the right flank of the squadron, takes post facing to the front, 15 yards in rear of the machine-gun troop and opens ranks; the buglers join their troops.

(*e*) The guard of the standard, marched by the standard bearer, takes post in front of the center of the first troop and on line with the sergeant major and bugler.

(*f*) The adjutant, sergeant major, and orderlies take post with the major as in par. 676.

(*g*) Field and staff officers senior in rank to the inspector do not take post in front of the column, but accompany him.

(*h*) The inspector inspects the major, and, accompanied by the latter, inspects the staff officers, the sergeant major, and orderlies.

(*i*) The major then commands, **REST**, returns saber, and with his adjutant, sergeant major, and orderlies, accompanies the inspector.

If the major is the inspector, he inspects his staff, sergeant major, and orderlies, who return saber and accompany him; he then commands, **REST**, and returns saber.

(*k*) The inspector, commencing at the head of the column, usually inspects the guard of the standard, and the arms, accouterments, dress, horses, and equipment of each troop in succession and inspects the band, or otherwise he inspects such arms, accouterments, or equipments as he desires.

(*l*) The adjutant gives the necessary commands for the inspection of the guard of the standard and the band.

The guard of the standard is brought to a rest as soon as inspected, or it and the sergeant major may be dismissed upon intimation from the inspector.

(*m*) As the inspector approaches each troop in succession its captain proceeds as in par. 880, except that he does not salute.

(*n*) The inspection of a troop being finished, the captain commands, **POSTS**; he then brings it to **REST**, or on intimation from the inspector marches the troop to its own grounds and dismisses it.

(*o*) The band plays during the inspection of the troops.

At inspection of quarters or camp the inspector is accompanied by all the officers or by such as he may designate.

REGIMENTAL INSPECTION, MOUNTED.

884. With the following additions and exceptions, regimental inspection corresponds to squadron inspection, lettered subparagraphs corresponding thereto.

(*a*) The regiment being in column of troops, the colonel commands: 1. **Prepare for inspection,** 2. **MARCH,** and, if not the inspector, takes post 24 yards in front of the major of his leading squadron and awaits the arrival of the inspector.

(*b*) Each squadron prepares for inspection as prescribed in **Squadron inspection.**

(*c*) The guard of the standard, conducted by the standard bearer, takes post in front of the center of the first troop of the leading squadron and on line with the colonel's noncommissioned staff.

(*f*) The staff and noncommissioned staff take post as in par. 742.

(*h*) The inspector inspects the colonel and the lieutenant colonel, and, accompanied by the colonel, inspects the staff officers.

(*i*) The colonel then commands, **REST,** returns saber, and, with the lieutenant colonel and staff, noncommissioned staff and orderlies, accompanies the inspector.

If the colonel is the inspector he inspects the lieutenant colonel and staff, all of whom then return saber and accompany him; he then commands, **REST,** and returns saber.

(*m*) As the inspector approaches each squadron in succession its major brings it to attention, but does not salute. Squadron inspection then follows.

(*n*) The inspection of a squadron being finished, the major, on intimation from the inspector, marches the squadron to its parade ground and dismisses it. A similar rule applies to the special units.

MACHINE-GUN TROOP INSPECTION.

885. The inspection of the machine-gun troop is conducted as prescribed in drill regulations for that unit.

HEADQUARTERS TROOP INSPECTION, MOUNTED.

886. The headquarters troop, as a unit, is not inspected at squadron and regimental inspections. With the exceptions and additions noted, it is inspected as in **Troop inspection.** The entire troop forms in single rank without chiefs of platoon,

members of the band forming on the left, in order of rank, constituting the second platoon; and all others, with sabers drawn, on the right, in order of rank, constituting the first platoon. The band leader takes post 3 yards on the left of the rank.

The adjutant after inspecting the sabers of the first platoon inspects the instruments of the second platoon.

Each musician as the inspector approaches him raises his instrument in front of his body, reverses it so as to show both sides, and then returns it to its former position. A bugler, when inspected, executes with his bugle what is prescribed for a band musician.

Pistols of the band are not inspected while the band is mounted. To inspect the pistols of the band when dismounted the adjutant first directs suitable disposal of band instruments.

887. To inspect the band by itself, and not as a platoon of the headquarters troop (par. 886), the adjutant commands: **1. Prepare for inspection, 2. Open ranks, 3. MARCH.** The front rank dresses to the right; the other ranks rein back, each taking the distance of 3 yards from the rank preceding, and dress to the right.

The adjutant verifies the alignment of the ranks, takes post as in troop inspection, commands, **FRONT,** and inspects, beginning on the right of each rank.

The inspection being finished, the adjutant commands: **1. Close ranks, 2. MARCH.** The front rank stands fast, the other ranks close to the proper distance. Dismounted inspection of the band is conducted on the same principles.

SUPPLY-TROOP INSPECTION.

888. When the regimental train is present at review or inspection the supply troop is inspected with it, otherwise the troop is not inspected in the regiment as a unit, although its personnel, if so directed, attends ceremonies and inspections (par. 795).

Its inspection with the train is conducted as the colonel directs. When inspected by itself, its commander arranges the details.

MUSTER.

Regimental, Squadron or Troop.

889. Muster is preceded by an inspection and, when practicable, by a review.

The adjutant is provided with the muster roll of the headquarters troop, the supply officer with that of the supply troop, and each other captain with the roll of his troop.

A list of absentees, alphabetically arranged, showing cause and place of absence, accompanies each roll.

Having been inspected and still being in column of troops at **prepare for inspection**, each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, commands: **ATTENTION TO MUSTER.**

The mustering officer, or captain, then calls the names on the roll; each man, as his name is called, answers "here" and **returns saber.**

890. Dismounted, each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, commands: 1. **Right shoulder,** 2. **ARMS,** 3. **ATTENTION TO MUSTER.** Each man, as his name is called, answers, "here" and brings his rifle to order arms.

Men who are not formed with the troop and who attend muster without arms are 2 yards to the left of the file closers; each, as soon as he answers "here," passes 2 yards in front of the rank, from left to right, salutes the mustering officer as he passes him, and quits the parade ground.

891. After muster, the mustering officer, accompanied by such officers as he may designate, verifies the presence of men reported in hospital, on guard, etc.

A troop may be mustered in a similar manner on its own parade ground, the muster to follow the troop inspection.

PART VII.—MISCELLANEOUS.

MANUALS.

The Guidon.

892. Carry guidon: When dismounted the lance of the guidon is held vertically in the right hand, arm extended, lance resting in the hollow of the shoulder, ferrule about 6 inches from the ground. It is thus held in marching or when the troop is at the *shoulder*, *port*, or *trail*.

When leading the horse the lance is held in a corresponding position in the left hand. When mounted the ferrule is inserted in the guidon socket, the right hand grasps the lance, forearm nearly horizontal, the arm through the sling, lance vertical.

893. Order guidon: The ferrule of the lance rests on the ground on a line with and touching the toe of the right shoe; the right hand grasps the lance in the same manner as when at a carry.

894. Parade rest is executed as with the rifle, except that the forearms are nearly horizontal.

895. The **order** and **parade rest** are executed with the troop; the *carry* at the command **right shoulder arms.**

896. At **stand to horse** the ferrule of the lance rests on the ground on a line with and touching the toe of the left shoe, lance vertical, left hand at the height of the neck, elbow and forearm closed against the lance.

897. At the command **prepare to mount** the lance is raised slightly from the ground while stepping back; upon halting, the ferrule is placed on the ground about 1 foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse.

After mounting, the lance is grasped with the right hand under the left, which lets go of it without quitting the reins; the lance is then raised over the horse's neck, under the reins, and is lowered on the right of the saddle, and the ferrule inserted in the guidon socket.

898. The guidon executes the salute as prescribed for the standard (par. 902).

THE STANDARD.

899. The word "standard" refers to both the national and the regimental standards. To distinguish between them the terms "national standard" and "regimental standard" are used.

900. Standards are said to be cased when furled and protected by oilcloth covering.

901. In garrison the standards, when not in use, are kept in the office or quarters of the colonel and are escorted thereto and therefrom by the color guard. In camp the standards, when not in use, are displayed in front of the colonel's tent, the national standard on the right. From reveille to retreat when the weather permits they are uncased; from retreat to reveille and during inclement weather they are cased.

902. Standard salute: Being mounted, lower the standard to the front until the lance (under the right arm) is horizontal. When dismounted slip the right hand up the lance as high as the eye, then lower the lance to the front by straightening the right arm to its full extent.

903. The **Manual of the Standard** is as prescribed for the guidon (pars. 892–898), except that at **carry standard**, dismounted, the ferrule of the lance is supported at the right hip.

In marching the salute is rendered when at 12 yards from the person entitled to the salute; the carry is resumed as soon as it has passed him.

904. The **guard to the standard** (color guard) consists of the two color sergeants of the regiment and of two experienced men, usually noncommissioned officers, selected by the colonel. A position on the color guard is one of responsibility and honor. The guard is habitually formed in single rank, the color sergeants being Nos. 2 and 3. The national standard is carried by the senior color sergeant, he being No. 2 and commanding the guard. When the regimental standard is carried it is carried by the junior color sergeant, who is No. 3 of the guard; he conforms to the movements of the sergeant who carries the national standard, except as regards saluting.

The post of the guard to the standard is with the squadron designated by the colonel, usually the second. At formation of the regiment, as soon as the squadrons have taken their places, the color guard proceeds to its post (par. 793).

When during exercises the regimental formation is broken up the color guard joins the colonel or is dismissed as directed; in campaign it joins the regimental reserve in lieu of other orders.

The color guard executes neither loadings nor firings; in rendering honors it executes all movements in the manual; at drill all movements unless specially excused.

905. To receive the standard, the color guard, by command of the senior color sergeant, presents sabers; the same salute is rendered on parting with the standards. After parting with the standards the color guard carries and returns sabers by command of the senior remaining number, whose post is on the right of the guard. When the regiment is dismissed the color guard escorts the standards to the office or the quarters of the colonel.

906. The regimental standard salutes **in escort to the standard** and when saluting a person entitled to the honor as prescribed in Army Regulations, but in no other case.

The national standard renders no salute (pars. 793, 794, 796).

In action the position of the standards will be indicated by the colonel who may, through their display, inspire enthusiasm and maintain the morale. He may, however, hold them back when they might indicate to the enemy the direction of the main attack, betray the position of the main body, or tend to commit the regiment to defensive action. In the presence of the enemy and during the "approach" the standards are carried cased, ready to be instantly broken out if their inspiration is required.

HONORS AND SALUTES.

907. (1) The composition consisting of the words and music known as "The Star Spangled Banner," is designated the National Anthem of the United States of America.

(2) Provisions in these regulations or in orders issued under the authority of the War Department, requiring the playing of the National Anthem at any time or place shall be taken to mean "The Star Spangled Banner" to the exclusion of other tunes or musical compositions popularly known as national airs.

(3) Commanding officers will require bands to play national and patriotic airs on appropriate occasions. The playing of the national anthem of any country as part of a medley is prohibited.

908. (1) The President of the United States will be received with regimental standards or colors, officers and troops saluting, the drums giving four ruffles and the bugles sounding four flourishes. The ruffles and flourishes will be followed by the National Anthem, or, in the absence of a band, the field music or bugles will sound to the color.

(2) An ex-President and the Vice President of the United States will be received with the same honors as prescribed for the President, except that the flourishes will be followed by a march in lieu of the National Anthem.

(3) The President of a foreign republic, a foreign sovereign or a member of a royal family will be received with the same honors as prescribed in paragraph (1), except that the national anthem of his country will be played.

(4) Officers of the following grades of rank will be received with regimental standards or colors, officers and troops saluting, and field music playing as follows: General, four ruffles and flourishes; lieutenant general, three ruffles and flourishes; major general, two ruffles and flourishes; brigadier general, one ruffle and flourish.

In tendering honors to a general officer or official of like rank, the general's march will be played immediately after the flourishes.

909. To the members of the Cabinet, the Chief Justice, the President pro tempore of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, American or foreign ambassadors, and governors within their respective States and Territories the same honors are paid as to the general, except that a foreign ambassador will be received with the national anthem of his country, and that the number of guns fired as personal salutes will be as prescribed in Army Regulations; to the Assistant Secretary of War and to American or foreign envoys or ministers the same honors as to the lieutenant general; to officers of the Navy the honors due to their relative rank; to officers of marines and volunteers and, militia when in the service of the United States, the honors due to like grades in the regular service; to officers of a foreign service the honors due to their rank.

In rendering personal honors, when the command presents arms, officers and men in uniform who are not in formation and are in view and within saluting distance shall salute and shall remain in the position of salute until the end of the ruffles and flourishes, or, if none, until order arms.

910. Whenever the National Anthem is played at any place when persons belonging to the military service are present, all officers and enlisted men not in formation shall stand at attention facing toward the music (except at retreat, when they shall face toward the flag). If in uniform, covered or uncovered, or in civilian clothes, uncovered, they shall salute at the first note of the anthem, retaining the position of salute until the last note of the anthem. If not in uniform and covered, they shall uncover at the first note of the anthem, holding the headdress opposite the left shoulder and so remain until its close, except that in inclement weather the headdress may be slightly raised.

The same rules apply when to the color or to the standard is sounded as when the National Anthem is played.

When played by an Army band, the National Anthem shall be played through without repetition of any part not required to be repeated to make it complete.

The same marks of respect prescribed for observance during the playing of the National Anthem of the United States shall be shown toward the national anthem of any other country when played upon official occasions.

911. When making or receiving official reports or on meeting out of doors, all officers will salute. Military courtesy requires the junior to salute first, but when the salute is introductory to a report made at a military ceremony or formation to the representative of a common superior—as, for example, to the adjutant, officer of the day, etc.—the officer making the report, whatever his rank, will salute first; the officer to whom the report is made will acknowledge, by saluting, that he has received and understood the report.

912. (1) Salutes shall be exchanged between officers and enlisted men not in a military formation, nor at drill, work, games, or mess, on every occasion of their meeting, passing near or being addressed, the officer junior in rank or the enlisted man saluting first.

(2) When an officer enters a room where there are several enlisted men, the word "attention" is given by some one who perceives him, when all rise, uncover, and remain standing at attention until the officer leaves the room or directs otherwise. Enlisted men at meals stop eating and remain seated at attention.

(3) An enlisted man, if seated, rises on the approach of an officer, faces toward him, stands at attention, and salutes. Standing he faces an officer for the same purpose. If the parties remain in the same place or on the same ground, such compliments need not be repeated. Soldiers actually at work do not cease work to salute an officer unless addressed by him.

(4) Before addressing an officer, an enlisted man makes the prescribed salute with the weapon with which he is armed, or, if unarmed, with the right hand. He also makes the same salute after receiving a reply.

913. (1) In uniform, covered or uncovered, but not in formation, officers and enlisted men salute military persons as follows: With arms in hand, the salute prescribed for that arm (sentinels on interior guard duty excepted); without arms, the right-hand salute.

(2) In civilian dress, covered or uncovered, officers and enlisted men salute military persons with the right-hand salute.

(3) Officers and enlisted men will render the prescribed salutes in a military manner, the officer junior in rank, or the

enlisted men, saluting first. When several officers in company are saluted, all entitled to the salute shall return it.

(4) Except in the field under campaign or simulated campaign conditions, a mounted officer (or soldier) dismounts before addressing a superior officer not mounted.

(5) A man in formation shall not salute when directly addressed, but shall come to attention if at rest or at ease.

914. (1) Saluting distance is that within which recognition is easy. In general, it does not exceed 30 paces.

(2) When an officer entitled to the salute passes in rear of a body of troops, it is brought to attention while he is opposite the post of the commander.

915. In public conveyances, such as railway trains and street cars, and in public places, such as theaters, honors and personal salutes may be omitted when palpably inappropriate or apt to disturb or annoy civilians present.

916. Salutes to the National Anthem or when to the color (or standard) is sounded during ceremonies will be as prescribed in regulations, as herein amended.

917. Officers and enlisted men passing the uncased color will render honors as follows: If in uniform, they will salute as per principle 913 (1); if in civilian dress and covered, they will uncover, holding the headdress opposite the left shoulder with the right hand; if uncovered they will salute with the right-hand salute.

918. Sentinels on post doing interior guard duty conform to the foregoing principles, but salute by presenting arms when armed with the rifle. They will not salute if it interferes with the proper performance of their duties. Troops under arms will salute as prescribed in drill regulations.

919. (1) Commanders of detachments or other commands will salute officers of grades higher than the person commanding the unit, by first bringing the unit to attention and then saluting as in principle 913 (1). If the person saluted is of a junior or equal grade, the unit need not be at attention in the exchange of salutes.

(2) If two detachments or other commands meet, their commanders will exchange salutes, both commands being at attention.

920. Salutes and honors, as a rule, are not paid by troops actually engaged in drill, on the march, or in the field under

campaign or simulated campaign conditions. Troops on the service of security pay no compliments whatever.

921. If the command is in line at a halt (not in the field) and armed with the rifle, or with sabers drawn, it shall be brought to present arms or present saber before its commander salutes in the following cases: When the National Anthem is played, or when to the color or to the standard is sounded during ceremonies, or when a person is saluted who is its immediate or higher commander or a general officer, or when the national or regimental color is saluted.

922. At parades and other ceremonies, under arms, the command shall render the prescribed salute and shall remain in the position of salute while the National Anthem is being played; also at retreat and during ceremonies when to the color is played, if no band is present. If not under arms, the organizations shall be brought to attention at the first note of the National Anthem, to the color or to the standard, and the salute rendered by the officer or noncommissioned officer in command as prescribed in regulations, as amended herein.

923. No officer in civilian clothes or present informally in uniform shall be saluted with guns or have a guard paraded in his honor.

924. Guards shall not turn out on Sundays as a matter of compliment for officers of the United States Army, Navy, or Marine Corps.

925. Soldiers at all times and in all situations pay the same compliments to officers of the Army, Navy, Marine Corps, National Guard, and Volunteers as to officers of their own regiment, corps, or arm of service.

926. (1) An officer arriving at the headquarters of a military command, station, or post will call upon the commander thereof as soon as practicable and register his name, address, and the probable time of his stay. If the visiting officer be senior to the commander, the former may send his card and his address for registration, in which case it becomes the duty of the commander to make the first call.

(2) When any officer arrives at Washington, D. C., or at the headquarters of a territorial department, he will report as prescribed in paragraph 825, A. R.

(3) An officer arriving for duty with an organization, a staff department, at the Military Academy, or any of the

service schools, will make both an official and a call of courtesy upon the head or commander thereof as soon as practicable. If the arriving officer is the senior, the first call will be made by the junior.

(4) In case of large commands or posts, an arriving officer will pay such additional visits as his post, station, or regimental commander may prescribe. Under normal conditions it is considered desirable that at least the arriving field officers should call at the various organization headquarters.

(5) Official calls are made at the office of the commanding officer. If made after office hours and the commanding officer is not present, the visiting officer will register, leave his card and repeat the call informally the following morning during office hours. Social calls will be made at some convenient time at the quarters of the commanding officer.

(6) As a rule, juniors will give way to seniors and at all times juniors will show deference to their seniors and will not ignore their presence. These rules will apply whether in vehicles, on horseback, or on foot. In accompanying officers, juniors will walk or ride on the left of their seniors, unless there be special reason to the contrary. (Par. 915.)

(7) In case of an organization reporting at a post or station for duty, the commanding officer thereof, accompanied by his staff (if there be one), will immediately make an official call upon the commander of the post or station, as prescribed in paragraph (1). The commanding officer of the arriving troops may, at his discretion, be accompanied by the other officers of his command. If not accompanied by them at this first visit, he will arrange to present them officially at some convenient time to the post or station commander, unless otherwise directed. A similar procedure will be observed on the departure of an organization from a post or station.

(8) A subordinate officer, after reporting officially to the commanding officer of the post, headquarters, or station, will report, as soon as practicable, to his intermediate commanding officers, presenting to them copies of his assignment or other duty order. An officer returning from leave or detached service makes an official call, without delay, on the post or station commander and upon his intermediate commanders. An officer about to leave the post or station for any length of

time will make an official call upon the commander thereof and also upon his intermediate commanding officers.

(9) Newly arrived officers will be called upon promptly by the other officers of the post or station. In case of large commands, where the conditions are such as to make this usual custom burdensome or impracticable, the commanding officer may prescribe that visits shall only be exchanged between senior officers, or he may designate officers to make the visits, who shall extend the usual civilities on behalf of all the others, or he may prescribe that no visits of courtesy shall be required. A general officer is not required to return the official visits of officers of his command, except in the case of general officers or colonels; but when he considers it advisable, return calls on officers of grades junior to colonel shall be made at his direction by aids or other staff officers.

927. The interchange of compliments and visits between officers of the service is of great importance. Failure to pay the civilities customary in official and polite society is to the prejudice of the best interests of the service. The well-established customs of the Army in this regard will be carried out.

TRAINING REMOUNTS.

General Provisions.

928. Time required: The time required to train a remount **thoroughly** for the Cavalry service depends upon so many conditions, such as the animal's age, condition, temperament, capacity, and conformation, and the skill, zeal, industry, and ability of instructors and riders, that it can be stated only approximately. With young and undeveloped horses two years can profitably be employed. The first year's work would then include the **Preliminary exercises, not mounted; Preliminary exercises, mounted;** and **Further conditioning and training,** as embodied in these regulations; and the second year's work, the last part, as shown, namely, **Final conditioning and training.**

But in emergencies, such as preparation for war, mature horses of good conformation and in fair condition can be molded in about three months' time under competent instructors and ordinary riders into mounts fulfilling sufficiently well for the time being the requirements of the trooper's horse. The exigencies of active service afterwards will not prevent making up what may be found lacking. To meet such emergencies the methods and progression indicated herein for the first year's work under ordinary conditions of peace time are prescribed, and **Final conditioning and training** would be omitted.

929. Isolation upon arrival: When received in the regiment the remounts are placed under the care of the senior veterinarian and isolated for the minimum time necessary. They are then distributed to the troops.

930. Selection of riders: During the period of training the young horse should always be ridden by the same rider. Training takes precedence over all other troop work except the instruction of recruits. For this reason the troopers selected for it should be relieved from all other duty during the period of training. They should be chosen for their love of horses and their patience and gentleness. All concerned in the training should be well-instructed and skillful riders or there is no hope of success.

One selected trooper may be required to train and care for three remounts.

931. Cautions to instructors: The various means of training are left to the initiative of the instructor, but they should all be based upon two fundamental principles—the winning of the horse's confidence and a methodical progression on the part of the rider, founded upon the association of sensations. He should never lose sight of the benefit to be derived from a training that progresses methodically and without haste.

The best test of the instructor's ability is the condition of the horses, the cleanness of their limbs, and their temper at the end of their training.

The instructor should constantly bear in mind these precepts:

Never begin work without being absolutely sure of what is to be done.

Proceed in the horse's education from the known to the unknown; from the simple to the difficult.

Always use exactly the same effects to obtain the same results.

Remember that in the execution of every movement position should precede action.

Never ask anything of a horse while he is still under the impression of a preceding movement.

Never combat two resistances at the same time.

Never attribute to ignorance or bad temper of the horse the consequences of ignorance or lack of skill on the part of the rider.

Introduce the new features near the end of a lesson; then caress the horse and dismount.

It is pertinent to these rules to remember that during the whole course of the young horse's education a little progress every day should satisfy; demand that, but no more.

Remounts are not to be considered completely trained until they are able to execute all that is required of them in the school of the trooper and have been accustomed to firing, to the music of bands, to fluttering of flags, and all the other sights and sounds peculiar to military formations and evolutions. Advantage should be taken of every opportunity during work in the open to carry forward this training of the horse in fearlessness of sights and sounds to which he is not accustomed.

932. Work: Work is most important in training. It develops the horse and keeps his health and temper in balance. If he does not work, he grows fat and becomes too playful, blemishes himself under his own weight, increased by his riders, spoils his mouth by struggling against the hand. Yet he should be in rather high condition.

His work should be long out of doors (fully an hour and a half) and short indoors (not more than three-quarters of an hour at a time).

The length and duration of rides out of doors, as well as the intensity of requirements incident thereto, should vary from day to day; for instance, a long, hard ride should be followed by a shorter and easier one next day.

933. The standard required of horses: A trained charger or troop horse must be:

(*a*) Well balanced and capable of carrying a heavy weight over long distances with minimum loss of condition.

(*b*) Handy and quick in obeying the correct aids.

(*c*) Steady, both in and out of ranks.

(*d*) Capable of being ridden with one hand at any pace either in the company of other horses or alone.

(*e*) Active on his legs and a good jumper over ordinary obstacles.

(*f*) Unafraid of entering deep water or of swimming.

(*g*) Accustomed to arms.

934. Periods: For convenience in conducting the training, and in order that it may progress in a natural sequence, the school of the remount is divided into—

(*a*) First period, or preliminary exercises not mounted.

(*b*) Second period, or preliminary exercises, mounted.

(*c*) Third period, or further conditioning and training.

(*d*) Fourth period, or final conditioning and training.

935. Bitting: The bits used are, first and second periods, single snaffle; third, double snaffle; fourth, bit and bridoon.

FIRST PERIOD, OR PRELIMINARY EXERCISES, NOT MOUNTED.

Leading.
The longe.
Saddling.
Mounting lesson.
Training to bear the saber.

936. Leading young horses: Leading by the side of steady, old horses during the first days is an excellent exercise for remounts. It accustoms them to strange objects and calms them. They should be led first on one hand and then on the other so that the neck will not always be bent to the same side.

During the first two weeks of work they should be taken out to exercise in this manner at the walk for at least an hour, and then their work on the longe immediately afterwards may be conducted without too much playfulness through excess of spirits, and their first saddling and mounting lessons given without too much resistance.

937. The longe: All remounts should be trained in work on the longe.

The first lessons are so important that they should be given by the instructor himself or by a noncommissioned officer of experience and proved skill. If well given, only a few of short duration will be necessary.

If the work on the longe has been well directed, the horse should be calm and evenly gaited on the circle; pass freely from one gait to another at the simple indication of the voice; come forward or go away from the center according to the freedom given; in a word, be on the hand with the slightly stretched longe, as later he should be with a light tension on the reins.

938. Saddling: When the horse is quieted by work and gentle on the longe advantage should be taken of that condition to teach him gradually to bear the saddle—a lesson which, if given in the stable, might prove difficult. The saddle is first put on without stirrups or stirrup straps; the girth, quite loose at first, is tightened gradually during the work. When the horse is accustomed to the contact of the saddle and girth the stirrups are added and allowed to hang down on each side at the walk and trot. He is thus prepared for the mounting lesson, which becomes easy; saddling and mounting a young horse for the first time on the same day generally arouses his resistance.

939. Mounting lesson: The instructor selects, according to circumstances, the most opportune moment for giving the mounting lesson, always taking advantage of the calmness due to fatigue at the end of the period of instruction.

This lesson may also be given during the work on the longe, but always after the horse has been quieted by exercise. The instructor personally directs the first lesson, which is given to each horse individually. The greatest gentleness and patience are here necessary.

Accompanied by an assistant carrying a small measure of oats, if need be, he places himself squarely in front of the horse and pats him, taking hold of him only in case of necessity; the rider approaches the horse's head, pats him on the forehead, over the eyes, on the neck, and haunches. He strikes the saddle, lowers and raises the stirrups, then takes the reins, leaving them very long. He mounts without hurry, but without hesitation. If, during the lesson, the horse moves out of place or backs away, he goes back to the head, draws the horse forward with the snaffle reins and quietly begins again.

The rider in putting his foot in the stirrup is careful to point his toe down and not to touch the horse's side; this might disturb him. He should not stop after raising himself in the stirrup; that would break the equilibrium and run counter to the end sought. He should use his right hand in taking the right stirrup; in feeling for it with the toe he may frighten the horse.

In general he should avoid putting the horse in march as soon as he is in the saddle, so that the idea of the forward movement will not be associated in the horse's brain with receiving the rider's weight.

It is best the first few times to end the day's work with the mounting lesson and send the horse to the stable as a reward.

If a horse is found very difficult, the instructor immediately puts him back on the longe.

The mounting lesson should be given on both the right and left sides. This instruction of the colt should be thorough. Absolute docility must be obtained, even in the midst of noise and movement. However, it is well not to require too much at the very beginning.

940. Training to bear the saber: The longe may be utilized to accustom the colt to the saber. As with all new requirements one should wait until the close of work to give the lesson.

Only the scabbard is put on at first. When the horse bears it without fear the blade is added, and he is then exercised at the various gaits. This work, it is understood, is interspersed with halts, caresses, and frequent rests.

This, however, is only a step toward the series of exercises during work on the road which accustom the horse to the saber.

SECOND PERIOD, OR PRELIMINARY CONDITIONING AND TRAINING.

Mounted work.
First lessons in obedience to the aids.
Preliminary conditioning.
Hygiene.
Preparing the young horse to take his place in the ranks of the troop.

941. **Mounted work:** This is carried on both out of doors and in the riding hall. As soon as the young horse accepts his rider his conditioning should be begun and continued without interruption. It should, whenever possible, take place out of doors. Although the young horse acquires his full strength most rapidly in the fresh air and on straight lines, the first lessons should be given in the riding hall to enable the instructor to exercise closer watch, to study better the men and horses, and to avoid possible accidents.

The mingling of old horses with the remounts has a very good influence at the beginning.

The riding hall is used also when the weather requires it. Advantage should be taken of the opportunity to give the remounts the first lessons of the aids.

In general, the instructor should plan to work from one-half to three-quarters of an hour in a riding hall or other inclosure daily; followed by work outside of from one to two hours.

The basis of all training is **freedom in the forward movement.** From the first the horse must be taught to respond to the legs.

This is best obtained out of doors. If horses are worked too much in a riding hall they lose impulsion and get behind the bit.

942. First lessons in obedience to the aids: This preliminary education is quite necessary to permit the horse to be handled out of doors. It consists in teaching him—

(*a*) To move forward at the call of the legs:

Passing from the halt to the walk; from the walk to the trot; from the halt to the trot; from the trot to the gallop; and extending the walk and the trot.

(*b*) To slow up and stop at the tension on the reins:

Passing from the walk to the halt; from the trot to the walk; from the trot to the halt; from the gallop to the trot.

(c) To turn at the action of the leading rein or bearing rein and both legs:

Abouts; broken lines; serpentines; figures of eight; circling individually; half turns; and half turns in reverse.

(*d*) To back; limited to a few steps and executed dismounted.

943. Preliminary conditioning: By long, slow walks out of doors, short periods at the trot, and still shorter and very quiet periods at the gallop, the young horses may easily be brought in a short time to gallop 1 mile in 5 minutes, and to march, by a reasonable alternation of the gaits, 10 miles in 2 hours.

944. Hygiene: The instructor can not give too much attention to the grooming, the care of the feet, the feeding and bedding; the ventilation of the stables, and the appetites of the horses, furnishing mashes, gruels, green grass, and carrots (when available). With this in view, in addition to daily visits to the young horses in the stables, the instructors will once a week have the riders lead out their respective mounts, the latter equipped with snaffle bridles and without saddles, and will minutely inspect the condition of the teeth, eyes, nostrils, feet, legs, coats, and state of health of the horses as exhibited by their appearance generally. He will question the riders and arouse their interest in the points that may require attention.

945. Preparing the young horse to take his place in the ranks of the troop: From the beginning of mounted work at least one day each week should be devoted to accustoming the colt:

To arms and the handling of arms; to the packed saddle; to the trooper's entire equipment; to firing; and, during work

out of doors, to marching in column and in line, to deployment, movements by the flank and to the rear; to leaving the ranks; to leaving the other horses, working apart from them, and returning to them quietly.

THIRD PERIOD, OR FURTHER CONDITIONING AND TRAINING.

Work out of doors.
More marked obedience to the aids.
Jumping.
The use of arms.
Conditioning.
Duty in the ranks of the troop.

946. Work out of doors: Increase the work out of doors according to the state and temperament of the horses: Long periods at the walk are excellent for quieting the horse; walking and trotting up long, gentle slopes, for developing muscle and wind; and long, quiet gallops, for accustoming them to the speed of that gait without pulling and for building up their powers of endurance.

947. More marked obedience to the aids: More marked obedience to the aids should now be demanded in all the movements, such as abouts, broken lines, serpentines, figures of eight, individual circles, half turns, half turns in reverse, etc.; increasing and decreasing the speed of the gaits without fighting the hand or resisting the legs; changing the gaits with the horses straight, light on the bit, and handy; balanced as regards the distribution of weight on the forehand and the haunches; walking out freely, trotting steadily, and galloping at the different speeds of that gait without excitement.

The remounts should now be ridden frequently with the reins in one hand.

948. Jumping: The longe and the chute should be used in the young horse's first lessons in jumping. The obstacles should in the beginning be low and be gradually increased to about 3 feet in height as the horse gains in strength and cleverness. When he has become thoroughly obedient and willing he should be led in the open over varied obstacles, such as ditches, little brooks, up and down steep slopes, etc. Horses should be taught to lead freely under all conditions.

They should then have much practice, mounted, in passing obstacles out of doors, such as logs, small ditches, and other

specially constructed fences, hedges, etc., but always of such dimensions as to present no real difficulty or danger of injury to their legs and so arranged as to seem to have been encountered en route.

It is by frequent jumping and not in the height of the jumps that the horses become skillful and bold.

949. The use of arms: The horses should now be accustomed to the use of the pistol while passing targets and to running at heads with the saber; at the walk, slow trot, and the canter.

They should remain quiet in the presence of moving bodies of troops; be accustomed to the passing among them of dismounted men and to music and flags; and, if opportunity permits, they should be taught to swim.

In addition, they should be taught to carry double.

950. Conditioning: At the end of this phase of their training they should be able to gallop 2 miles in eight minutes without fatigue, and to march with full field equipment by reasonable alternation of gaits 15 miles in three hours.

Conditioning involves the development of muscle and wind, and endurance, hardiness, and agility on varied ground. The instructor can not be too solicitous about the young horse's legs and feet. A horse, in good condition, presents a general aspect of health, wide-awake eye, brilliant coat, supple skin, muscles standing out; his flank is well let down, and his easy, calm gaits show strength.

If the colts are barefoot, their feet should frequently be leveled and shaped with the rasp.

951. Duty in the ranks of the troop: In time of peace the remounts may now, habitually at the expiration of about three months, be returned for duty with the troops to which they are assigned. They participate in the drills, marches, and maneuvers of the troop until such time (not later than the date of the beginning of the next period of garrison training) when their education is to be continued and carried to completion, as indicated in the succeeding period.

In case, however, of preparation for war or other emergency they may now render good service; but commanders must in war, even more than in peace, seek every opportunity to improve the conditioning and training of their horses.

Fourth Period, or Final Conditioning and Training.

Repetition with the bit of the work on the snaffle.
Rôle and position of the head and neck in movement.
To obtain engagement of the hindquarters.
To obtain mobility of the haunches.
To obtain suppleness of the spinal column.
To obtain mobility of the shoulders and lightness of the forehand.
To obtain suppleness of the jaw and the poll.
Conditioning.
Jumping.
Backing.
Changes of direction.
Suppleness and obedience.
The gallop departs (limit of training for the troop horse).

952. Repetition with the bit of the work on the snaffle: This repetition and review should not be hastened. It should be characterized in the beginning by long quiet rides out of doors—at first at the walk and later at the trot and the gallop with the reins long but taut, and the legs gently urging the horse forward. This, in addition to his natural inclination to move forward freely out of doors, will induce the horse to take a steady pressure on the bit without pulling, and diminish the risk, always existing during the first lessons, of getting the horse behind the bit.

All the preceding work on the snaffle should be repeated with the curb, keeping in mind the greater power of the bit as compared to the snaffle.

The instructor himself should adjust the bits to each horse with the most solicitous care, and should not hesitate afterwards to return to the snaffle in individual cases, due to the delicacy of the horse's mouth or, as often happens, to the poor seat and heavy hand of the rider.

953. Rôle and position of the head and neck in movement: At the beginning of training the young horse should be allowed to stretch out his head and neck to the front, but required by the rider's legs to go well into the bit and to keep the reins stretched.

As training progresses, in proportion as the colt gains balance and handiness and engagement of the hindquarters will

the neck be raised and curved slightly upward and the head approach the vertical.

The horse uses the head and neck as a balancer, and the rider should always grant him as much liberty as possible by means of a firm seat, light hands and long, taut reins.

954. To obtain engagement of the hindquarters: The horse should be induced to engage his hindquarters and with them to support his weight, in stopping and in making rapid changes of direction. This is brought about by much practice in increasing and decreasing the pace; passing from the walk to the trot, the trot to the gallop, and vice versa; broken lines, serpentines, circles, half turns, and false gallops; with the haunches following sometimes the track of the forehand, sometimes a track a little inside that of the forehand, except in the case of the false gallop.

The false gallop causes the horse to lower the croup and engage the hindquarters, but the haunches must follow the forehand and not be pressed inward.

There should be much practice in the false gallop, for the reason that troop horses at drill and maneuvers and other work out of doors do not change the lead at each change of direction and should therefore turn true or false with equal facility. This is begun by broken lines and perfected by serpentines and circles and figures of eight at the gallop.

955. To obtain mobility of the haunches: The horse should displace the haunches to the right or left at the pressure of the leg a little behind the girth.

The best movements for obtaining this are, half turns in reverse, executed slightly on the forehand, the haunches swinging outward a little, individual circles in the same manner, both gradually reduced in dimensions, leading eventually to the about on the forehand.

When mobility of the haunches is well established it should not be practiced afterwards as a gymnastic exercise.

956. To obtain suppleness of the spinal column: By this is meant the lateral or vertical bending of the spinal column. It is obtained laterally by galloping on a large circle, the radius of which is reduced as training progresses; vertically by increasing and decreasing the pace; changing the gaits, especially from the walk to the halt, from the trot to the walk, and to the halt; from the gallop to the trot, to the walk,

nd to the halt; by half halts, false gallops, and backing; ll with a gradually increasing degree of collection.

957. To obtain mobility of the shoulders and lightness of the orehand: Riders are very apt to bring about excessive mo- ility of the haunches and to neglect those exercises tending o lighten the forehand and to render the horse easy to manage ut of doors. The result is a horse that constantly uses his aunches laterally as a defense and is consequently difficult o hold straight at any gait.

Therefore, mobility of the haunches should be reduced to trict necessity, which is obedience to the leg; engagement of ne haunches sought constantly in increasing measure, while ghtness of the forehand and mobility of the shoulders should e the object of most particular concern, because it is the uality that renders the horse supple and mobile in the gallop, asy to guide, and clever on varied ground and over obstacles.

For this the best exercises are abouts, broken lines, and erpentines, causing the forehand to swing around the aunches as a movable pivot; the circle and figure of eight ith haunches inside; half turns with the radii gradually educed until the about on the haunches is reached.

Broken lines, increasing and decreasing the pace, and chang- ng the gaits, constantly practiced, bring most valuable results n the training of the trooper's horse.

After collected work for a few minutes the horse should be xtended, allowed to relax, and then brought to the walk and etted, to reward him for his obedience.

958. To obtain suppleness of the jaw and the poll: If the ymnastic exercises have been so conducted as to bring about ngagement of the hindquarters and lightness in the fore- and, the jaw and the poll will probably have become supple s a natural consequence; and the acquirement of balance— hat is, a proper distribution of the weight on the forehand nd the haunches—will have brought in its train a correct osition of the head and neck.

If, however, notwithstanding a relative suppleness in the est of the body, the horse has maintained an abnormal stiff- ess of the jaw and rigidity at the poll, resort must be had to esistances of the fingers combined with energetic action of he legs, or to holding three reins in one hand and vibrating he fourth, or to division of supports by holding the snaffle

reins in one hand and the curb in the other and alternating the feel of the bit and the snaffle.

A close inspection should be made to determine: Whether the contractions are due to ill-fitting bits and curb chains; diseases or injury in the mouth or defective teeth; to an injury or defect in the loin or hocks which the horse seeks to protect; or, as is often the case, to the heavy or inexperienced hand of the rider. To remove the cause is to apply the remedy.

959. Conditioning: If the horse has arrived at this stage of his training without injury, with appetite and digestion unimpaired, and with good wind and muscle, the rider will only need to increase progressively the requirements as to gaits, time, and distance, with suitable periods of relaxation or complete rest, until the horse is eventually able to gallop 3 miles in 11 minutes without undue fatigue, and to execute easily, with full field equipment, a march of 25 miles in 4 hours.

960. Jumping: If the instruction in passing obstacles out of doors has been well conducted, the horses will at the end of this period jump boldly, but without rushing, obstacles 3 feet in height or 8 feet in width of any kind or character ordinarily encountered in cross-country riding. This is a standard easily reached by all troop horses. A greater effort upon the part of all the horses ought not to be demanded except upon occasions of necessity.

961. Backing: Ordinarily, if the preceding work has been well carried out, the horse will be supple, strong, and light and will offer but little resistance to backing. The rider will use the right leg or left to break up contractions by mobilizing the haunches, or oppose alternately each of the shoulders to the corresponding haunch. If the horse still refuses, he should be driven forward with the legs and gathered and the attempt renewed.

The horse should back straight, quietly, with regular strides, and be ready to move forward promptly at the call of the legs.

After backing a few steps the young horse should be moved forward before halting and then petted. Do not back the horse as a regular exercise.

In obstinate cases do a little work dismounted. Stand facing the horse's head, snaffle rein in each hand. Start to lead the

horse forward and, just as he moves, press him to the rear with the bit. Relax slightly and press him again as each forefoot is to be moved. If the horse fails to move a foot, stepping on it will cause him to do so.

962. Changes of direction: The young horse should now make the changes of direction with gradually increasing rapidity and exactness until the wide turns, short turns, and turns in place are executed in a manner simulating actual conditions of combat.

963. Suppleness and obedience: Suppleness of the rider is a necessity for a good seat and light hands. Light hands are a necessity for relaxed muscles of the jaw, poll, and neck of the horse. These are necessary for lightness and willing obedience.

Quiet halts can be reduced gradually to half halts and finally to forward and backward movements, reciprocally following each other for a few steps only in each direction. This will develop great lightness and balance. The forward and backward or half halt and forward movements should merge into each other so smoothly that there is no perceptible abruptness. Suppleness, free play of the shoulders, and engagement of the haunches can be developed by work on circles, serpentines, and figures of eight.

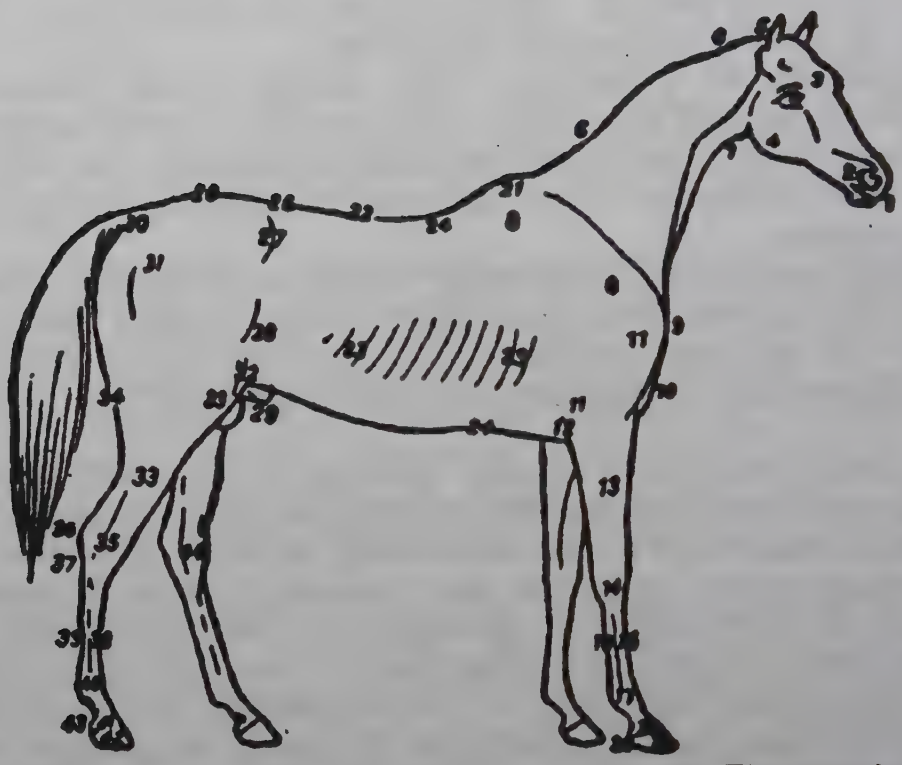
Steadiness will be developed by long, well-cadenced trots.

Quietness will come with even gaits and long, swinging gallops.

964. The gallop departs: (*See* par. 238.) If the preceding exercises and gymnastics have brought about obedience to the aids and at the same time rendered the horse strong, supple, and well balanced, the gallop departs with the lead desired may now be obtained, endeavoring, as always, to keep the horse practically straight and avoiding exaggerated displacement of the haunches or bending of the neck, both of which later become defenses and eventually veritable vices.

The gallop departs mark the limit of training necessary for the troop horse. It establishes a standard which, if pressed to perfection up to this point, renders the trooper able to manage his horse in all the situations in which he may momentarily find himself; at drill, maneuvers, on the march, and in combat. It is a standard, moreover, which all troop horses may easily attain if the instruction is carried along intelligently and methodically.

POINTS OF THE HORSE.



Head.

1, Muzzle.
2, Nostril.
3, Forehead.
4, Jaw.
5, Poll.

Neck.

6, 6, Crest.
7, Throttle or windpipe.

Fore quarter.

8, 8, Shoulder blade.
9, Point of shoulder.
10, Bosom or breast.
11, 11, True arm.
12, Elbow.
13, Forearm (arm).
14, Knee.
15, Cannon bone.
16, Back sinew.
17, Fetlock or pastern joint.
18, Coronet.
19, Hoof or foot.
20, Heel.

Body or middle piece.

21, Withers.
22, Back.
23, 23, Ribs (forming together the barrel or chest).
24, 24, The circumference of the chest at this point, called the girth.
25, The loins.
26, The croup.
27, The hip.
28, The flank.
29, Sheath.
30, The root of the dock or tail.

Hind quarter.

31, The hip joint, round, or whirlbone.
32, The stifle joint.
33, 33, Lower thigh or gaskin.
34, The quarters.
35, The hock.
36, The point of the hock.
37, The curb place.
38, The cannon bone.
39, The back sinew.
40, Pastern or fetlock joint.
41, Coronet.
42, Hoof or foot.
43, Heel.
44, Spavin place.

CARE OF HORSES.

965. GENERAL PROVISIONS: A most important duty of the Cavalry officer is keeping his horses in such training and health as will enable them to do their work to the best advantage. The proper performance of this duty requires careful instruction of the men in the treatment, stabling, management, watering, feeding, grooming, and exercising of the horses, and such continuous supervision and inspection by officers as will insure that instructions are understood and are being carried out.

Cavalry officers should make themselves thoroughly acquainted with the natural history and physiology of the horse, and with the effects of different methods of treatment, changes of diet, etc., upon his system and powers of endurance.

They should know the symptoms and methods of treatment of disease common to horses, the measures required in emergencies, the effects of the medicines supplied to the troop. They should also be practically familiar with the principles of horseshoeing.

Sore backs are as a rule the result of carelessness or neglect; the immediate cause may be faulty adjustment of the saddle or equipment or bad riding.

At each halt officers and noncommissioned officers should inspect the adjustment of saddles and equipment of their men and should at no time tolerate lounging in the saddle. The men at each halt should be required to inspect and, if necessary, clean out their horses' feet.

Horses when received in the regiment are assigned to troops according to color, under direction of the commanding officer. They are branded on the hoof of one fore foot with the letter of the troop and the number of the regiment on the same line, as D 7.

Captains make permanent assignments of horses; after a horse is so assigned his rider will not exchange him nor allow him to be used by any other person without permission.

966. RULES FOR THE CARE OF HORSES: All troopers must be taught and must thoroughly understand the following rules for the care of horses:

Horses require gentle treatment. Docile but bold horses are apt to retaliate upon those who abuse them, while persistent kindness often reclaims vicious animals.

Before entering a horse's stall and when coming up behind him, speak to him gently, then approach quietly.

Never kick a horse, strike him about the head, or otherwise abuse him.

Never punish a horse except at the time he commits an offense, and then only in a proper manner—never in anger.

Give the horse an opportunity to drink before leaving the picket line or stable and before putting the bit in his mouth. In cold weather warm the bit before putting it in the horse's mouth.

Never take a rapid gait until the horse has been warmed by gentle exercise.

When a horse is brought to the stable or picket line in a heated condition, never allow him to stand uncovered; put a blanket on him and rub his legs or walk him until he is cool. If he is wet, put him under shelter, not in a draft, and rub him with a wisp until dry.

Never feed grain or fresh grass to a horse when heated. Hay will not hurt a horse however heated he may be.

Never water a horse when heated unless the exercise or march is to be immediately resumed. Sponging out the mouth and nostrils is refreshing to the heated horse and will not hurt him.

Never throw water on any part of a horse when heated.

Never allow a horse's back to be cooled suddenly. To cool the back gradually, remove the pack and equipment from the saddle, loosen the girth, remove the blanket and replace it with the dry side next the horse, replace the saddle, girthing it loosely.

Never put the horse up for night until he is thoroughly clean, especially around his legs, pasterns, and feet.

Individual men returning from mounted duty or pass will report their return to the noncommissioned officer in charge of stables, who will inspect each horse and see that he is properly cared for.

967. STABLES AND STABLE MANAGEMENT: Foul air and dampness are the causes of many diseases of the horse, hence the importance and economy of spacious, clean, dry, and well-ventilated stables.

The picket line should be established in the immediate vicinity of the stable. The floor of the picket line should be raised and trenches to carry off the rain should be provided so that the ground upon which the horses stand may be kept dry.

Paddocks, with shade and water, should be provided near the stables; if there is no shade, shelter from the sun should be extemporized. The picket line and paddock should be sprinkled to keep down the dust; crude oil may be used to advantage. Bedding racks should be provided near each stable.

The horses are assigned stalls and places on the picket line by platoons. The name and hoof number of each horse with the name of the rider is placed over the stall.

The stable sergeant takes immediate charge of the stables, picket line, and paddock, forage, and stable property in general.

The stable sergeant is responsible that the stables and their surroundings are kept at all times thoroughly policed and free from smells; he is usually assisted by one or more stable orderlies.

Sufficient men are detailed as stable police to perform the general police and, except at night, to collect promptly all manure either in the stables, on the picket line, or in the paddocks. The stable police also assist in the feeding, watering, and bedding of the horses.

Manure and foul litter must not be allowed to accumulate in or near the stable, but must be carried to the manure heap daily.

In the morning stalls are cleaned and the stables policed under direction of the stable sergeant.

The bedding is taken up, carefully shaken out, and sorted. All parts of the bedding which can be used again are taken to the bedding racks and spread thereon for a thorough drying; parts which can not be used again are sent to the manure heap. Special attention is necessary in this matter, as the allowance of straw is insufficient under most favorable

conditions. In the evening the dried bedding, mixed with such fresh straw or bedding as may be necessary, is laid down. The bed must be soft and even, with the thickest part toward the manger.

If practicable, all woodwork within reach of the horses should be protected with sheet metal or painted with a thin coat of gas tar; other woodwork and brick should be painted a light shade and then kept clean and free from dust.

Feed boxes must be kept clean; they should be washed with diluted vinegar from time to time, always after feeding bran mash or other soft food.

During the day, except in very cold or stormy weather, the horses, when not being used or fed, should stand at the picket line or in the paddocks. In hot climates, however, if there is not sufficient shade on the picket line or in the paddocks, it is better to keep the horses in the stables during the heat of the day.

Smoking in the stables is prohibited.

One or more covered lights should be provided in the stables at night.

968. STABLE DUTY: Captains are responsible for the proper performance of stable duty. In addition to the grooming, they will require such other duty as may be necessary to keep the stables, horses, and equipment in proper condition.

Mounted work must be followed immediately by "stables"; the horses are then thoroughly groomed, the saddlery cleaned and put away in perfect order.

All troop officers will be present at this time, the platoon leaders superintending the work of their platoons.

The horses should also be brushed off before going out to drill or exercise in the morning.

969. GROOMING: Grooming is essential to the general health and condition of the domesticated horse. Horses improperly groomed, with ragged manes, unkempt pasterns, and feet improperly looked after are an indication of an inefficient organization. Clean horses, properly equipped and smartly turned out, add to the esprit of an organization and give a fair indication of its discipline and efficiency.

The grooming is done by platoon, under the supervision of the platoon commander. The platoon file closer and the other noncommissioned officers of the platoon assist in such super-

vision after grooming their own mounts. When a trooper has finished his work and it has been inspected he may be allowed to attend to other duties or be dismissed.

According to circumstances, the platoon or the troop may be marched to or from the stables or the men may be allowed to go and return individually.

On returning from drill or exercise, and usually in the field, the horses are unbridled and girths loosened. Any necessary precautions are then taken with horses that appear to be too warm to be watered at once. The other horses are watered and fed hay when the latter is available. Grain must not be fed or placed in the boxes until it is certain that the horses are thoroughly cool. The men are then given an opportunity to relieve themselves, put on their stable clothes, care for their equipments, and prepare for the work of grooming, thus beginning their stable work comfortably and without unnecessary hurry.

The captain or the officer in charge supervises generally the grooming and care of saddlery of the platoons, holding the platoon commander responsible and calling his attention to any deficiencies or neglects.

The horses of the officers and of the first sergeant are groomed by designated troopers. All other noncommissioned officers and men groom their own mounts. The first sergeant assigns men for grooming any extra horses and those whose riders are absent.

The currycomb should never be used on the legs from the knees and hocks downward, nor about the head, and when occasionally required to loosen dried mud or matted hair on the fleshy parts of the body it must be applied gently.

To groom the horse proceed as follows:

Take the currycomb in the right hand, fingers over back of comb, and the brush in the left hand; first use currycomb on near side of horse, beginning at neck, then chest, shoulders, near foreleg down to knee, then back, flank, belly, loins, and rump, then near hind leg down to hock.

Change currycomb to left hand, brush in right, and proceed in a similar manner on the off side of horse.

Strike currycomb against heel frequently to free it from dirt.

Take brush in left hand, currycomb in right, and brush entire near side of horse in same order as when currycomb

was used except that in brushing legs brush down to the hoof. Take brush in right hand, currycomb in left, and proceed in a similar manner on the off side. After every few strokes clean the brush from dust with the currycomb.

In using the brush the man should stand well away from the horse, should keep his arm stiff, and should throw the weight of the body against the brush.

Having done with the brush, rub or dust off the horse with the grooming cloth, wipe about the face, eyes, and nostrils, arrange the mane and tail, and clean the dock. Finally go over the legs once more and clean out the hoofs. In cleaning the mane and tail begin brushing at the end of the hair and gradually work up to the roots, separating the locks with the fingers so as to get out all scurf and dirt. Tails require frequent washing with warm water and soap. The skin under the flank and between the hind quarters must be soft, clean, and free from dust.

The wisp is used when the horse comes in wet and also for stimulating the coat. It is made by twisting or plaiting straw into a rope. The ends are then bent together, cut off square, and rubbed on a board until they form a soft, even straw brush.

The wisp should be worked forward and backward well into the coat, so that full advantage may be obtained from the friction. After finishing with the wisp the coat should be laid flat.

Hand rubbing is beneficial. When a horse has had very hard, exhausting work, his legs should be hand rubbed and afterwards bandaged, taking care that the bandages are not tight. An exhausted horse should also be given stimulants and warm gruel.

The value of grooming is dependent upon the force with which the brush is used and the thoroughness of the other work.

Officers and noncommissioned officers should, by continuous personal supervision, see that the grooming is properly done.

No horse should be considered in order until he is thoroughly clean; his mane and tail brushed out and laid flat; his eyes and nostrils wiped or washed, and hoofs put in order.

The pasterns and that part of the mane where the crown-piece of the bridle rests should be neatly trimmed, and the mane and tail plucked.

At each "stables" the horses' feet and shoeing are carefully examined. Horses requiring shoeing are reported to the stable sergeant.

Each horse should be inspected by an officer before the man who has groomed him is permitted to leave.

The sheath will be kept clean by washing when necessary with warm water and castile soap.

Every trooper should be a good horse manager and groom.

970. WATERING: Except when they are heated, it is desirable that horses should have free access to water at all times. As this is usually impossible, it becomes necessary to water at stated times.

Horses should, if possible, be watered before feeding, or not until two hours after feeding. As horses rarely drink in the early morning, the first watering must follow the feeding, but after the proper interval, if practicable.

A horse requires from 5 to 15 gallons of water daily, depending upon the temperature and upon the work he is doing. Except in very cold weather, horses should be watered at least three times daily—in the morning, before the noon feeding, and before the evening feeding. In warm weather, water drawn from a cold well or spring should be allowed to stand long enough for the chill to pass off before the horse is allowed to drink.

On the march the oftener the animals are watered the better, especially as it is not usually known when another watering place will be reached. By watering from buckets many watering places not otherwise available may be utilized.

If a mounted command has to march a long distance without water, so that it will be necessary to encamp en route, the animals are fed, but denied water until just before starting, when they are permitted to drink freely. The command marches in the afternoon and does not encamp until it has accomplished at least half of the distance; it moves early the next morning to reach water.

Horses must be watered quietly and without confusion; the manner in which this duty is performed is a good test of the discipline of a mounted command.

The horses are led or ridden at a walk to and from the watering place. No crowding will be allowed, nor will any horse be hurried or have his head jerked up from the water.

The horses are watered under the immediate direction of the senior officer or noncommissioned officer present at stables or at other time of watering; an officer should always be present when the horses of other commands are liable to be met at the watering places.

971. **FEEDING**: Horses should be fed three times a day—at reveille, in the middle of the day, and at night. This rule must be rigidly enforced on the march, the noon grain feed being carried on the horse. A desirable distribution of the grain ration is, for a horse which is getting 12 pounds per day, 3 pounds in the morning, 3 or 4 pounds at noon, and the rest at night. Hay, as a rule, is not fed in the morning; about one-third of the ration should be fed at noon, except on the march, and the remainder at night.

The use of bran once or twice a week is important for stabled horses. In spring or early summer they should be grazed. A lump of rock salt should be kept in each manger.

Before feeding hay it should be thoroughly shaken out with a fork so as to get rid of dust and seed; it is also advisable to moisten the hay before giving it to the horse. The grain, if possible, should be run over wire screens or allowed to fall through the air so as to remove dust.

In the morning the horses are usually fed at or before reveille. The noon feed of hay is usually placed in the mangers while the organization is at drill, but the grain is not fed until the horses are thoroughly cool. The evening feed is placed in the mangers after the stable has been thoroughly policed for the night.

It is advisable that the horses eat at least a portion of the allowance of hay before the grain is fed to them.

All horses do not require the same amount of forage; the amount given each horse must be based, therefore, upon his individual requirements, which should be closely watched by the stable sergeant. When a horse leaves some of his grain, his ration should be reduced that amount. The amount to be fed each horse each meal should be chalked up on a small blackboard placed so as to be easily seen by the men distributing the grain. A convenient arrangement is a board

about 12 inches high by 4 inches wide divided by two horizontal lines into three 4-inch squares. In the uppermost square should be marked in pounds the morning feed of grain, in the center square the noon feed, and in the bottom square the night feed. When a horse is sick or injured his grain ration should be reduced to between 6 and 9 pounds per day, depending upon the horse.

When forage can not be obtained grazing should be required at every spare moment, especially early in the morning when dew is on the grass.

All forage received by an organization should be checked for weight and to see that it is up to contract specifications. All officers should be familiar with the characteristics of good forage and the manner in which it is commercially graded for contract specifications. To obtain this knowledge officers should be encouraged to visit large commercial stables.

The daily allowance of oats, barley, or corn is 12 pounds for each horse; that of hay, 14 pounds. The allowance of straw for bedding is 100 pounds per month for each animal.

Good oats weigh about 40 pounds to the bushel; barley, about 48 pounds; corn, about 56 pounds. Pressed hay weighs about 11 pounds per cubic foot.

The standard bushel in the United States contains 2,150.4 cubic inches. A cubic yard contains 21.69 bushels. A box 16 by 16.8 by 8 inches holds 1 bushel; a box 12 by 11.2 by 8 inches holds half a bushel; a box 8 by 8 by 8.4 inches holds 1 peck; a box 8 by 8 by 4.2 inches holds one-half peck, or 4 quarts.

972. EXERCISING: To keep a horse in good condition he should have two hours' exercise daily. This exercise should be **under the saddle**, or, if that is impracticable, it should be given by leading beside another horse.

In leading care must be taken to lead as much on the left as on the more convenient right side. This can be automatically regulated by having the leading done on the right side on the odd-numbered days of the month and on the left on the even-numbered days.

In special cases exercise may be given on the longe, but this must be done under proper supervision or injury may result.

Turning a horse loose in a paddock does not give him proper exercise, and if the paddock is a large one where he can get

up speed, it results in giving him a taste for freedom which inspires a high-spirited animal to try to get rid of his rider when he feels like having a run.

The horse should associate the control of a rider with the pleasure of all exercise so that he may accept it naturally as a fixed habit.

It is objectionable for one man to lead more than one extra horse for exercise, as the gaits must then be more restricted and on ordinary roads the footing for some of the horses will be poor.

If a large space is available for paddock purposes, it should be divided into several inclosures, giving space for a part of the animals to move about quietly in each, but not enough to encourage them to gallop.

973. SICK HORSES: Horses on sick report are under the immediate charge of the stable sergeant.

When a veterinarian is present he should prescribe the treatment to be given to sick horses, and he should inspect all sick horses at least once daily.

The veterinarian should also visit each organization at least once a day at one of the stated "stables"; he should be freely consulted as to minor ailments and as to the means of keeping the horses in fit condition.

In the absence of a veterinarian the sick horses are treated by the stable sergeant under the direction of the captain.

Serious disease is best avoided by immediate and constant attention to minor ailments, galls, etc.

If a horse sustains an injury, neglects his food, refuses water, or gives any evidence of sickness, his condition should be reported at once to the stable sergeant. It is the duty of any man observing such condition to make the necessary report.

974. SHOEING: Horses will be shod according to the principles outlined in the authorized manual.

All officers must understand the principles of proper shoeing and be able to supervise the work of the horseshoers.

A trooper should know how to put on a shoe in an emergency. The following extracts from the manual (The Army Horseshoer, 1912) are therefore here incorporated.

"The foot should be prepared so that it will approximate as nearly as possible to a state of nature, and only such trimming

is allowed as is absolutely necessary for the purpose of fitting and securing the shoe.

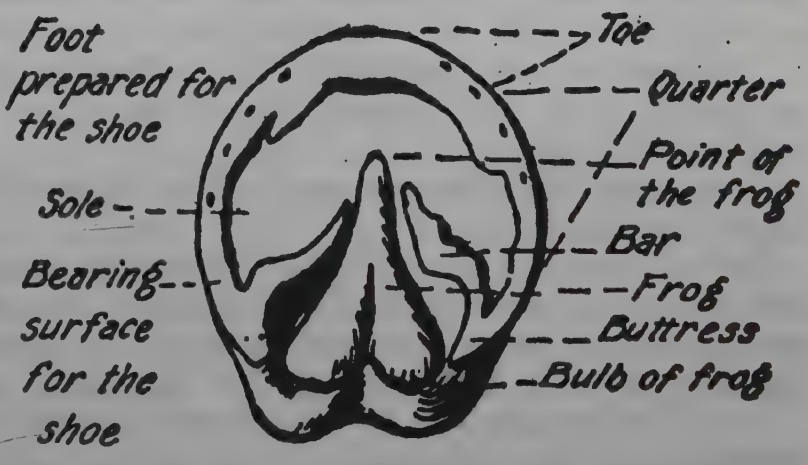
"The knife must never be used on the bars or on the frog. The bars strengthen the hoof and assist in its expansion. Cutting, therefore, weakens them and prevents them from performing their function.

"The practice of using the knife to trim the bars or to cut a notch at the junction of the frog and bar at the heel (called opening the heels in civilian shops) always tends to produce contracted feet.

"Never use a knife on the hoof of a horse that has been running barefoot nor on flat feet.

"Ragged parts of the frog may be cut away by careful use of the nippers.

"With a flat foot it is frequently necessary to remove a part of the outer edge of the wall in order that the nails may be driven in the white line where they belong. This is the only case where it is permitted to rasp the outside wall. The outer coating of the wall and the layers of dead horn on the sole and frog serve to retain the moisture in the hoof.



"The hot shoe must never be applied to the horse's foot under any circumstances.

"When shoes are left on the feet for too great a length of time corns and other ailments result. Ordinarily a shoe should be removed once a month. The lightest shoe that will last for this time is the best shoe. It should carefully follow the form of the foot, or if the foot is broken the shoe follows the original shape of the foot. Its length is regulated by the bulb of the frog.

"The ground surface of the shoe should be level and smooth, except for use in snow, when the shoe with the ground surface concaved prevents balling. That portion of the upper surface

which presses against the bearing surface of the foot must be level, smooth, and accurately shaped to support it, and when the upper shoe surface is wider than the bearing surface the inner edge must be **concaved to avoid excessive sole pressure.** This is one of the most important requisities of correct horseshoeing. Concussion of the sole against the inner edge of the upper shoe surface invariably produces soreness.

"One side of the shank of a horse nail is flat. The other side is concave and also has a bevel near the point. This bevel as it enters into the horn forces the point of the nail in the direction of the other side (flat side). Therefore in driving a nail always hold it with the flat side toward outside edge of the shoe.

"Nails should come out at a height of not more than 1 inch from the bottom of the hoof.

"In garrison, at the discretion of the colonel or of the commanding officer, the horses may be left unshod, but shoes will be kept fitted for each horse ready to be put on.

"**Inspection of shoeing:** The following examination should be made while the horse is standing on a level floor with the foot on the ground:

"(*a*) Are the axes correct when viewed from the front and from the side?

"(*b*) Does the shoe follow the outer line of the wall to the last nail hole and from there extend outward, allowing about one-eighth of an inch at the heel for expansion? Has the rule against rasping the hoof to fit the shoe been violated?

"(*c*) Is the toe clip in the center properly made and properly seated?

"(*d*) Are the nails driven at the proper height and proper distance apart? Have any old stubs been left in the wall?

"(*e*) Are the clinches well turned and set in, of the proper size, and have they been smoothed off but not rasped sufficiently to weaken them?

"The foot should then be raised and the examination continued.

"(*f*) Is the shoe of the proper size and weight; the last nail hole back of the bend of the quarter?

"(*g*) Has enough horn been removed; has too much been removed; is the foot level?

"(*h*) Does the shoe rest evenly on the wall, covering the buttress and showing no air space at any point?

"(*i*) Is the shoe properly concaved so as to avoid pressure on the sole?

"(*j*) Has the knife been used on the bars, sole, or frog?

"(*k*) Are the nails well seated and of the proper size?

"(*l*) Are the heels of the shoe correct in width and thickness, and are they properly rounded without sharp edges or points? Is their length even with the bulb of the frog?"

In garrison a shoeing list should be kept on the stable bulletin board showing the name and hoof number of each horse, the date of last shoeing, and the class of shoes then used. The corresponding entries should be made daily, and at each "stables" the horses appearing on the list as shod since the last prior "stables" should be carefully inspected by the responsible officer. In general, horses should be shod every four or five weeks.

CARE OF SADDLERY.

975. The saddlery and equipment must always be cleaned after use. This duty, like the care of the horse, is to be regarded as part of the mounted duty itself; thus a drill is not over until horse, saddlery, arms, and equipments have been put again in condition. According to need, the leather is simply wiped off with a damp sponge or fully taken apart and well soaped and cleaned. In no case must it be soaked in water.

If the soap used does not contain a sufficient amount of free oil the leather must be oiled to keep it pliable. A mixture of one-half neat's-foot oil and one-half mutton tallow, well rubbed in, keeps leather in good condition. Special care is taken to keep the underside of the skirts of the saddle and the parts which do not come in contact with the clothing well oiled. The seat and outside of the skirts will rarely require oil.

Metal parts are kept clean and free from rust; they may require oiling if not regularly used.

The saddle blanket must be kept clean and soft and free from wrinkles. After use it must be dried and then well shaken (unfolded). It must never be folded wet and left

thus with the saddle. Provision will be made in the saddle room or stables for hanging it up to dry.

When necessary the blanket should be thoroughly cleansed by repeated immersions in tepid soapsuds and hung over a pole or line to dry without wringing or pressing it.

FITTING THE SADDLE.

976. The following principles are of general application in saddle fitting:

(*a*) The withers must not be pinched or pressed upon.

(*b*) The central line of the back must have no pressure put upon it.

(*c*) The shoulder blades must have full and unhampered movement.

(*d*) The loins must not carry weight.

(*e*) The weight must be put upon the ribs through the medium of the muscles covering them.

(*f*) The weight must be evenly distributed over a surface which extends from the play of the shoulders to the last true rib.

The above principles must be applied whatever the type of saddle that may be used.

MARCHES, CAMPS.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

(*See also* pars. 966, 970, 971.)

977. The successful conduct of a march is one of the surest tests of the ability and good judgment not only of the commander, but of all subordinate officers as well. Certain general principles and some exact rules are laid down to fit the case of a normal march, but tactical considerations as well as the condition of roads and weather, the necessary forage, water and shelter, sanitation, and other circumstances render a march of any considerable body of mounted troops one requiring the most unremitting attention to details on the part of the commander and his subordinates. A successful Cavalry march whether in peace or war is one that places the men and horses at the time and place needed in the best possible condition for the service required. Failure of mounted troops to successfully carry out a mission is due as a rule to exhaustion or injuries to the horses rather than to the men.

The training of officers of all grades must be such that solicitude for the condition of horses on the march is second nature; constant effort should be made, however severe the work, to stimulate the pride of the trooper in having and in keeping his mount in fit condition; if such stimulus is ineffective then the remedy, if the trooper is at fault, lies in other directions. Under favorable conditions field service offers the best opportunity for conditioning the horses and hardening the men.

978. Preparation: Responsibility for the timely ordering of necessary preparations preliminary to leaving a permanent camp or station rests with the commander. All probable needs of the command for the service on which ordered should be anticipated, instructions prepared, verified, and issued once in complete form, and no departure therefrom permitted. The march order proper for the actual movement of the command

conforms to the requirements of Field Service Regulations. An order or memorandum of service calls will be issued and distributed in ample time the night before beginning a march stating the hour for reveille, stables, and breakfast and such other duties as can reasonably be anticipated.

Except on account of imperative military reasons, Cavalry should not leave camp for an hour or more after daylight. If grazing is depended upon, this is especially necessary, since horses as a rule graze more freely in the early morning when rested. Ample time should be allowed after reveille for grooming and feeding and thereafter for the men to breakfast. All stable duties should be done quietly and without hurry or confusion under the immediate supervision of troop and squadron commanders. In each troop a man is detailed to walk the picket line while grain is being fed, to look out for the horses generally and to take off the feed or the nose bag of a horse as soon as he has finished feeding.

The signals for striking tents (the general), for policing, saddling, and beginning the march should be ordered personally by the commanding officer and only when the duties pertaining to the previous signal are completed.

979. The march, its length and rate: The average daily march of a Cavalry column of the size of a squadron, or larger, is about 25 miles when horses are in condition; when starting on long-distance marches the rate per day for the first few days should be less than 20 miles and gradually increased. These rules may necessarily be modified, even when horses are not in fit condition, by reason of emergencies, character of roads or weather, proximity of water, grazing, etc., but, with these exceptions the question of the length of the daily march is one of good judgment and experience on the part of the commander. The gait and pace of the daily march are influenced by both the time the horse is to carry the load and the distance to be covered. The quicker a march can be completed without forcing, the less the fatigue to both horse and man. Where the footing is good, the road level, and other considerations do not hamper, the column, after the first or a subsequent halt, may advance first by leading dismounted, then mount and walk, then trot, a short gallop (exceptional), then the trot, followed by the walk to the next halt. No gait is to be maintained continuously long enough to weary either

horse or man, neither must it be changed too frequently in long columns; but whatever pace or gait is taken it should conform to the standards (par. 279). The officer setting the pace should occasionally drop back to observe its effect on the column, and veterinarians, if present, should be habitually utilized for this purpose.

The walk, if the footing is good, should be at the rate of 4 miles per hour, exclusive of halts; the trot at 8 miles per hour, so as to facilitate posting; the gallop, a very exceptional gait even for small commands, should be not faster than the maneuvering gallop (par. 236), and its practicability will depend upon the training and condition of the horses, since on long marches, unless accustomed to this gait with packed saddles, the horses will soon break down.

Very rarely, however, will the conditions allow the regular arrangement of gaits indicated above. Rolling country, with ascents and descents, stretches of hard or stony road or of mud, dust, or sand, crossings of streams, etc., will ordinarily impose corresponding changes of gait or pace on each of the small elements of the column as it reaches them. To provide for this the troops in route column, when so directed, take greater distances than prescribed in order to allow for closing up at checks.

The commander must give this matter unremitting attention, since normal route-order distances in column frequently entail discomfort to the men and sometimes injuries to the horses which might have been avoided.

Unless under exceptional circumstances, the commander of a marching column will authorize each troop commander to so regulate the gait and pace of his troop as to conform to that next in front, the gait and pace of the leading troop being regulated by the commander himself. This results in each troop changing to the trot, walk, leading dismounted, etc., at the same place at which the leading troop did, and although regulation distances are frequently exceeded the tendency on all stretches of good road is to close on the leading troop of the column. With care this method of marching should result in enabling each troop in the column to move with almost the same regularity and freedom from checks as though it were in the lead.

The fast rate of march that can be expected of small detachments and of single riders can not be demanded of a long Cavalry column, and as the command increases in size the rate of march will decrease. The regulation gaits being, at the walk, 4 miles, the trot, 8 miles, Cavalry should be able to make, including halts, 5 miles per hour or better. This rate can be maintained for daily marches of 25 miles under ordinary conditions for a week at a time, after which a day of rest should be allowed before continuing the march.

980. Formations: The habitual formation for marches is **route order** in column of fours (par. 754). When the roads are unsuitable or the command is small, column of twos or troopers is permissible. To economize road space in large commands **double column** or parallel columns should be used if practicable. Squadrons in regiment and troops in squadrons alternate in leading, the rule being that the one in front one day automatically follows in rear the next day.

981. Halts: The first half hour of a march should be made at a walk and the first halt of 10 or 15 minutes toward the end of the first hour after starting; it should, if possible, be preceded by a short trot in order to make apparent any faulty adjustment of equipment. This halt gives an opportunity for the horses to stale and for the troopers to attend to the calls of nature, to tighten girths, and to adjust saddles, equipment, and clothing.

Other halts of 5 to 10 minutes should be made at hourly intervals, and, if the march is to be prolonged into the afternoon a longer halt should be made at noon, when girths are loosened, bridles removed, horses fed, and the men eat their lunches.

An invariable rule on the march and in camp is to have all troopers dismount promptly on halting; in other words, never to permit a man to sit a moment in the saddle while his horse is standing still, and under no circumstances to lounge in the saddle.

982. Watering: On the march horses should be watered whenever opportunity occurs, conforming as far as practicable to the rule of watering before feeding and of removing the bit when by so doing the horse can drink more freely, as when the stream or watering place is shallow. Public watering troughs should ordinarily be avoided on account of danger

from infection. The use of buckets or of portable, collapsible canvas watering troughs (articles of issue) will often make watering places otherwise insufficient thoroughly satisfactory. On the march and in camp watering is always done under supervision of an officer.

983. Feeding: In time of peace when a regular supply of grain and long forage can be counted on, effort should be made to follow, as far as practicable, the routine to which horses have been accustomed in garrison. In time of war regularity of supply of forage, and especially of the long forage, can not be expected, and officers must neglect no opportunity of anticipating the needs of their animals when passing grain fields, pastures, or stacks of hay and other fodder. A supply for the night can often be gathered and carried along on the wagons or it may be tied up compactly with the lariat and carried on the horse.

The trooper with habitual solicitude for his mount will, if permitted, be prompt to remove the bits to let his horse graze (facing the wind in hot weather) at every delay or check and he will miss no chance to pick up an extra feed of grain.

984. Camps (*see also* **Care of Troops**, F. S. R.): The ground being suitable, a troop encamps in line, with first sergeant's cook and officers' tents on one flank, the men's sink on the other, and with picket line 15 yards in front of and parallel to the men's tents, the open ends of the tents toward the picket line. A squadron or regiment encamps in column of troops as above, but with picket lines on the flank of the column on the side opposite the cook and officers' tents, each in prolongation of its own company street. Intervals and distances should approximate those of the normal semipermanent camps (F. S. R.), if space is available. For a shelter tent camp in column of troops with picket lines stretched between the rows of tents the guidons which mark first sergeants' tents should not be less than 15 yards apart. The squadron or regiment may encamp in line similarly to the troop if the ground is more favorable for such form of camp, but ordinarily they encamp in column of troops with picket lines between the rows of tents.

985. On nearing the end of a day's march, the regimental commander will send his adjutant and supply officer ahead to

locate the camp and provide for the arrival of the column: On approaching the camping place, squadron adjutants and the guidon of each troop will be summoned by the colonel's bugler sounding **adjutant's call** followed by guidons (or otherwise according to circumstances). At these calls each squadron adjutant followed by the guidons of his squadron will move rapidly to the front and will join the regimental adjutant, who indicates to each the ground which his squadron is to occupy. If the available ground is sufficient to encamp the entire regiment as prescribed in the Field Service Regulations, the regimental adjutant causes the guidons to be aligned and planted at the prescribed intervals, thereby marking the first sergeant's tent on the flank of each troop, otherwise each squadron adjutant has the guidons of his squadron so placed on the ground allotted to his squadron as to conform, as nearly as conditions will permit, to the normal camp, having in view the comfort of horses and men and convenience to supplies. The object in marking off the camp as prescribed, by establishing the guidons before the arrival of the column, is to relieve the horse of his rider and pack as soon as possble. To further minimize delay, commanding officers, **unless under exceptional circumstances,** will, immediately on reaching the ground, direct majors to dismiss their squadrons and have their troop commanders proceed directly to their guidons, dismount at once, and pitch camp.

The foregoing principles will also, in so far as applicable, be enforced by commanders of all units smaller than the regiment.

The regimental supply officer has the drivers of the baggage section of the regimental train go direct to their proper troops and unhitch. Ordinarily, for convenience in a one-night camp or bivouac the wagons of the baggage section are left between the cook tents and the troop officers' tents, the supply section being parked outside by itself. After arrival at the camping place a guard is at once placed over the source of supply of drinking water.

Before pitching tents the rifles are stacked, sabers, rolls, saddle bags and lariats removed from the saddles, girths loosened (the saddles being left on until backs are cooled) and the horses, either linked by section, in circle (par. 428)

or coupled head and tail (par. 427) and a man detailed to watch them until tents are pitched.

After pitching tents, stacks are broken, rifles placed in the tents, horses unsaddled, unbridled, and tied on the line or herded, saddles placed in a row in front of the tents and saddle blankets spread on them to dry, fuel secured, sinks dug, and other necessary preparations made for the night. The use of saddle blankets as bedding by the men will be permitted only under very exceptional conditions, and special care must be exercised to keep them free from dirt and burs. During evening stables, troop commanders accompanied, if practicable, by a veterinarian, inspect the backs and feet of their horses, and in the morning they permit no trooper, who is not specially authorized, to saddle his horse before the call boots and saddles, or to mount before the command for so doing.

986. Herding: In a hostile country camps should be selected if possible where grazing is good and beyond rifle range of cover for an enemy; orders are issued as to places of assembly and in each troop men are detailed beforehand to go among the horses and quiet them in case of a night alarm. In the event of a stampede, men should mount the fastest animals within reach, ride ahead of the herd, and lead it back to camp. Sometimes the sounding of stable and water call will prevent or check a stampede.

In case it is necessary to graze the horses in an enemy's country they are sent out to herd under charge of an officer as soon as possible after making camp, they being taken during daylight as far away as is safe so as to keep the grass nearer camp for the night.

987. Forced and night marches: To conduct a rapid march of a command of any magnitude successfully, horses must be in condition (pars. 950, 959) and men must have been trained (par. 175); if either is lacking, the daily marches at first must be short.

A night march, being slow and fatiguing to horses and men, is seldom undertaken unless as a forced march to seize a position or to surprise an enemy by attacking him at dawn. In a forced march frequently the gait, if the footing is favorable, and always the number of hours in the saddle are increased. Under favorable conditions a rate of 50 miles in 24 hours for three or four days can be maintained. During such

a march, in addition to the usual hourly halts, a halt of 2 hours is made toward the end of the first half of each day's march, during which bits are removed, horses unsaddled, watered, fed, and their legs hand rubbed; the rate should be about 5 miles an hour exclusive of halts.

Under very favorable conditions a single march of 100 miles can be made in from 24 to 30 hours. During a march of this character, in addition to the usual hourly halts, halts of 2 hours are made toward the end of the first and second thirds of the march, during which bits are removed, the horses unsaddled, watered, fed, and their legs hand rubbed; the rate of march should be from 5 to 6 miles an hour exclusive of halts.

SIGNALS.

ARM, WHISTLE, BUGLE, SEMAPHORE.

988. What constitutes an **order** is set forth in **DEFINITIONS.** Instructions, oral or written, which are not expressed in prescribed forms are usually termed **orders.** Oral orders for particular movements or formations, expressed in a precise and definitely prescribed wording, are termed **commands.** Any indications, intelligibly conveyed by the commander's signals, movements, etc., have the full force of the corresponding commands.

989. In field service, the commander's indication for the execution of any movement will, in general, be conveyed by the method, or combination of methods, best suited to the particular occasion and object in view. In instruction, all prescribed methods must be employed with sufficient frequency to insure familiarity with their use by those concerned. No one method of conveying the will of the commander is to be used to the exclusion of any other prescribed method.

In addition to the signals that are prescribed as such, the direction and gait taken by the leader and his example in general serve to convey his orders. Similarly the base, by the example of its march, formation, and gait, indicates by visible signs the will of the commander.

Officers and men fix their attention at the first word of command, the first note of the bugle or whistle, or the first motion of the signal.

Leaders of subordinate units wait until the commander completes his preparatory signal before giving their commands or signal to execute the movement.

Before or during an engagement special signals may be agreed upon to facilitate the solution of such special difficulties as the particular situation is likely to develop, but it must be remembered that simplicity and certainty are indispensable qualities of a signal.

ARM SIGNALS.

990. To avoid noise and confusion, signals with the arm or hand, the headdress, or the saber, when drawn, may be used except when darkness, fog, dust, or other causes render such signals invisible or *inappropriate*. The preparatory signals with the saber are made from the carry, with hand or headdress from the position of the hand at the side. The return to the carry, or bringing the hand by a quick, sharp movement to the side from the preparatory signal, is the command of execution. Every signal should be made with vigor and precision and every position taken by the hand and arm during the signal be distinct and clear cut. In all cases when the contrary is not indicated the termination of the preparatory signal is marked by extending the arm vertically, making a very brief pause in that position before signaling the command of execution.

Combination signals (those made up of two or more elements) should be avoided unless the component elements are easily recognized; such signals should never be used for any movement for which a single signal is prescribed (e. g., **line of platoon columns**). When combination signals are used they are always made in the order in which the commands are worded—e. g., **platoons right turn** would be signaled as **platoons** followed by **change of direction**; **column of platoons** by **column** followed by **platoons**; **line of troop columns** by **line** followed by **troops** followed by **column**.

The signals appearing below are preparatory signals, except when otherwise stated.

Assemble: Same as attention, except that the circles are made larger and with the forearm.

Attention: Raise the arm vertically to its full extent and describe slowly small circles with the hand, then drop the hand to the side. This signal may precede any command (par. 991). Not a preparatory signal.

By the right (left) flank: Extend the arm horizontally, directly to the right (left).

Change of direction: Extend the arm fully in the direction of the marching flank and then make a slow sweeping movement toward the new direction; move the horse in that direction. This signal may be used for any change of direction

whether in line or column formation; for example, for right (left) turn, right (left) half turn; column right (left), column half right (left) (par. 386).

Column: Describe circles on the right in a vertical plane with the arm fully extended. When not followed by a modifying element (as platoons, twos, or troopers, etc.) column of fours is to be understood.

Column right (left); Column half right (left): *See* **Change of direction).**

Decrease the gait: Raise the right elbow to a position above and to the right of the right shoulder; extend the forearm upward and to the left, right hand above the head. Except when the leader's example indicates otherwise, a decrease of gait of one degree is to be understood.

Dismount: Extend the arm diagonally upward to the right, palm downward, and wave several times toward the ground. Not a preparatory signal unless required to dismount in unison, in which case the signal will be preceded by that for **attention.**

Disregard: Place the hand against the back at the height of the waist, back of the hand toward the body; not a preparatory signal.

Double column: Extend the arm fully and describe a circle in a vertical plane from front to rear and, without pausing, from rear to front.

Extend: Sweep the arm, fully extended, slowly and horizontally across the body, swaying and turning the body with the sweep of the arm.

Fight on foot: Strike three or four blows with the clenched fist in the direction in which the action is desired. In striking, the point of the elbow should be higher than the shoulder; not a preparatory signal.

Foragers: Extend the arm horizontally to the front and move it rapidly from left to right and from right to left in a horizontal plane.

Forward: Extend the arm vertically, and, keeping it extended, lower it to a horizontal position pointing in the direction to be taken.

Fours left about: Same as to the rear.

Fours right (left): Same as by the right (left) flank.

Halt: Extend the arm vertically. A leader habitually halts as he makes the signal of execution.

Increase the gait: Alternately raise and lower the hand rapidly between the position as in **halt** and a position near the shoulder. Except when the leader's example indicates otherwise, an increase of gait of one degree is to be understood.

Line: Raise the arm vertically, and, with the arm fully extended, wave well down to the right and left several times swaying and turning the body with the sweep of the arm.

Line of platoon columns: Raise the arm as in signaling **platoons**, carry the elbow several times from right to left across the body.

Mass: Extend the arm horizontally to the right and bring the hand repeatedly to the point of the shoulder.

Mount: Extend the arm horizontally to the right, palm upward, and wave upward several times. Not a preparatory signal unless required to mount in unison in which case the signal will be preceded by **attention.**

Oblique: Extend the arm fully in the direction of the oblique and move the horse in that direction.

Platoons: Raise the right elbow to the height of the shoulder, forearm vertical, hand closed.

Platoon mass: Extend the arm horizontally to the right, bring the hand to the shoulder, touching same with the tips of the fingers, and retain the hand in this position for a few seconds.

Rally: Describe horizontal circles *rapidly* about the head, with the arm as nearly extended as possible. Not a preparatory signal.

Right (left) turn; Right (left) half turn: *See* **Change of direction.**

Skirmishers: Raise both arms laterally until horizontal.

To the rear: Turn and point to the rear, arm horizontal.

Troops: Place the hand against the back of the neck, back of the hand to the rear.

Troopers: Raise the arm vertically, extend first finger, other fingers closed.

Twos: Raise the arm vertically, extend and separate first and second fingers, other fingers closed.

Twos (Troopers) left about: Given when in column of twos or troopers. Same as **to the rear.**

WHISTLE SIGNALS.

991. Attention to orders: A short blast of the whistle. This signal is used at drill, on the march, or in combat when necessary to fix the attention of troops, or of their commanders or leaders, preparatory to giving commands, orders, or signals.

When the firing line is firing each section chief suspends firing and fixes his attention at a *short blast* of his platoon leader's whistle. The platoon leader's subsequent commands or signals are repeated and enforced by the section chief. If a section chief's attention is attracted by a whistle other than that of his platoon leader, or if there are no orders or commands to convey to his section, he resumes firing at once.

Suspend firing: A long blast of the whistle.

All other whistle signals are prohibited.

Three types of whistles of different and distinctive tone are furnished as follows:

(*a*) For the **squadron group,** consisting of the major, squadron adjutant, and squadron sergeant major.

(*b*) For the **troop commander group,** consisting of the captain and two buglers.

(*c*) For the **platoon leader group** consisting of lieutenants and sergeants.

BUGLE SIGNALS.

992. The authorized bugle signals are not used by units smaller than a regiment, except when such unit is independent, or detached from its regiment.

In **field service** bugle signals must not be employed where likely to convey information of value to the enemy.

In dismounted action the bugle signals **charge** and **rally** and the signals used to assemble units (par. 996) are employed on the battle field only when intended for the entire firing line; hence they can be used only by the commander of a unit (for example, a regiment or brigade) which occupies a distinct section of the battle field.

The following bugle signals are used in exceptional cases on the battle field. Their principal uses are in field exercises and practice firing.

Commence firing: Officers charged with fire direction and control open fire as soon as practicable. When given to a firing line, the signal is equivalent to **fire at will.**

Cease firing: All parts of the line execute **cease firing** at once.

ALARM CALLS.

993. Fire call: The signal for the men to fall in without arms to extinguish fire.

To arms: The signal for the men to fall in under arms, dismounted, on their troop parade grounds as quickly as possible.

To horse: The signal for the men to go under arms to their horses, to saddle, mount, and assemble in a designated formation at a designated place as quickly as possible; in extended order formations on foot this signal is used to remount the troops.

SERVICE CALLS.

994. Adjutant's call: The signal for the troops to form squadron, also for the guard details to form on the camp or garrison parade ground for guard mounting; it follows the assembly by such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

Assembly: The signal for the troops or details to fall in.

Assembly, adjutant's call, retreat, to the standard, the flourishes, and **the marches** are sounded by all the buglers united. The other service calls, as a rule, are sounded by the bugler of the guard or orderly trumpeter; he may also sound the **assembly** when the trumpeters are not united.

Boots and saddles is the warning that the formation is to be mounted. Where the required formation has also a warning call, as **guard mounting** or **drill**, such call precedes **boots and saddles**; otherwise **first call** precedes it.

Call to quarters is the signal for the men to repair to their quarters.

Church, mess, and **fatigue**, classed as service calls, may also be used as warning calls.

First call is the first signal for formation for roll call on foot.

First call, guard mounting, full dress, overcoats, drill, stable, water, and **boots and saddles** precede the assembly by such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

Full dress or overcoats signal immediately follows **first call, guard mounting, or boots and saddles** when full dress or the overcoat is to be worn.

Guard mounting is the first call for guard mounting.

Reveille precedes the **assembly** for roll call; **retreat** follows the **assembly**, the interval being only that required for formation and roll call, except when there is parade.

Taps is the signal for extinguishing lights; it is usually preceded by **call to quarters**, with such interval as the commanding officer may direct.

Tattoo is sounded between **retreat** and **call to quarters**; 15 minutes thereafter lights in the squad rooms are extinguished.

The general is the signal for striking tents and loading wagons preparatory to marching.

To the standard is sounded when the standard salutes.

The morning gun is fired at the first note of **reveille**, or, if **marches** are played before **reveille**, it is fired at the commencement of the first march.

The evening gun is fired at the last note of **retreat**.

Buglers assemble at **first call** and at **guard mounting**.

DRILL AND FIELD CALLS.

995. The drill and field calls include both the preparatory commands and the command of execution; the last note is the command of execution.

When the command is given by bugle the chiefs of subdivisions give the proper commands orally or by signal.

The memorizing of drill signals will be facilitated by observing that all movements to the right are on the ascending chord; that the corresponding movements to the left are corresponding signals on the descending chord; that changes of gait are all upon the same note; that captain's (or troop commander's) call is the first two bars of officer's call with the **attention** added; and that **form rank** and **posts** are the same.

In sounding the calls for simultaneous movements the call **platoons, troops, or squadrons** precedes the preliminary call for the movement.

Drill calls are sounded in the same order as the commands are prescribed in the text.

Gangway is sounded to clear the way or to warn other troops that a passage is desired.

List of Bugle Calls.

996. The music for the various calls has corresponding numbers.

ALARM CALLS.

1. Fire.
2. To arms.
3. To horse.

SERVICE CALLS.

4. Adjutant's call.
5. Assembly.
6. Boots and saddles.
7. Call to quarters.
8. Captains' call.
9. Church.
10. Drill.
11. Fatigue.
12. First call.
13. First sergeant's call.
14. Full dress.
15. Guard mounting.
16. Issue.
17. Mess.
18. Officers' call.
19. Overcoats.
20. Recall.
21. Retreat.
22. Reveille.
23. School.
24. Sick.
25. Stables.
26. Taps.
27. Tattoo.
28. The general.
29. To the standard.
30. Water.

DRILL AND FIELD CALLS.

31. Attention.
32. Cease firing.
33. Charge.
34. Column, march. Column once repeated signifies **double column.**
35. Column left, march.
36. Column right, march.
37. Commence firing.
38. Foragers or skirmishers, march.
39. Form rank or posts.
40. Forward, march.
41. Fours left, also by the left flank, march.
42. Fours right, also by the right flank, march.
43. Gallop march.
44. Gangway.
45. Guidons out.
45a. Halt.
46. Left oblique, **march.**
47. Left turn, **march.**
48. Line, march.
49. Line of platoons, march.
50. Platoons.
51. Prepare to dismount, dismount.
52. Prepare to mount, mount.
53. Rally.
54–78. Regimental calls.
79. Right oblique, march.
80. Right turn, **march.**
81. Route order.

DRILL AND FIELD CALLS—continued.

82. Squadrons.
83. Squadrons:
    (*a*) First squadron.
    (*b*) Second squadron.
    (*c*) Third squadron.
84. To fight on foot.
85. To the rear, or fours left about, march.
86. Troops.
87. Trot, march.
88. Walk, march.

MISCELLANEOUS BUGLE CALLS.

89. Flourishes for review.
90. Funeral march.
91. General's march.
92. President's march.
93–102. Quicksteps.

THE TWO-ARM SEMAPHORE CODE, WITH HAND FLAGS.

General Provisions.

997. To call or answer: "Attention," followed by call letter of station called. Repeat as necessary. Both stations then make "Interval."

Repeat last message: "O," "Interval", repeated three times.

Repeat after (word): "O," "Interval," "A," "Interval" (word).

End of word: "Interval."

End of sentence: "Interval," twice repeated.

End of message: "Interval," three times repeated.

To break in: "Attention."

Acknowledgment: "R."

Affirmative: "P."

Annulling: "N."

Attention: See figure in semaphore code.

Error: "A."

Interrogatory: "O."

Interval: See figure in semaphore code.

Negative: "K."

"Numerals" (*see* figures): Precedes every number sent and indicates numerals until "Interval" is made, after which letters recur without further indication. When numerals follow letters, no intervening "Interval" is necessary.

"Negative," "Affirmative," or "Interrogatory," followed by "Interval," gives corresponding meaning to the message following it.

Receiver acknowledges the call "Attention" by signaling "R." Similarly, he acknowledges "Repeat last message." "Repeat after (word)." The "End of message" is so acknowledged when the message is understood.

While waiting for "Acknowledgment" or in case of delay, remain at "Interval."

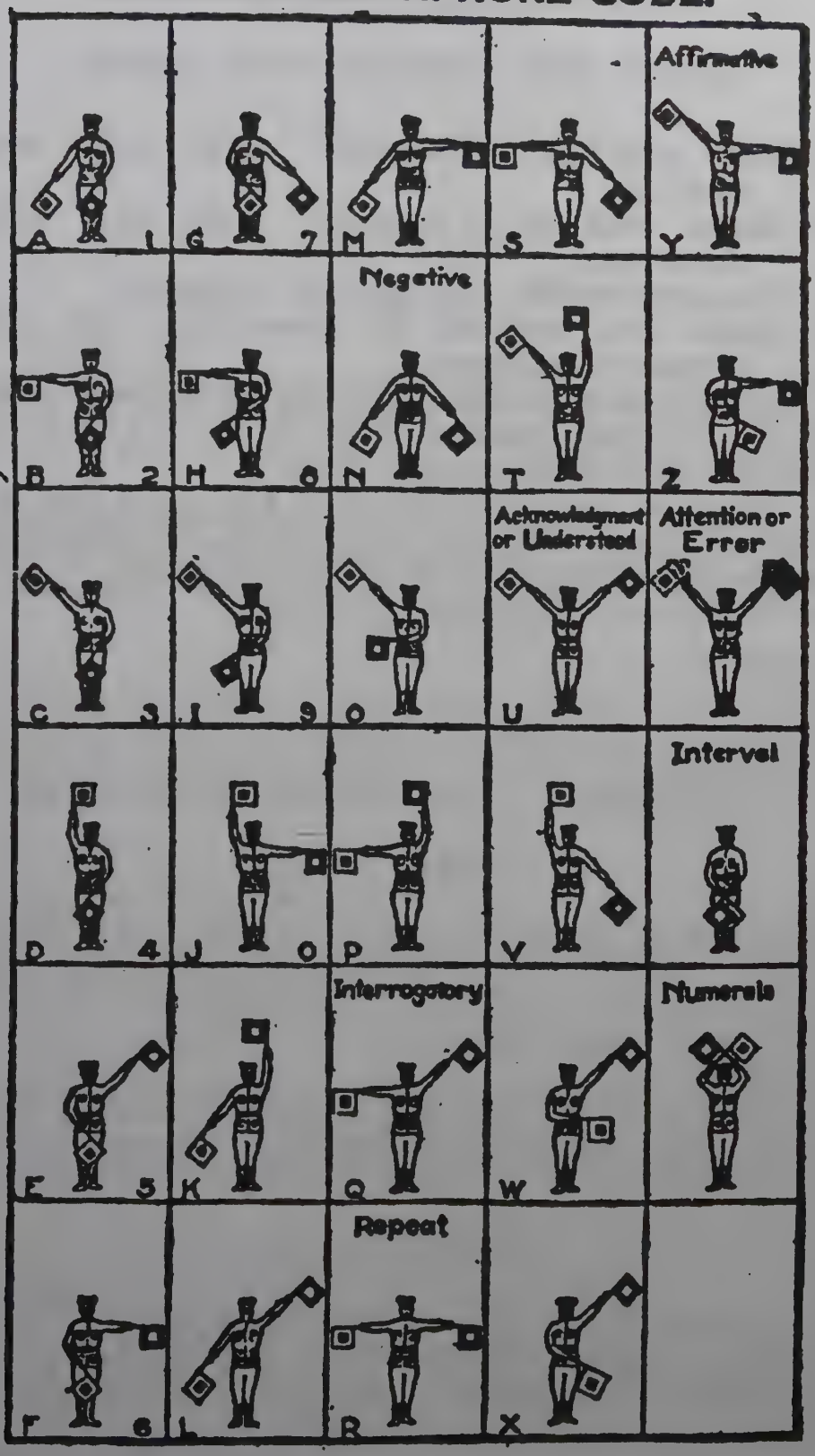
Words not in code are spelled out.

SPECIAL SIGNALS.

Letter signals having special meanings for use in communicating between the firing line and the reserve or commander in rear. As far as possible their transmission should be concealed from the enemy's view.

Letters of alphabet.	If signaled from the rear to the firing line.	If signaled from the firing line to the rear.
AM	Ammunition going forward	Ammunition required.
CCC	Charge (mandatory at all times)	Am about to charge if no instructions to contrary.
CF	Cease firing	Cease firing.
DT	Double time, rush or hurry	Double time, rush or hurry.
F	Commence firing	
FL	Artillery fire is causing us losses	Artillery fire is causing us losses.
G	Move forward	Preparing to move forward.
HHH	Halt	Halt.
K	Negative	Negative.
LT	Left	Left.
M	Bring up the horses	Horses going forward.
O	What is the (RN, etc.)? Interrogatory. (Ardois and semaphore only.)	What is the (RN, etc.)? Interrogatory. (Ardois and semaphore only.)
.. — — ..	What is the (RN, etc.)? Interrogatory. (All methods but Ardois and semaphore.)	What is the (RN, etc.)? Interrogatory. (All methods but Ardois and semaphore.)
P	Affirmative	Affirmative.
R	Acknowledgment	Acknowledgment.
RN	Range	Range.
RT	Right	Right.
SSS	Support going forward	Support needed.
SUF	Suspend firing	Suspend firing.
T	Target	Target.

TWO ARM SEMAPHORE CODE.



HINTS FOR MEMORIZING CODE.

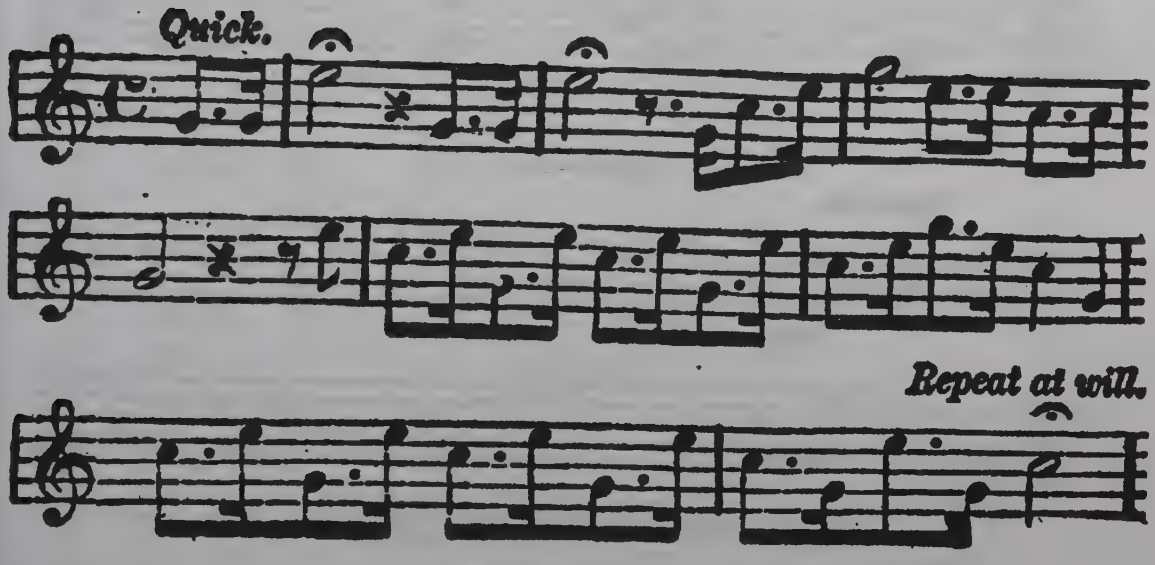
A to D: Left arm at "Interval," right arm progresses upward.
E to G: Right arm at "Interval," left arm progresses downward.
A to G: Complete series, one arm at "Interval."
K to N: Right arm inclined 45° downward, left arm progresses downward.
P to S: Right arm horizontal, left arm progresses downward.
H I and O: Left arm crosses body.
W X and Z: Right arm crosses body.
Opposite letters A and G, B and F, C and E, H and Z, I and X, J and P, K and V, O and W, M and S, Q and Y: The numerals are the first 10 letters in order.

APPENDIX A.

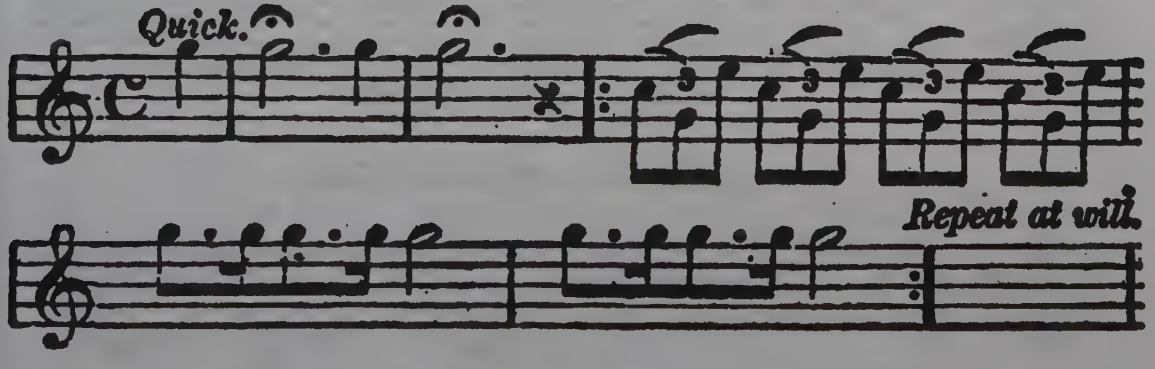
BUGLE CALLS.

ALARMS.

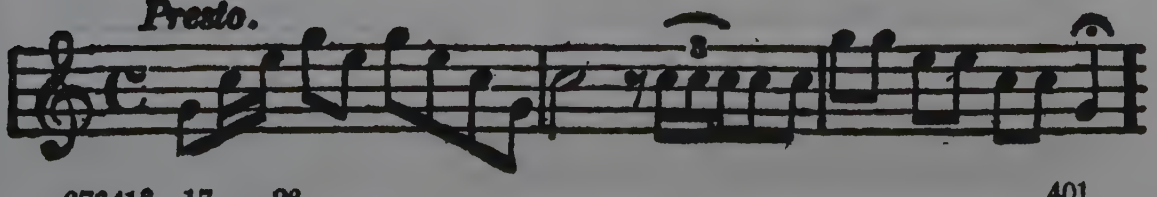
1. FIRE.



2. TO ARMS.



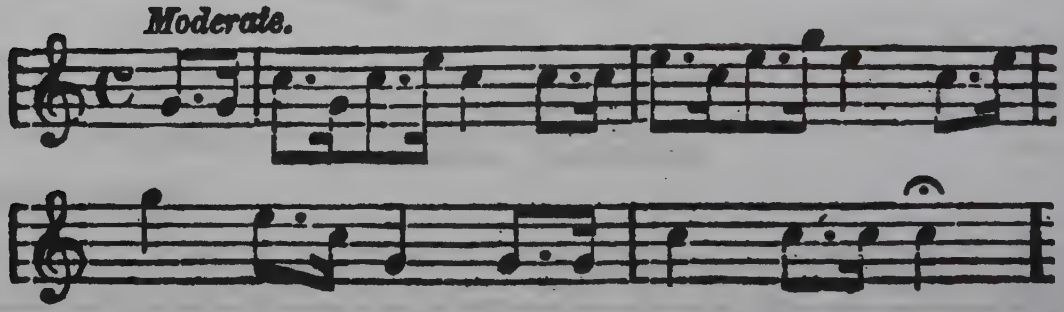
3. TO HORSE.



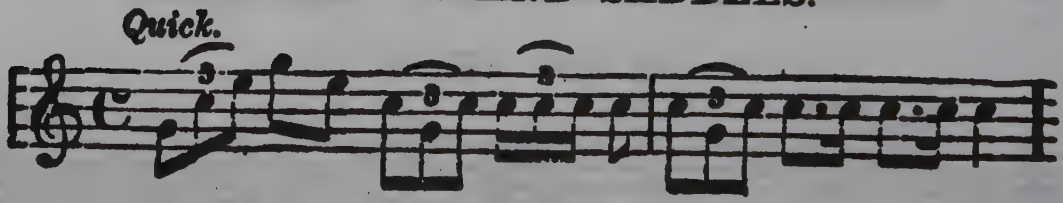
SERVICE CALLS.

4. ADJUTANT'S CALL.

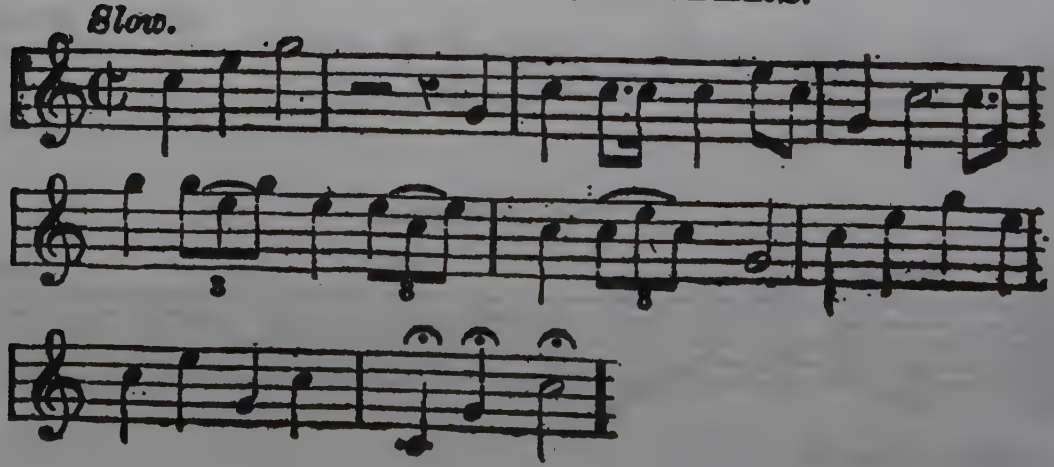
5. ASSEMBLY.



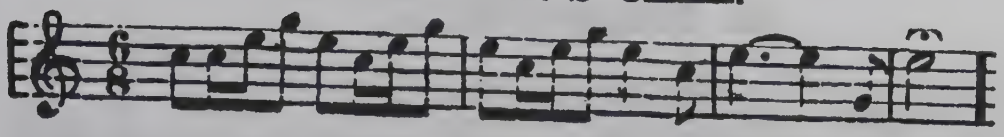
6. BOOTS AND SADDLES.



7. CALL TO QUARTERS.

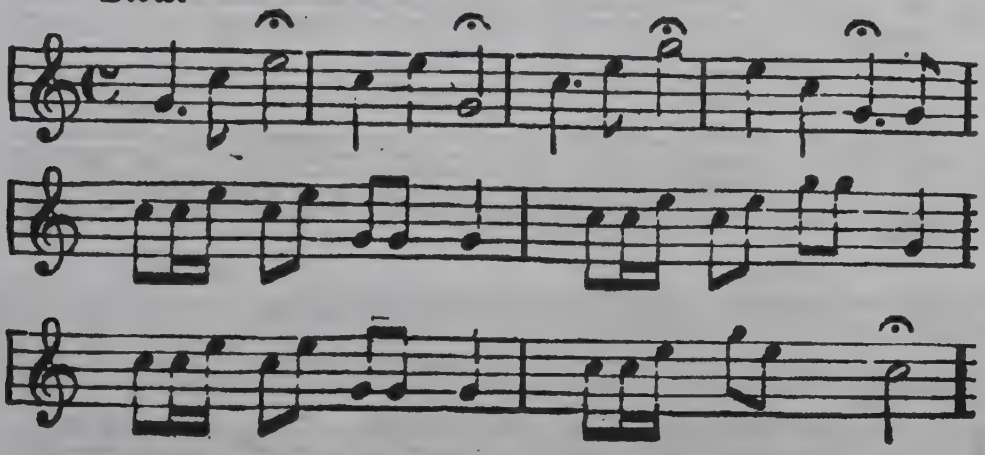


8. CAPTAIN'S CALL.



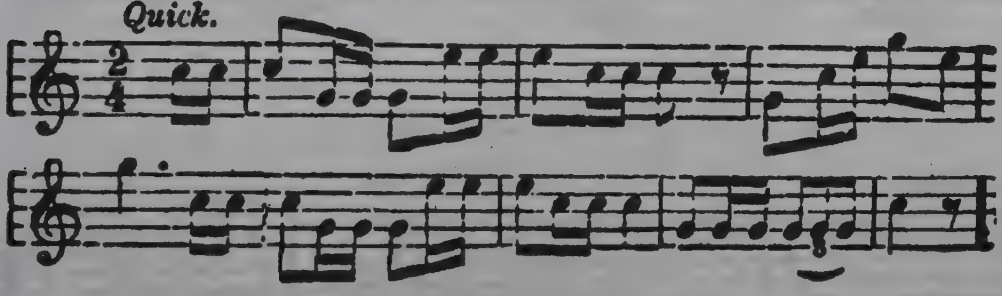
9. CHURCH.

Slow.



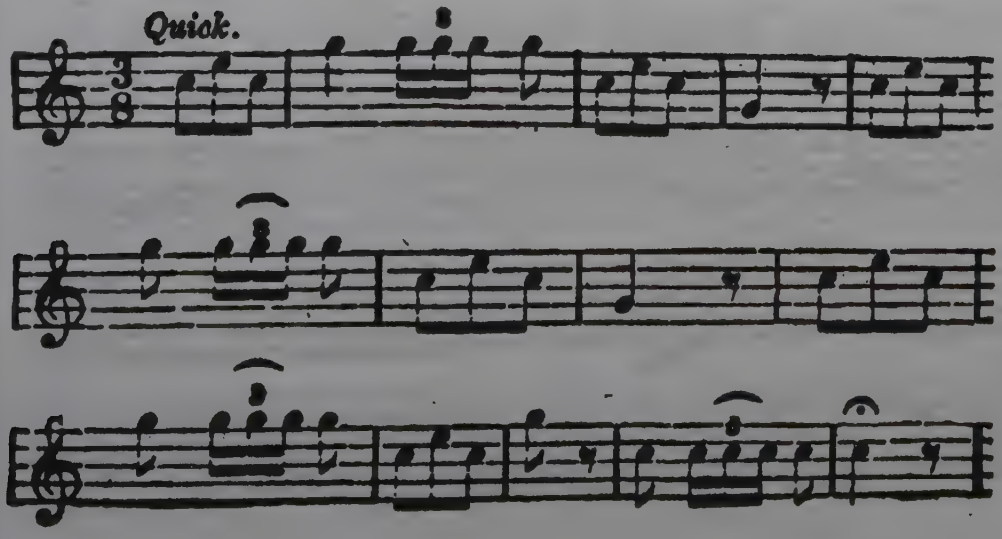
10. DRILL.

Quick.



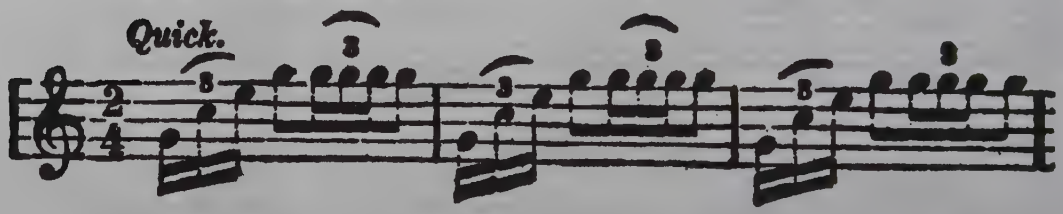
11. FATIGUE.

Quick.

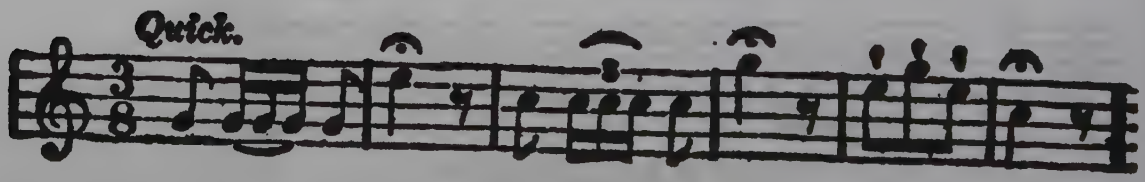


12. FIRST CALL.

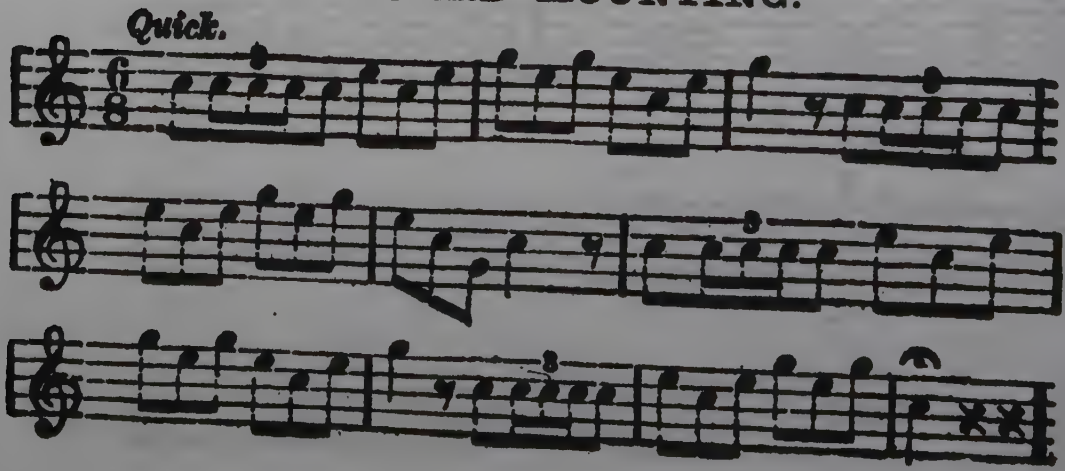
13. FIRST SERGEANT'S CALL.



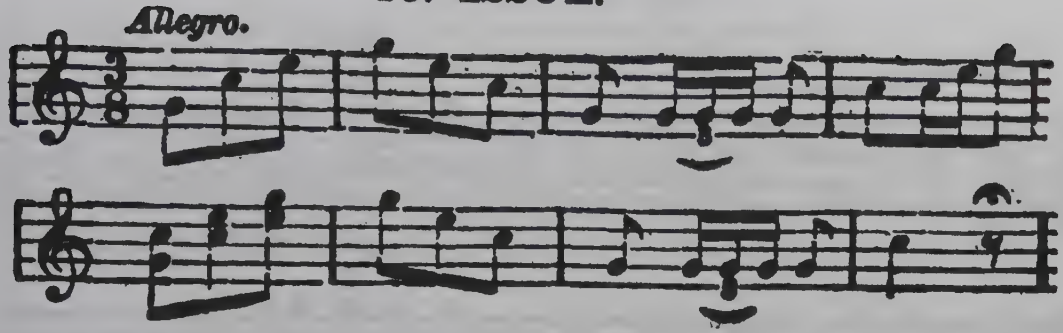
14. FULL DRESS.



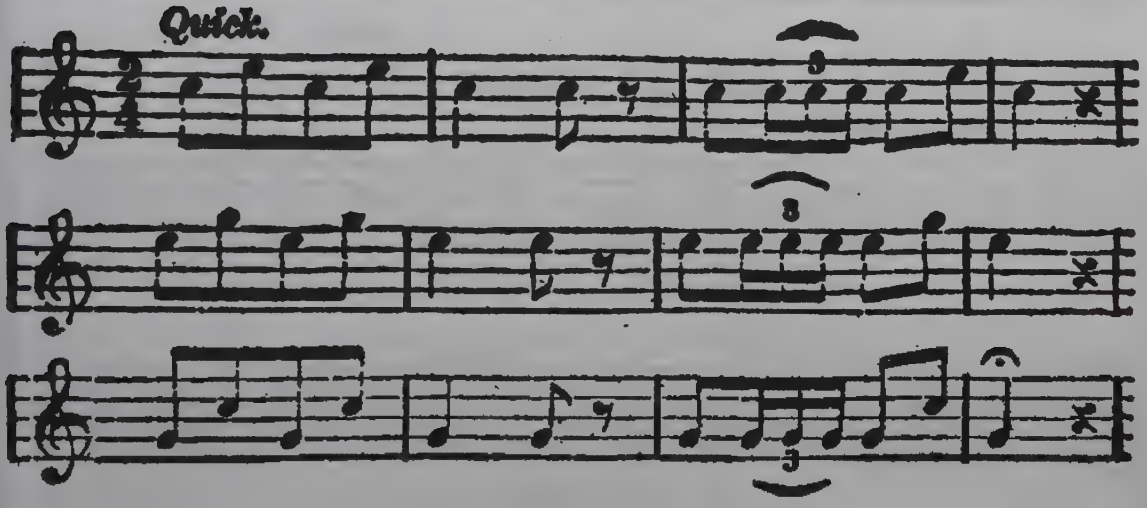
15. GUARD MOUNTING.



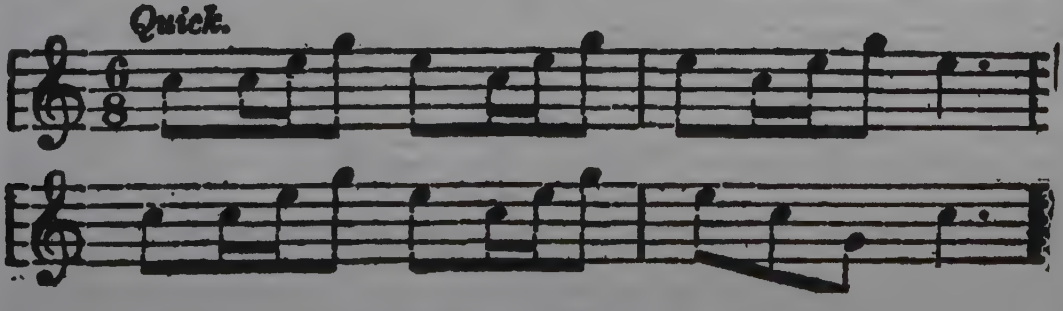
16. ISSUE.



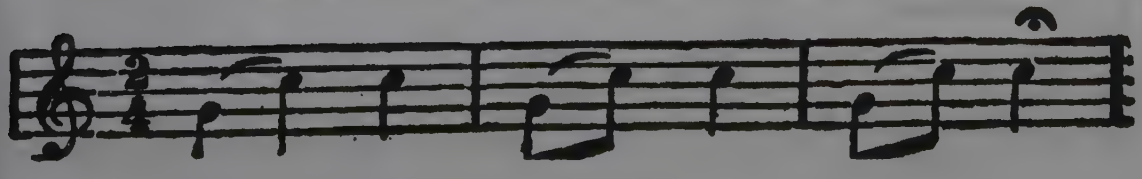
17. MESS.



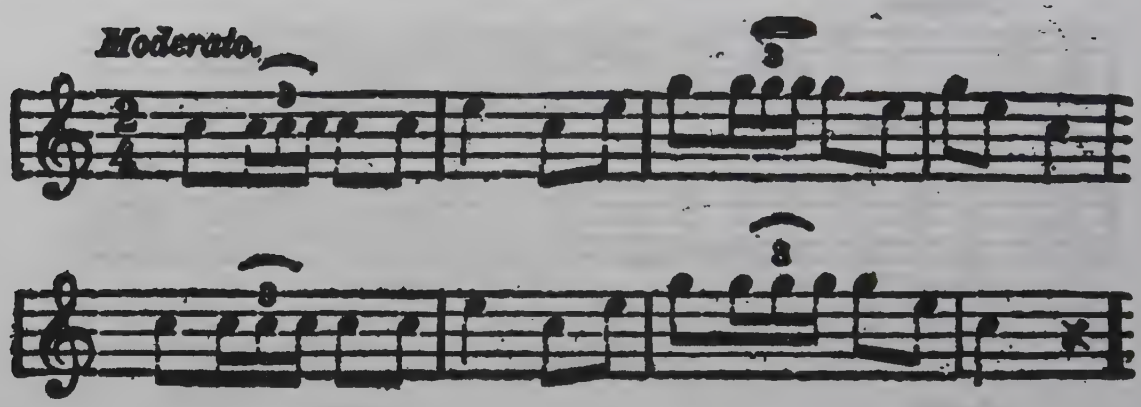
18. OFFICER'S CALL.



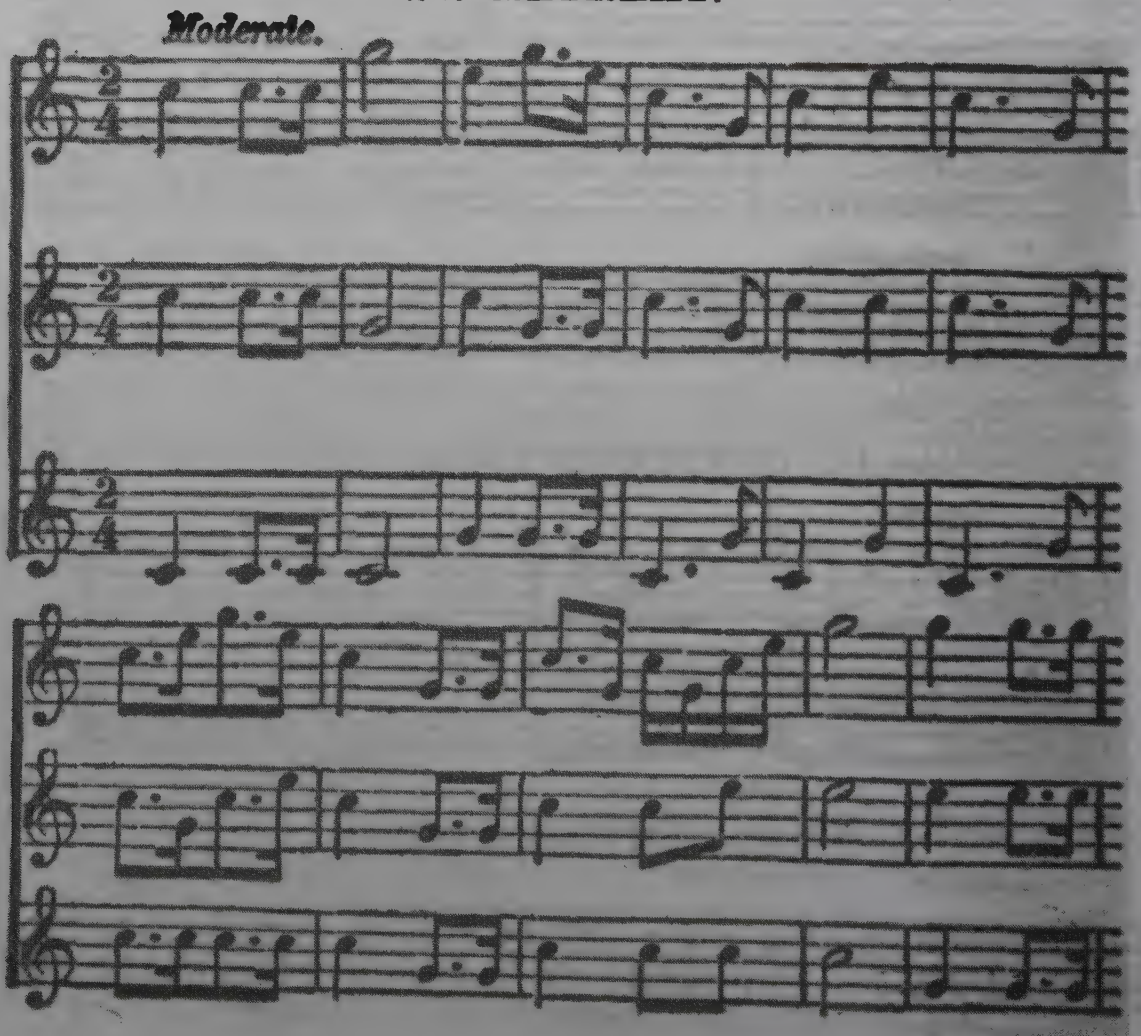
19. OVERCOATS.



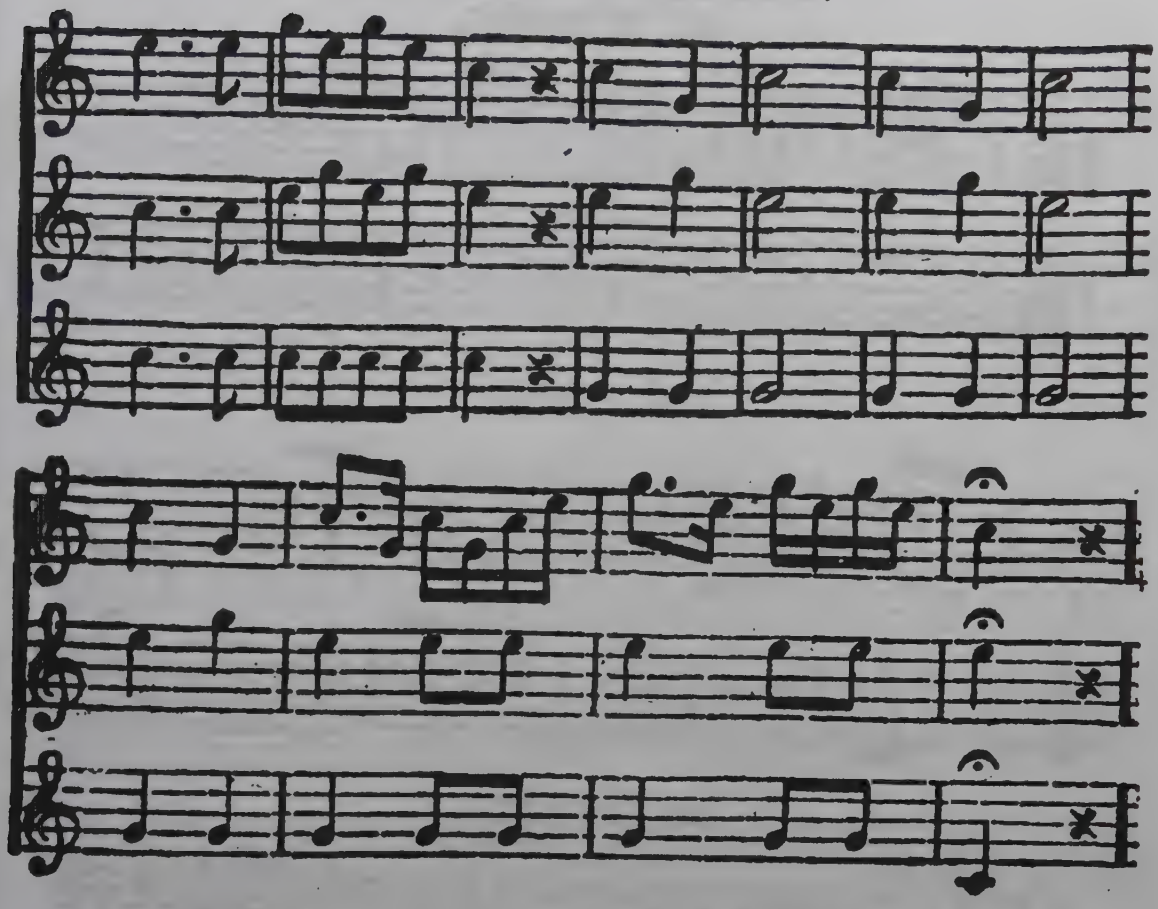
20. RECALL.



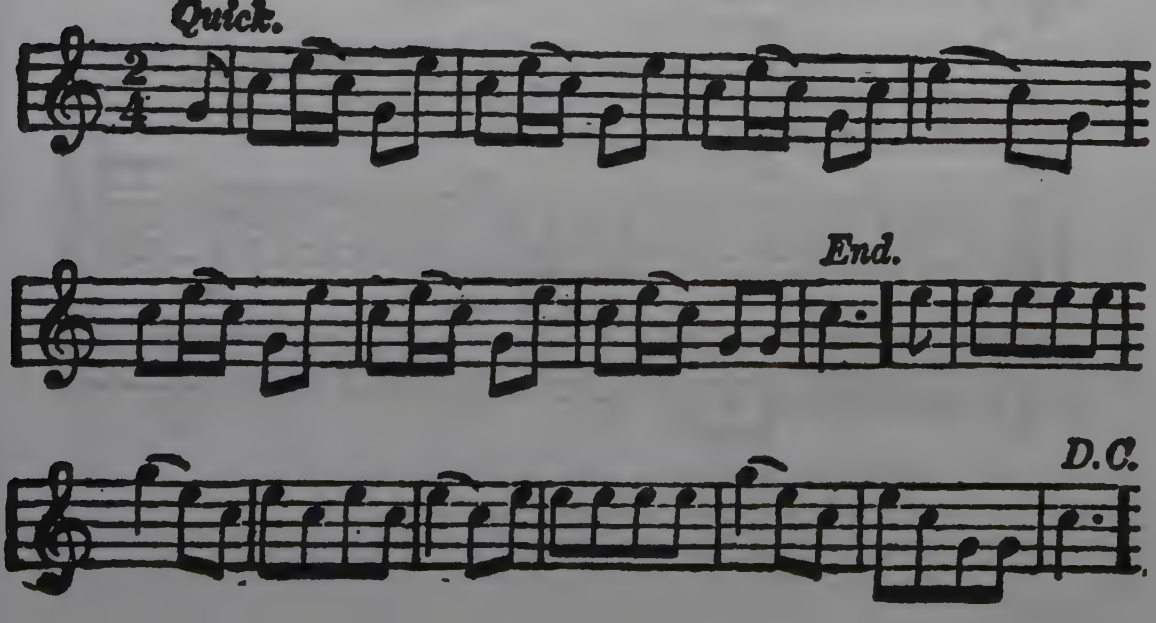
21. RETREAT.



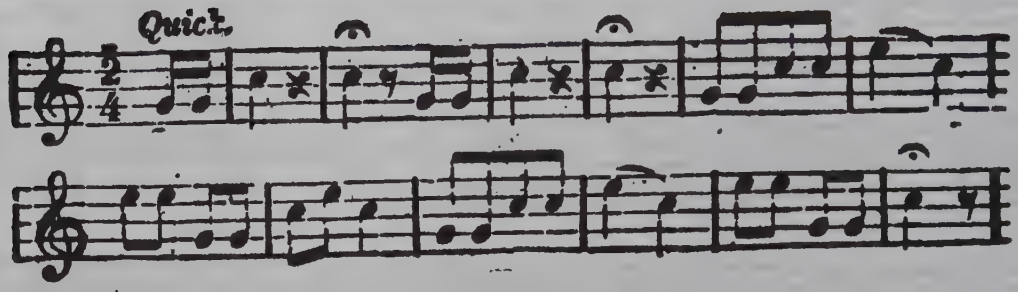
RETREAT—Continued.



22. REVEILLE.

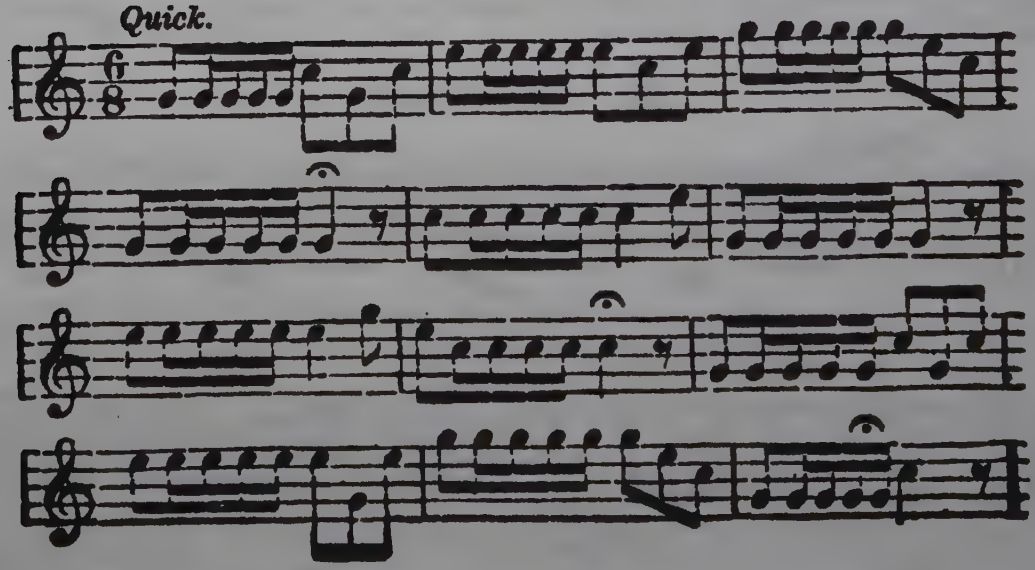


23. SCHOOL.



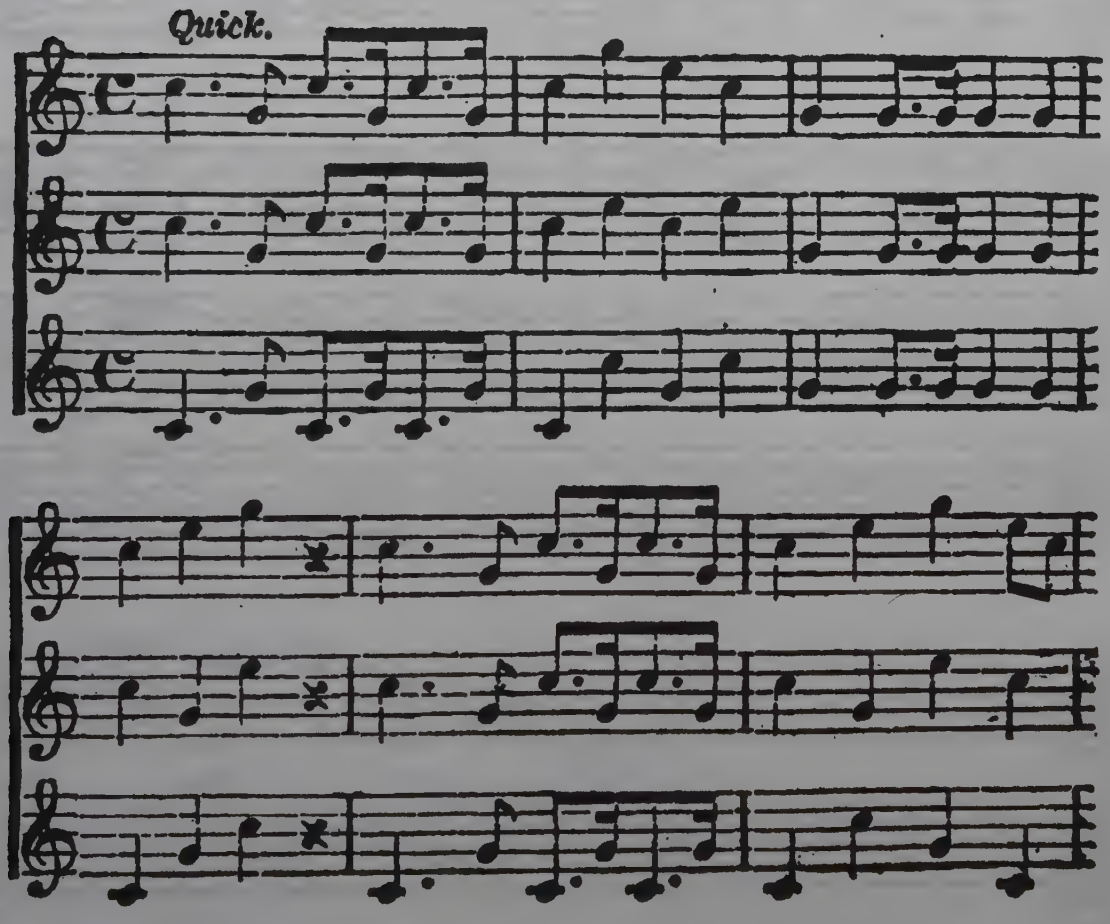
24. SICK.

25. STABLE.

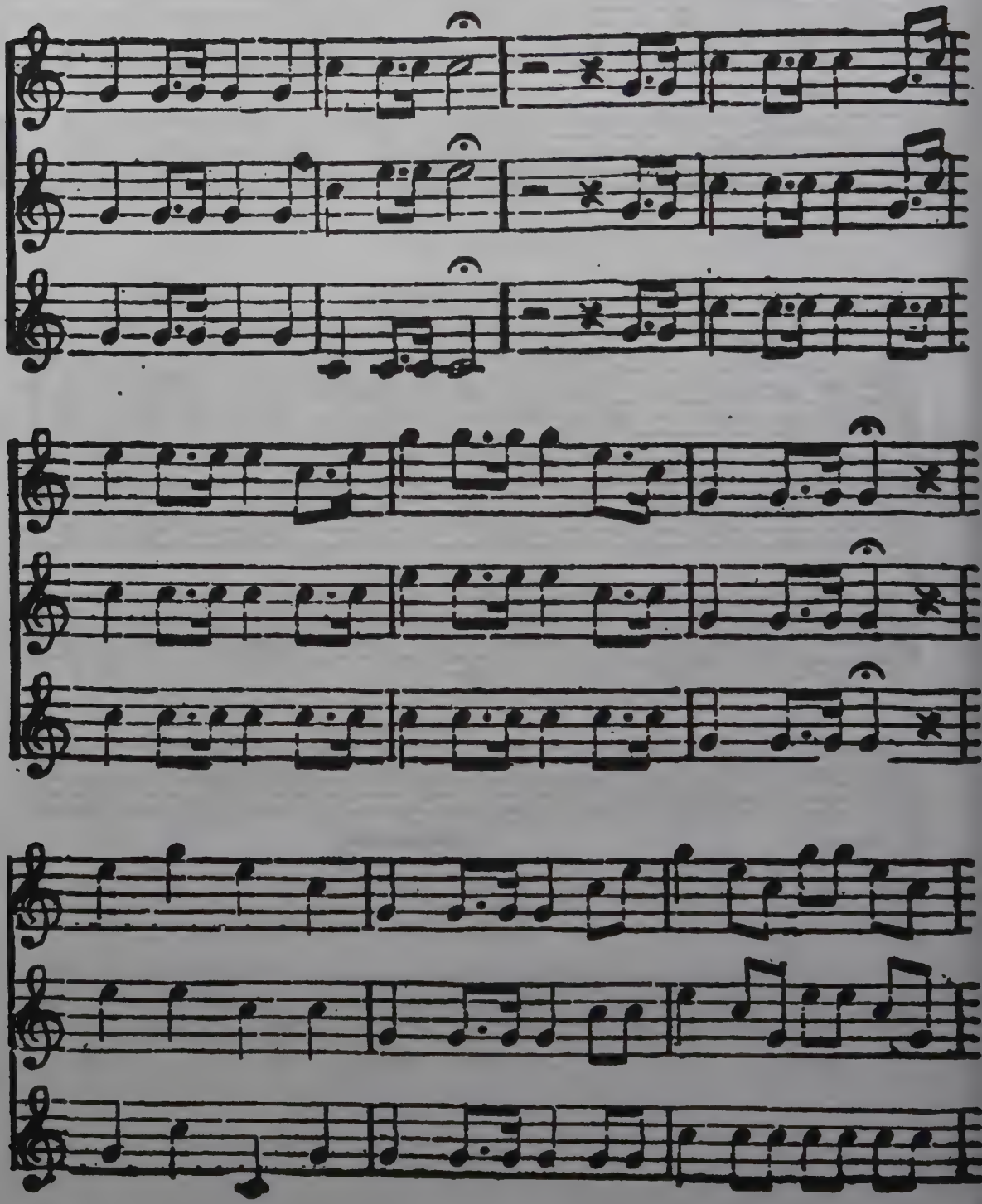


26. TAPS.

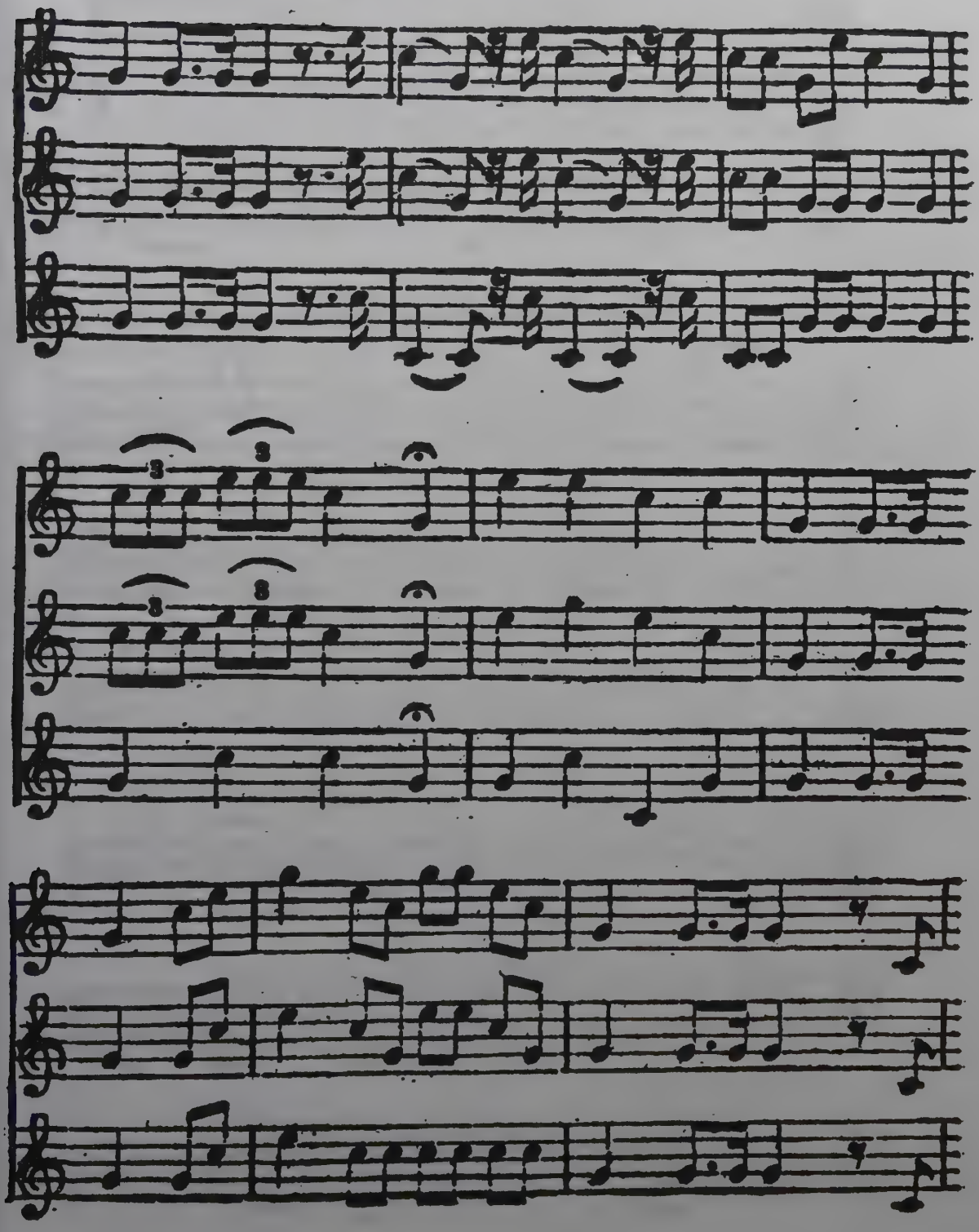
27. TATTOO.



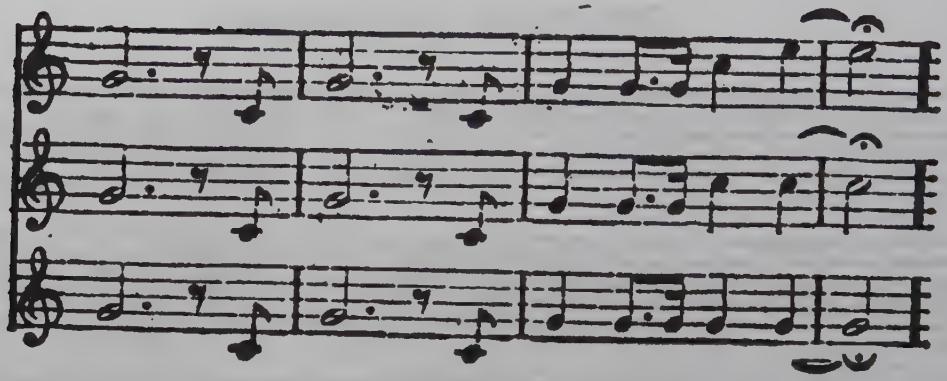
TATTOO—Continued.



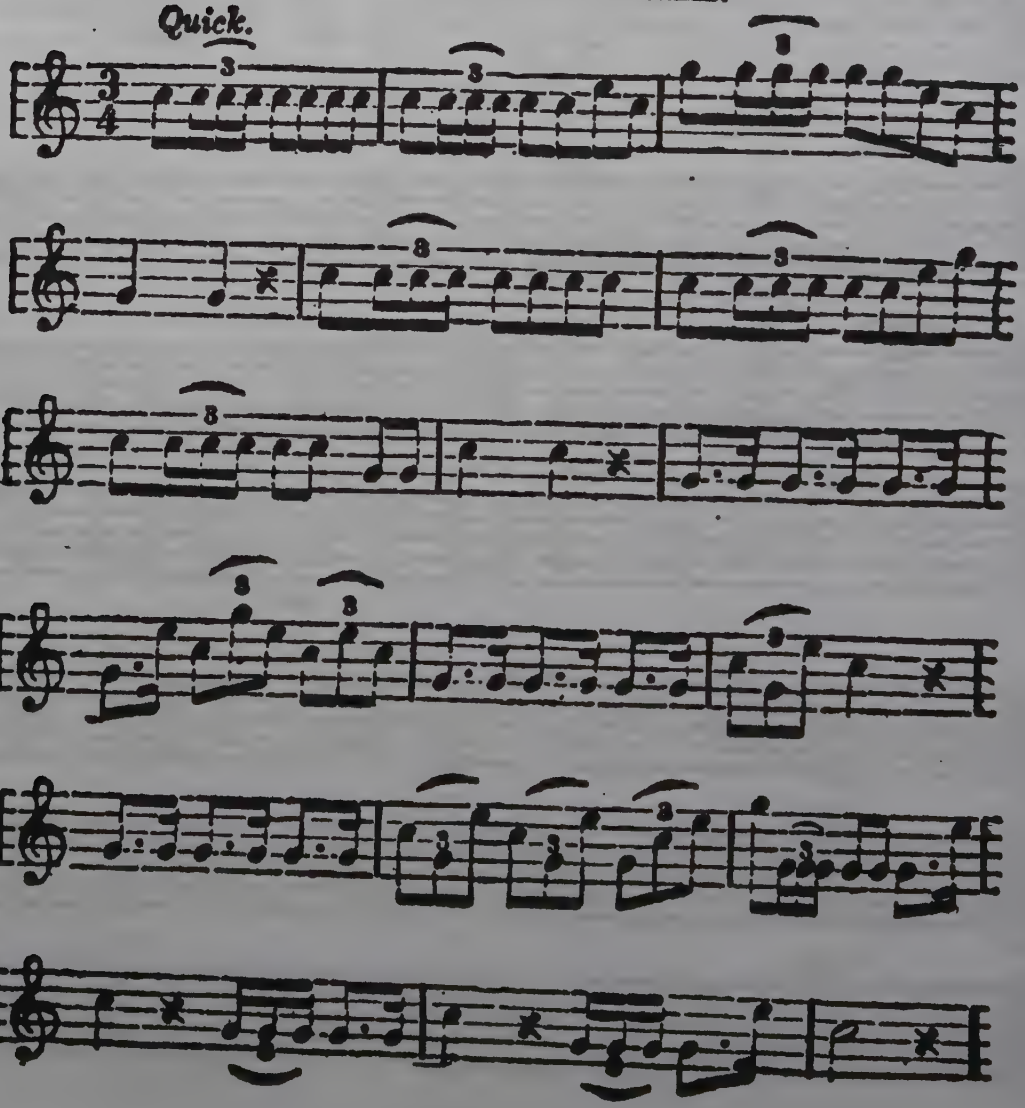
TATTOO—Continued.



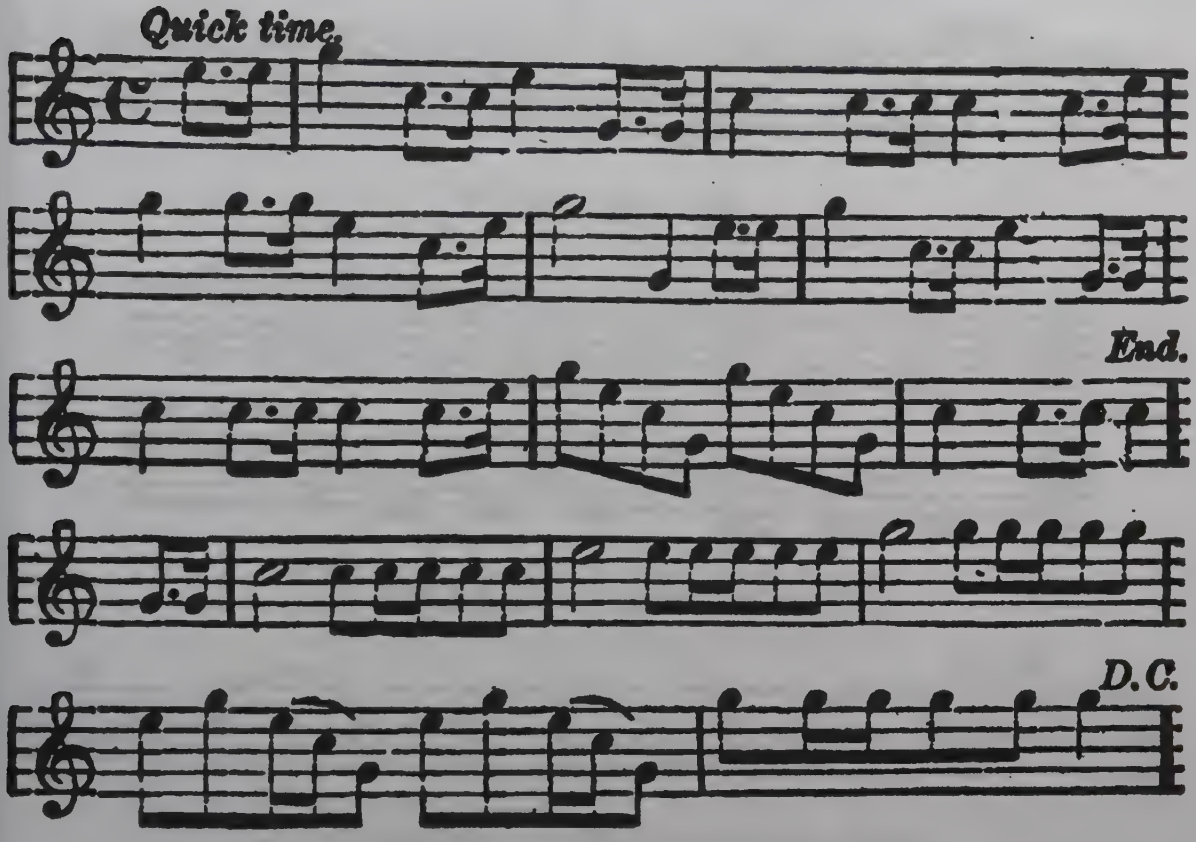
TATTOO—Continued.



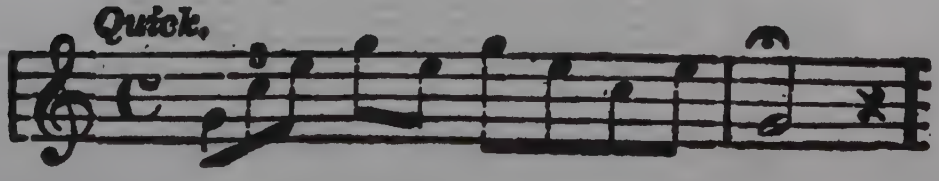
28. THE GENERAL.



29. TO THE STANDARD.

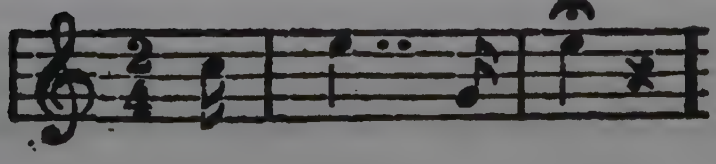


30. WATER.

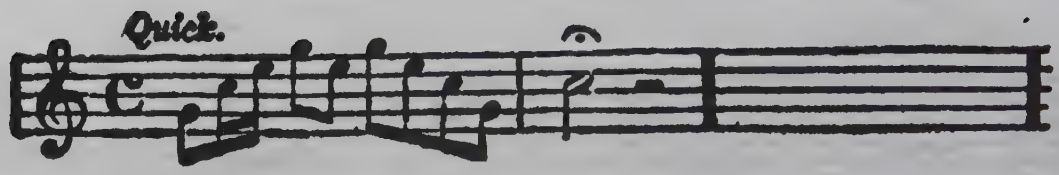


DRILL AND FIELD CALLS.

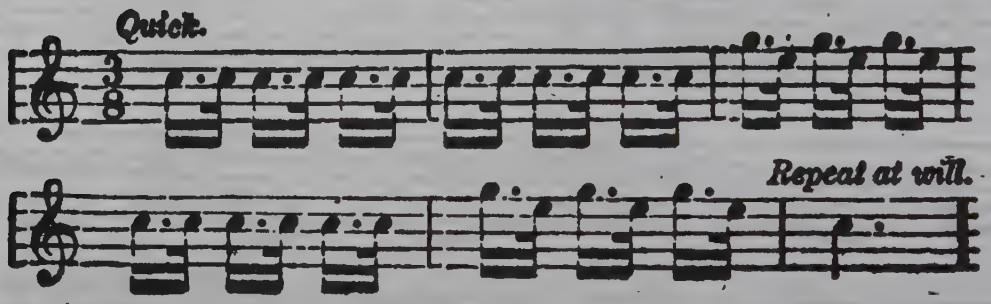
31. ATTENTION.



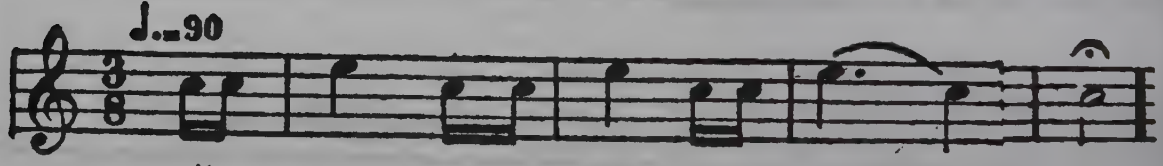
32. CEASE FIRING.



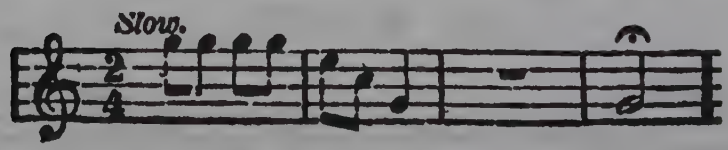
33. CHARGE.



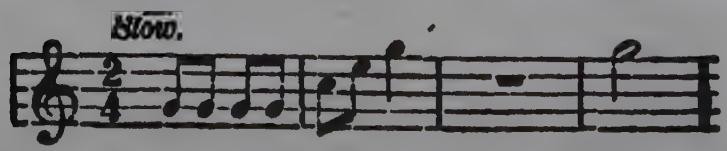
34. Column, MARCH.



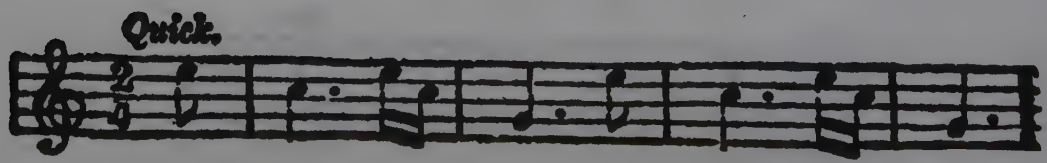
35. Column left, MARCH.



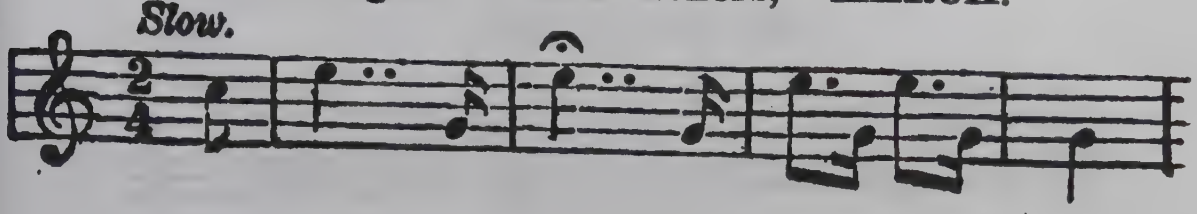
36. Column right, MARCH.



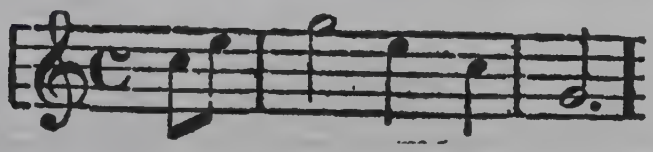
37. COMMENCE FIRING.



38. Foragers or Skirmishers, MARCH.

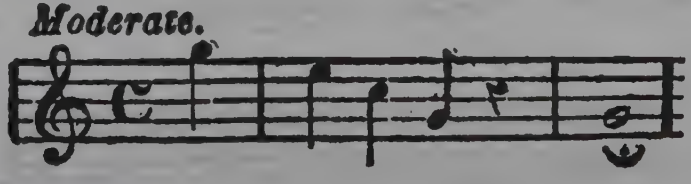


39. FORM RANK OR POSTS.

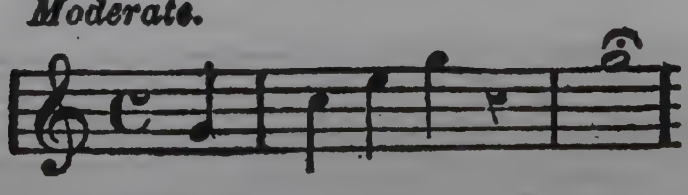


40. Forward, MARCH.

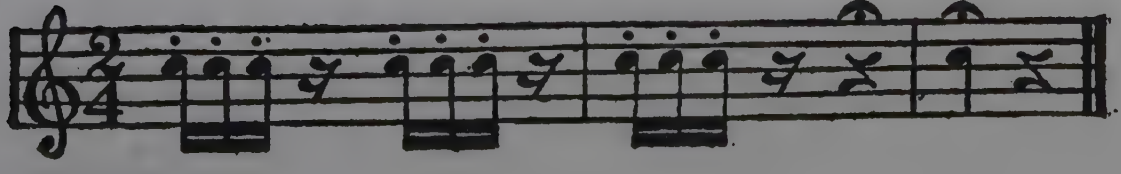
41. Fours left; also by the left flank; MARCH.



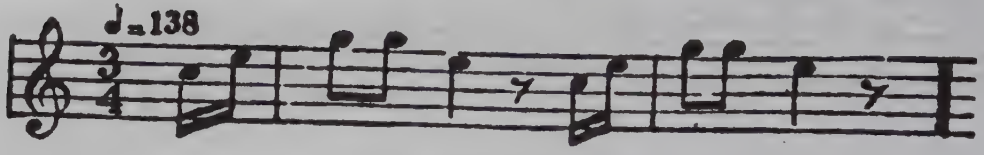
42. Fours right; also by the right flank; MARCH.



43. Gallop, MARCH.

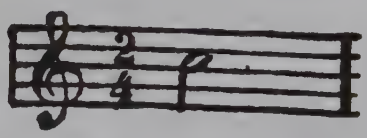


44. GANGWAY.

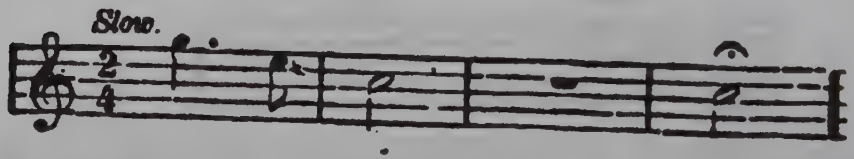


45. GUIDONS OUT.

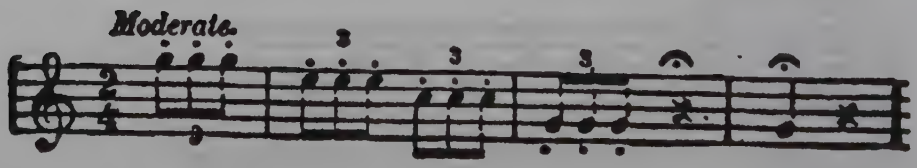
45a. HALT.



46. Left oblique, MARCH.

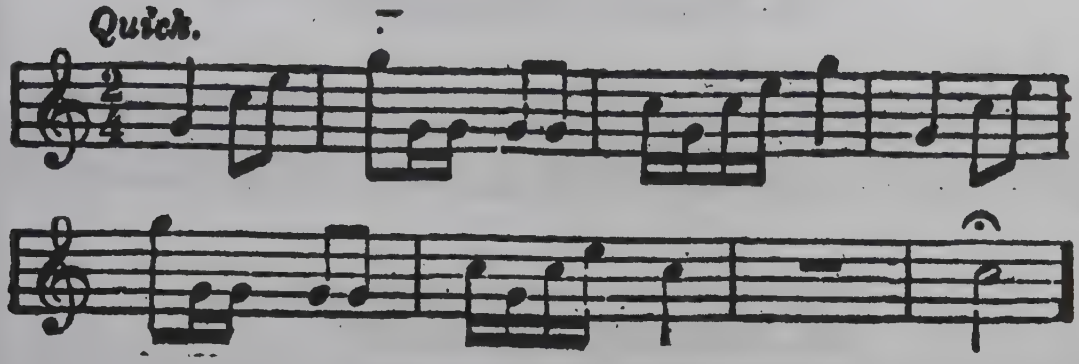


47. Left turn, MARCH.

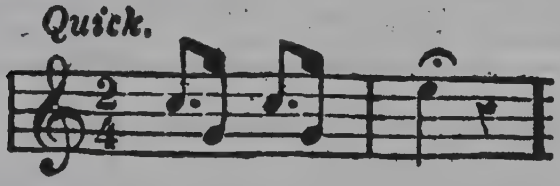


48. Line, MARCH.

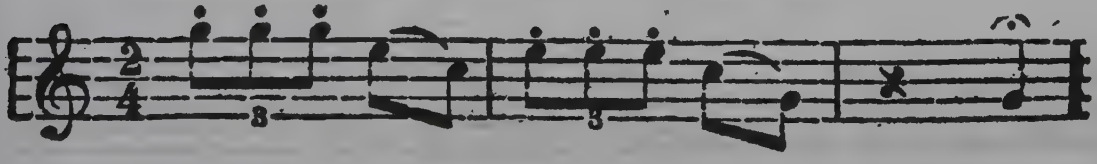
49. Line of platoons, **MARCH.**



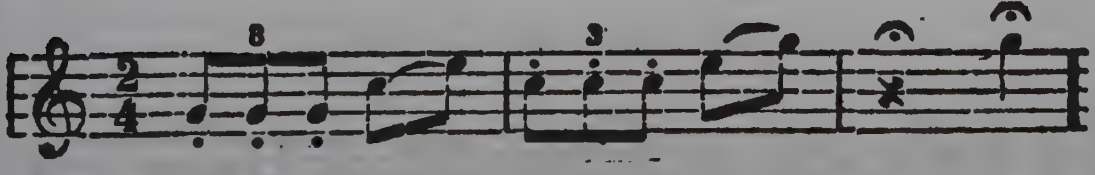
50. **PLATOONS.**



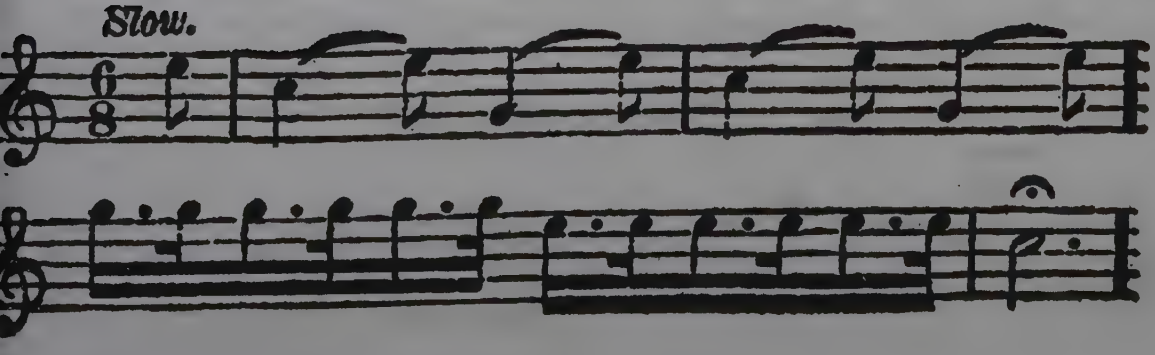
51. Prepare to dismount, **DISMOUNT.**



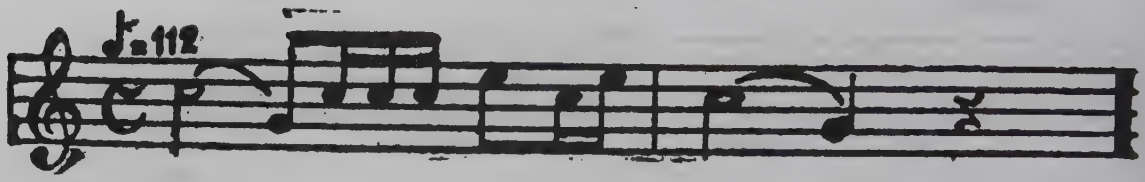
52. Prepare to mount, **MOUNT.**



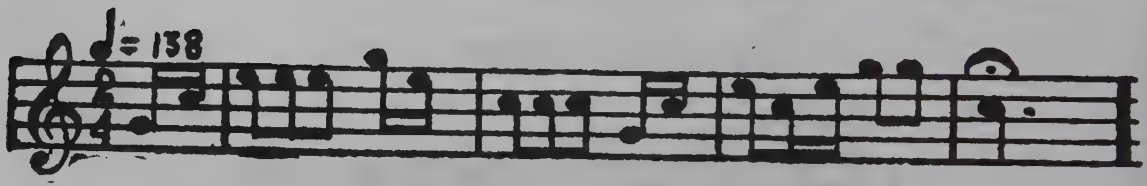
53. **RALLY.**



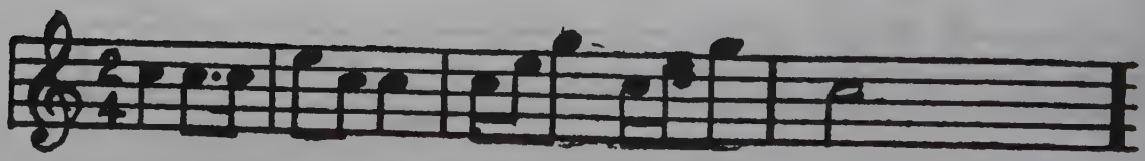
54. FIRST CAVALRY.



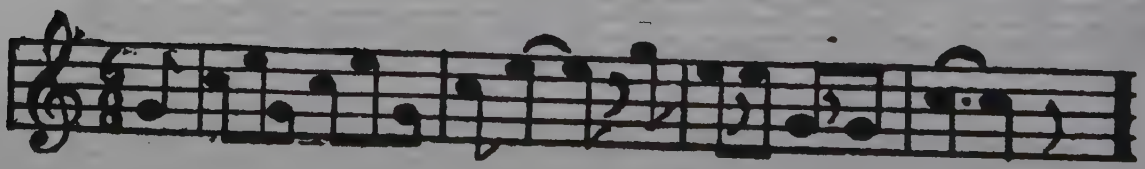
55. SECOND CAVALRY.



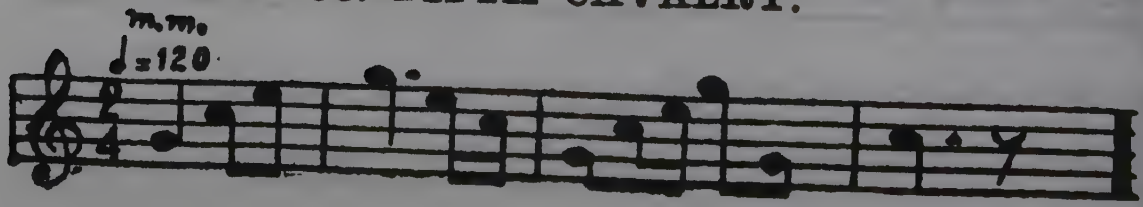
56. THIRD CAVALRY.



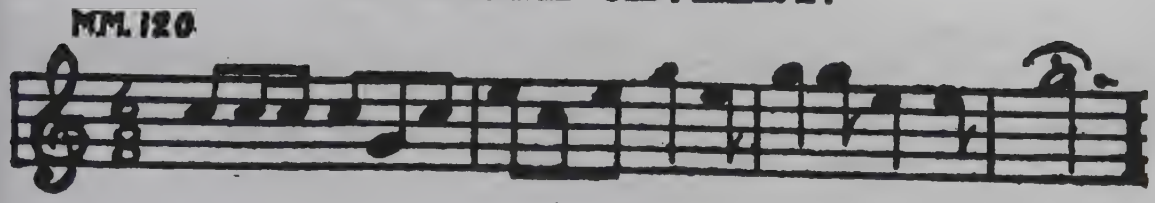
57. FOURTH CAVALRY.



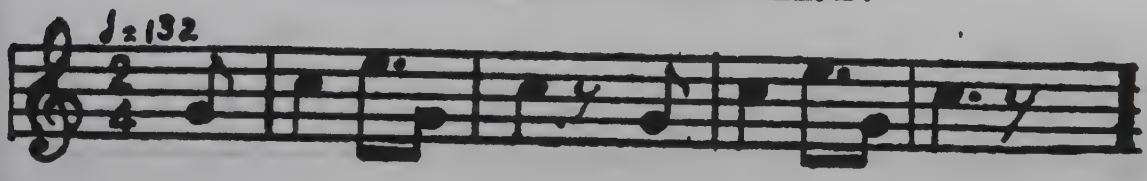
58. FIFTH CAVALRY.



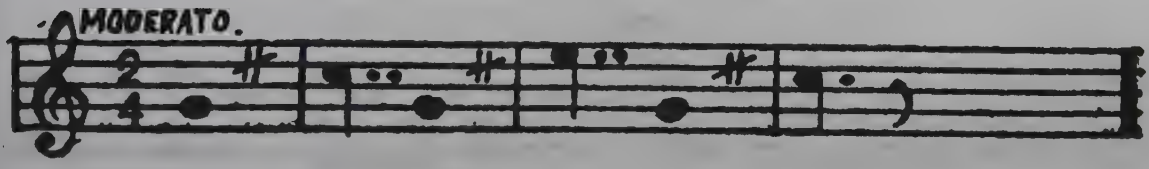
59. SIXTH CAVALRY.



60. SEVENTH CAVALRY.



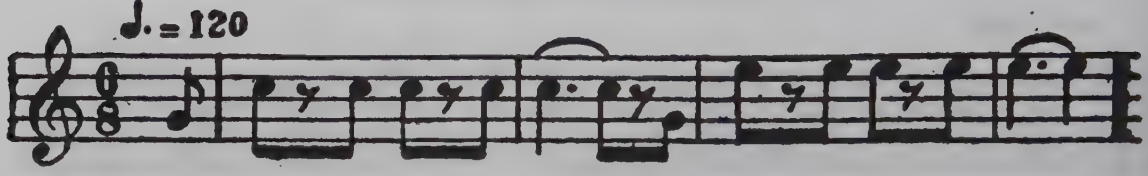
61. EIGHTH CAVALRY.



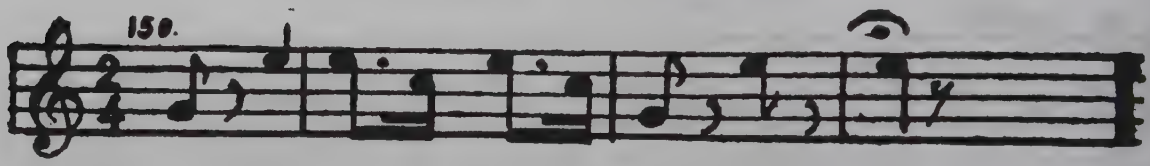
62. NINTH CAVALRY.

63. TENTH CAVALRY.

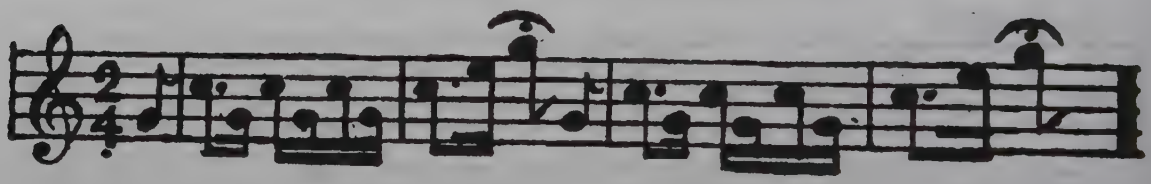
64. ELEVENTH CAVALRY.



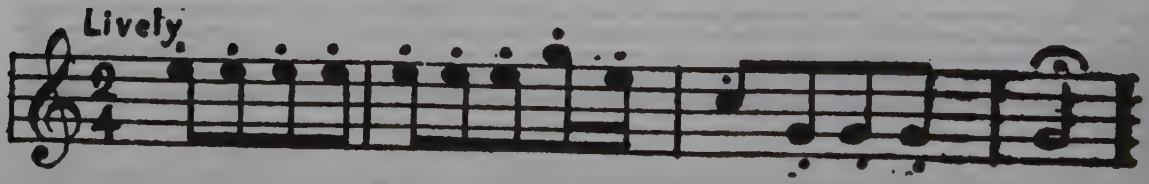
65. TWELFTH CAVALRY.



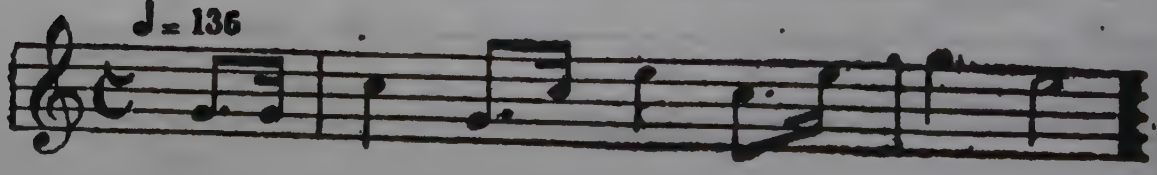
66. THIRTEENTH CAVALRY.



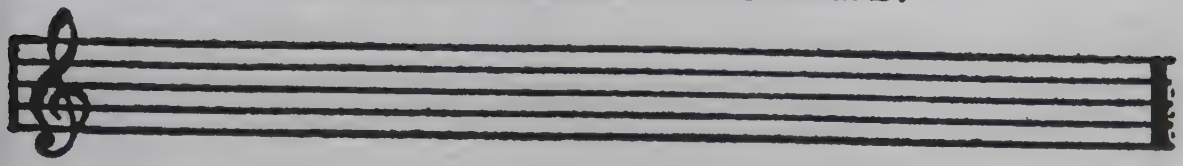
67. FOURTEENTH CAVALRY.



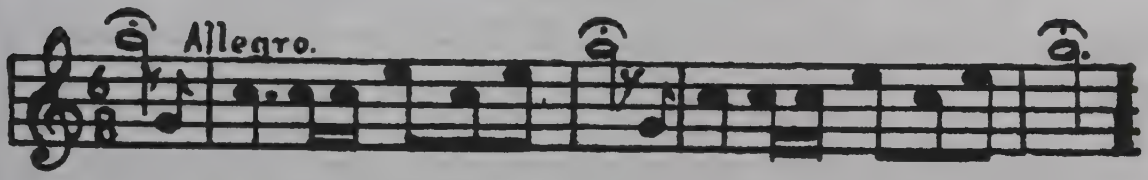
68. FIFTEENTH CAVALRY.



69. SIXTEENTH CAVALRY.

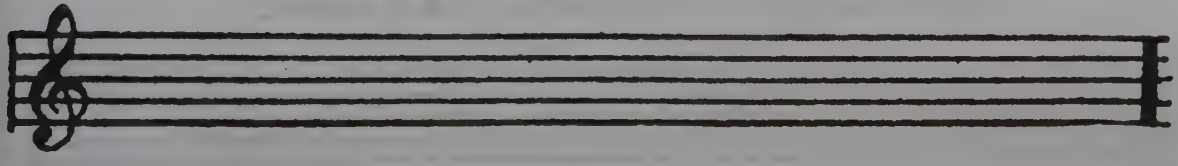


70. SEVENTEENTH CAVALRY.



71. EIGHTEENTH CAVALRY.

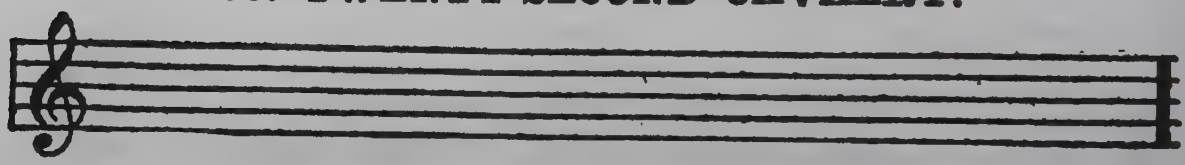
72. NINETEENTH CAVALRY.



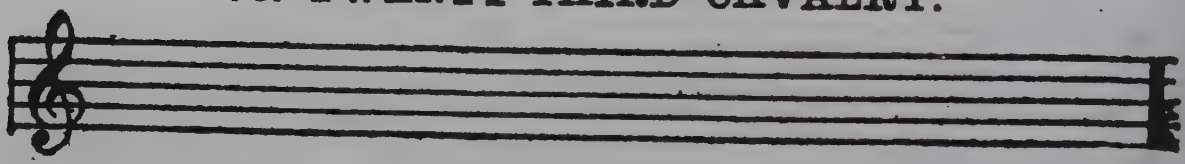
73. TWENTIETH CAVALRY.

74. TWENTY-FIRST CAVALRY.

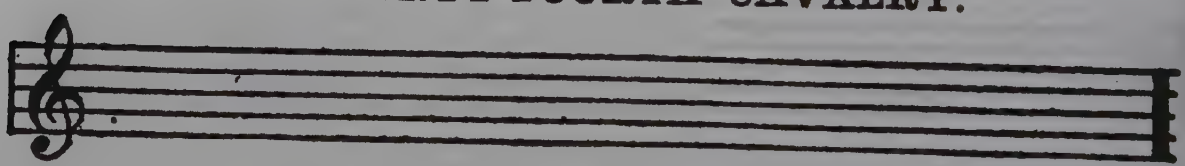
75. TWENTY-SECOND CAVALRY.



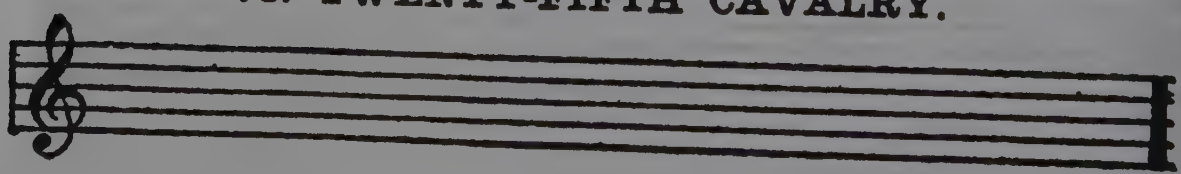
76. TWENTY-THIRD CAVALRY.



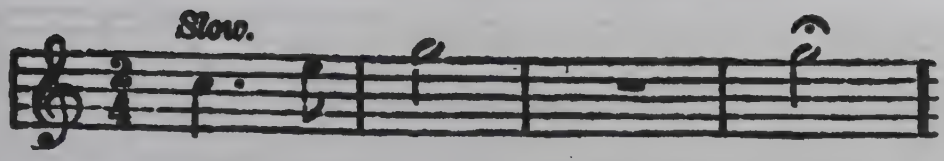
77. TWENTY-FOURTH CAVALRY.



78. TWENTY-FIFTH CAVALRY.

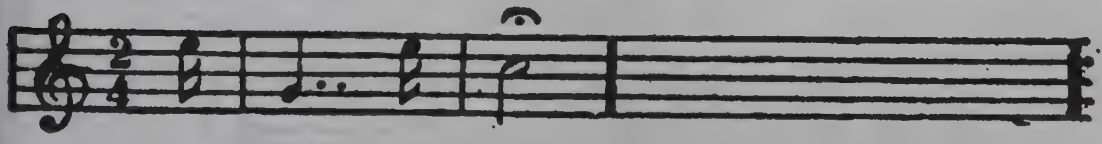


79. Right oblique, **MARCH.**

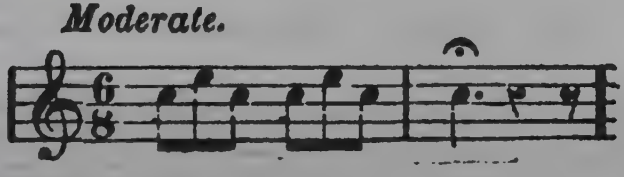


80. Right turn, **MARCH.**

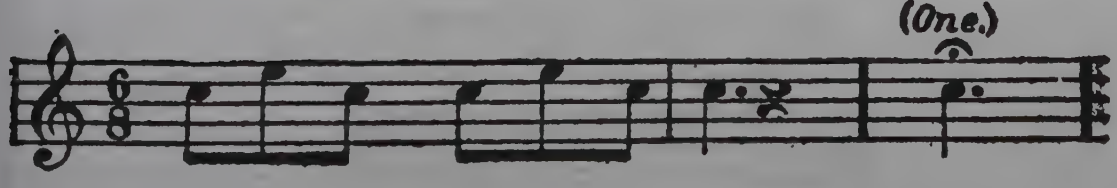
81. **ROUTE ORDER.**

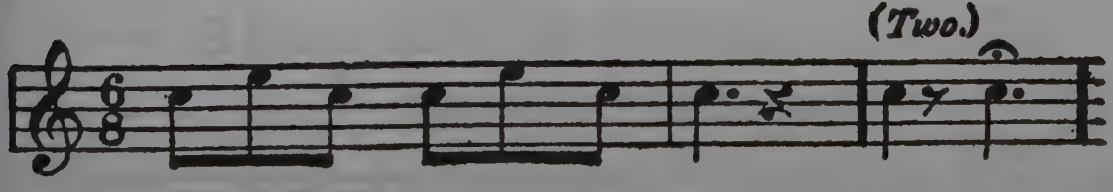


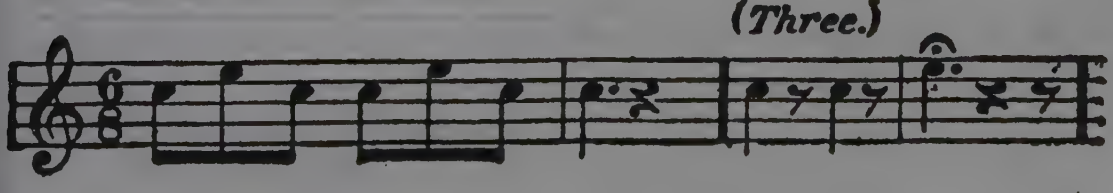
82. **SQUADRONS.**



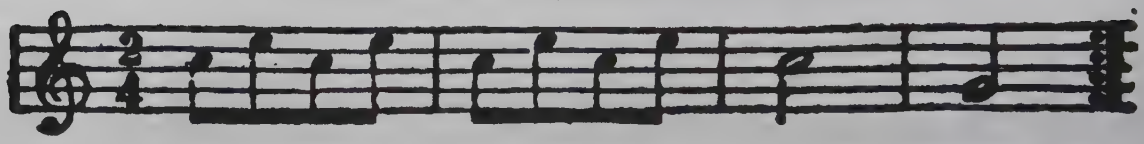
83. **SQUADRON CALLS.**



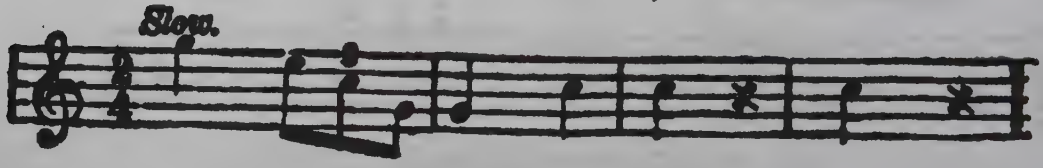




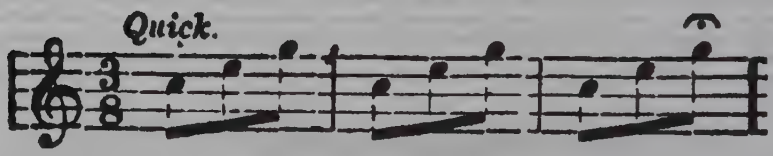
84. TO FIGHT ON FOOT.



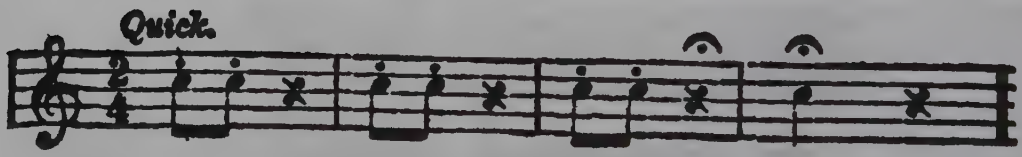
85. To the rear, **MARCH.**
or Fours left about, **MARCH.**



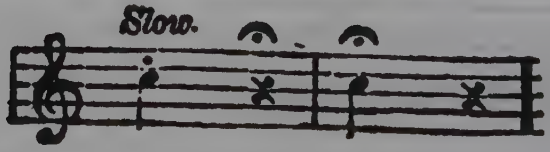
86. TROOPS.



87. Trot, **MARCH.**

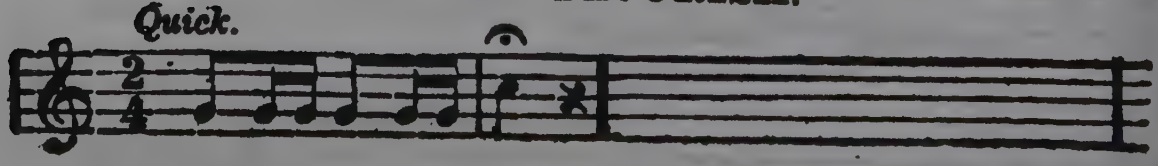


88. Walk, **MARCH.**



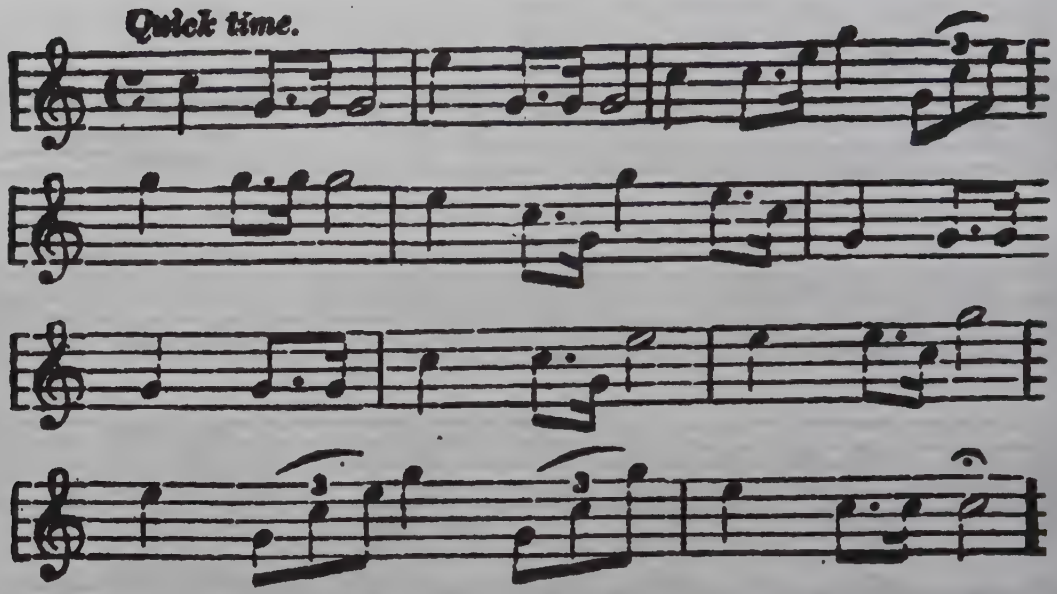
MISCELLANEOUS BUGLE CALLS.

89. THE FLOURISH.

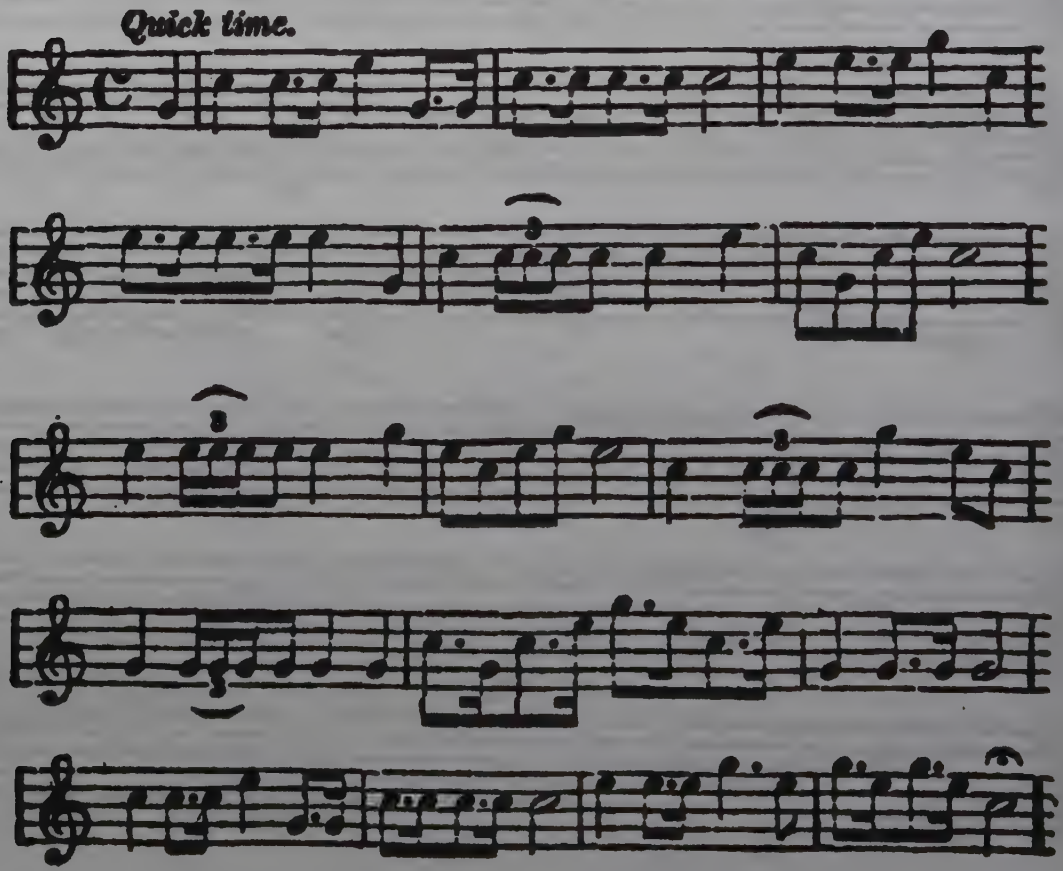


90. FUNERAL MARCH.

91. GENERAL'S MARCH.

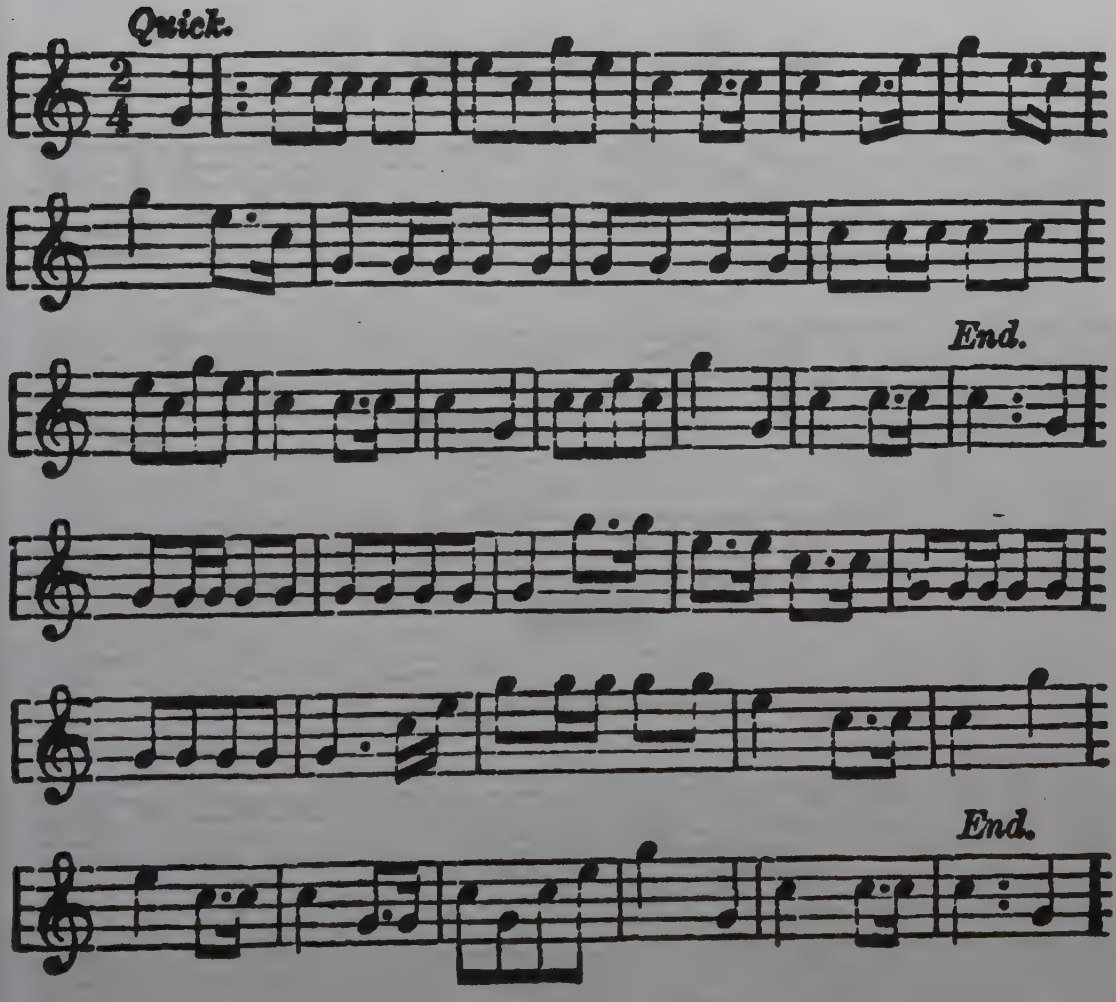


92. PRESIDENT'S MARCH.

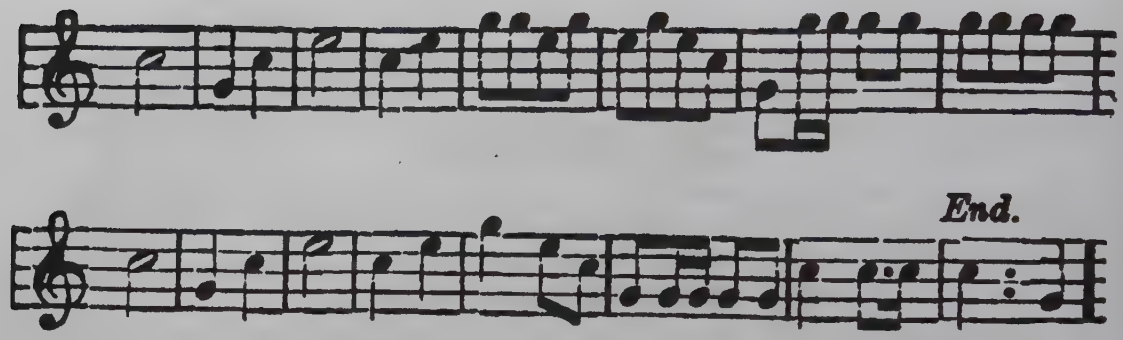


QUICKSTEPS.

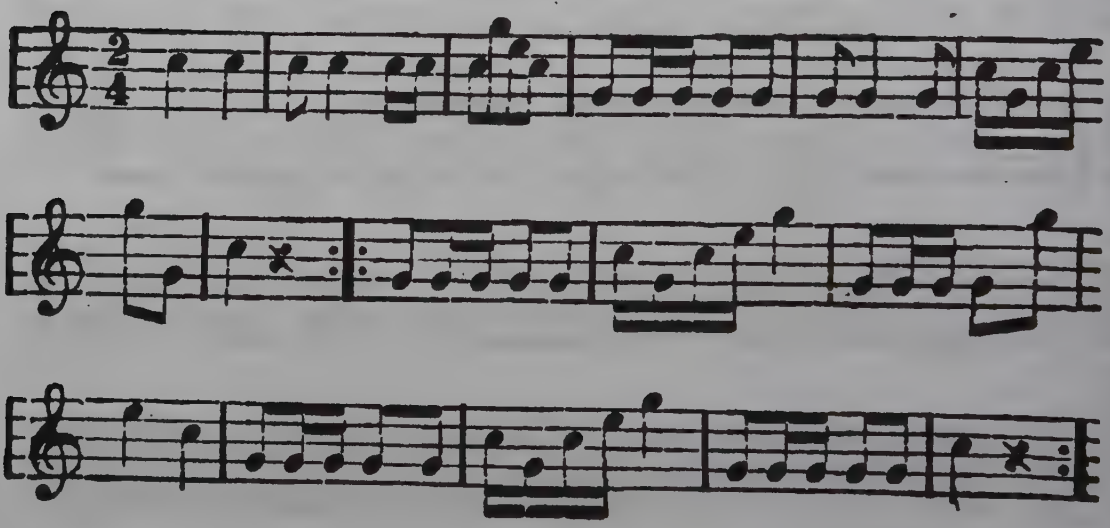
93. QUICKSTEP NO. 1.



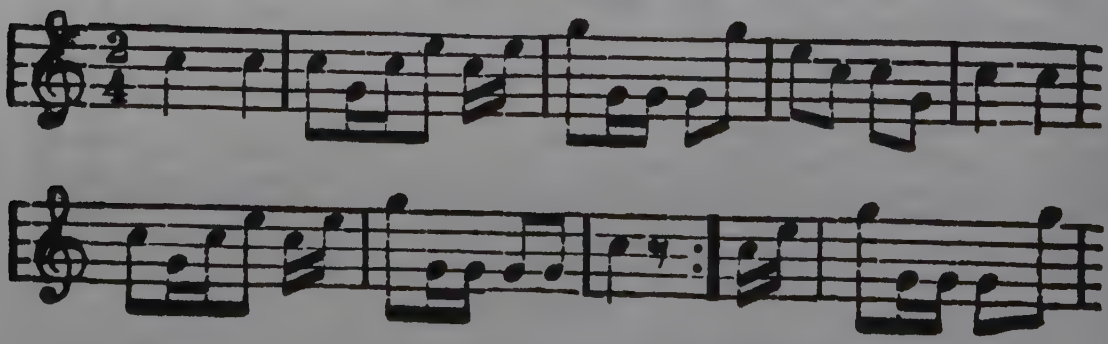
QUICKSTEP NO. 1—Continued.



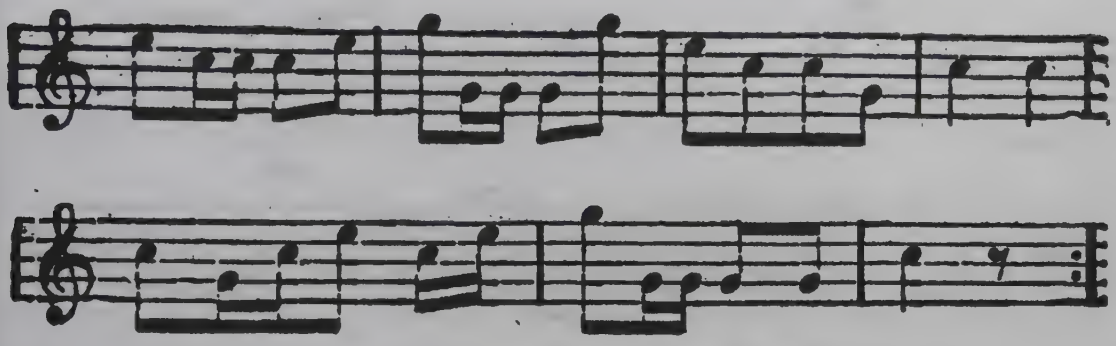
94. QUICKSTEP NO. 2.



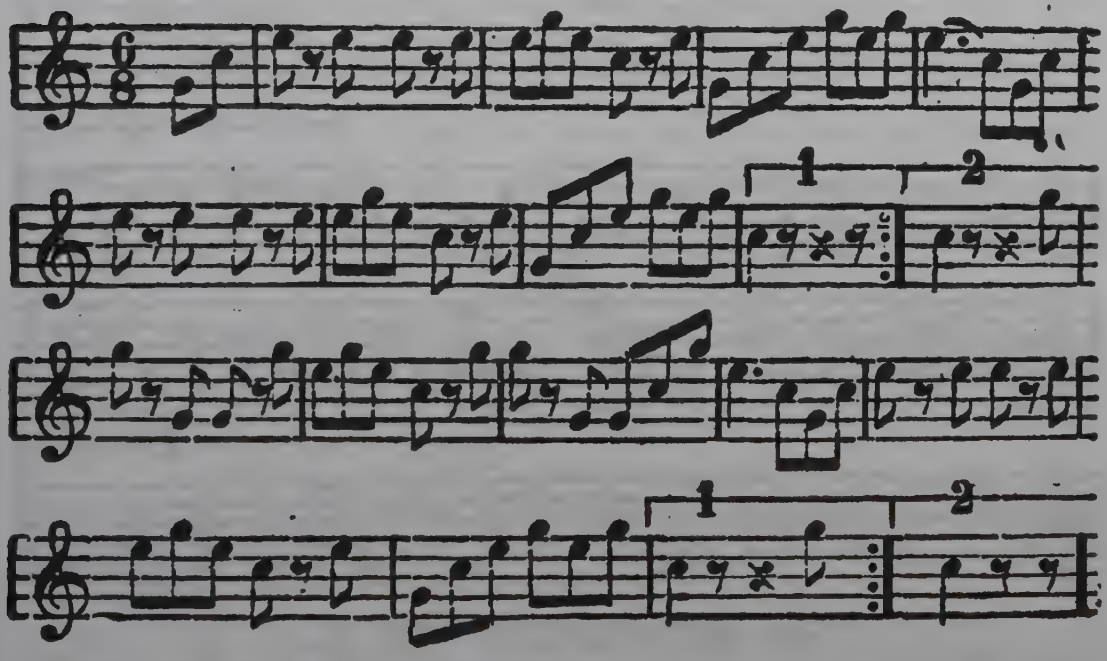
95. QUICKSTEP NO. 3.



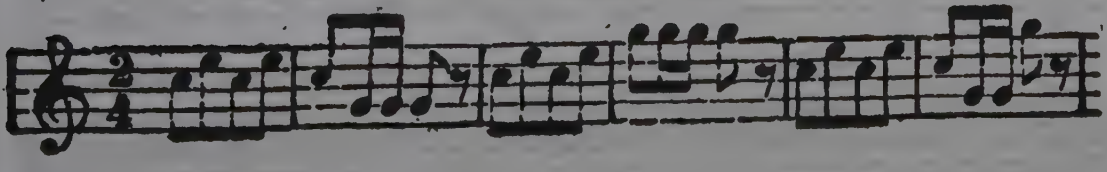
QUICKSTEP NO. 3—Continued.



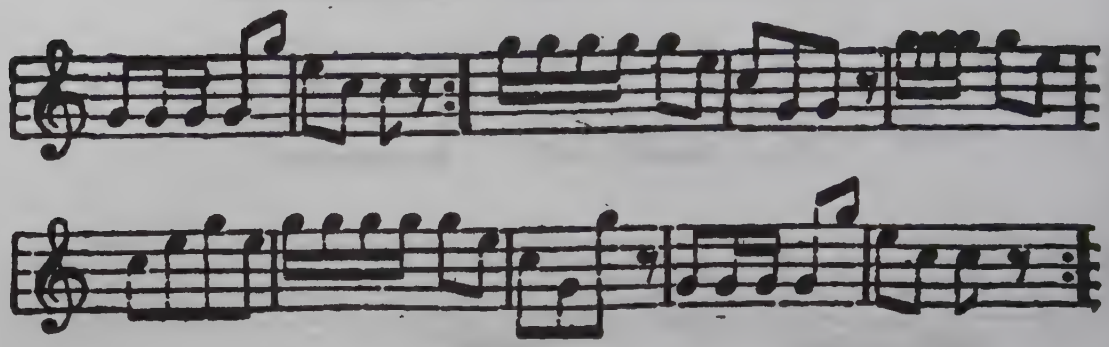
96. QUICKSTEP NO. 4.



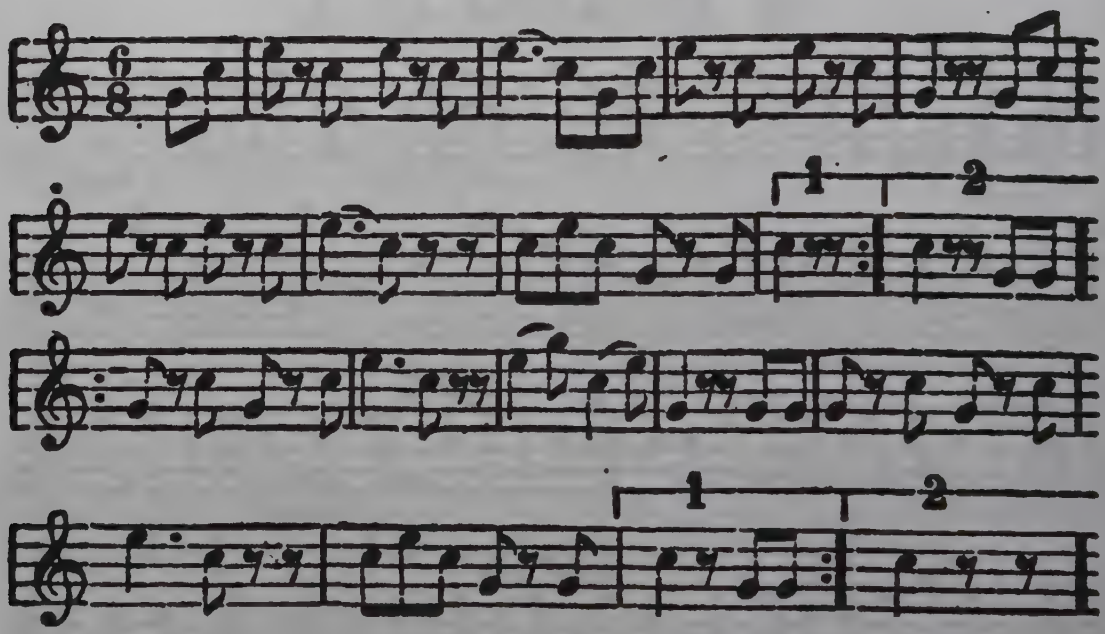
97. QUICKSTEP NO. 5.



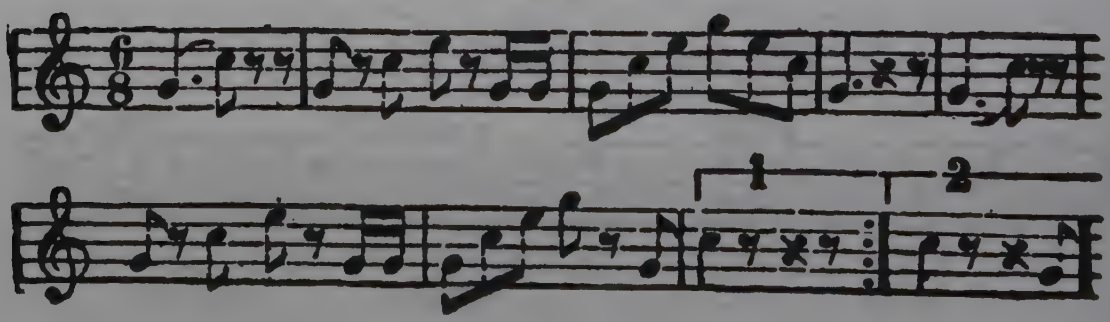
QUICKSTEP NO. 5—Continued.



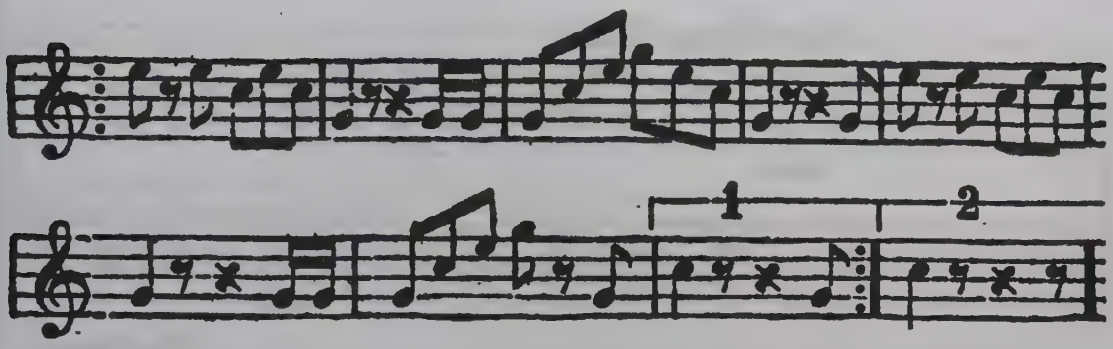
98. QUICKSTEP NO. 6.



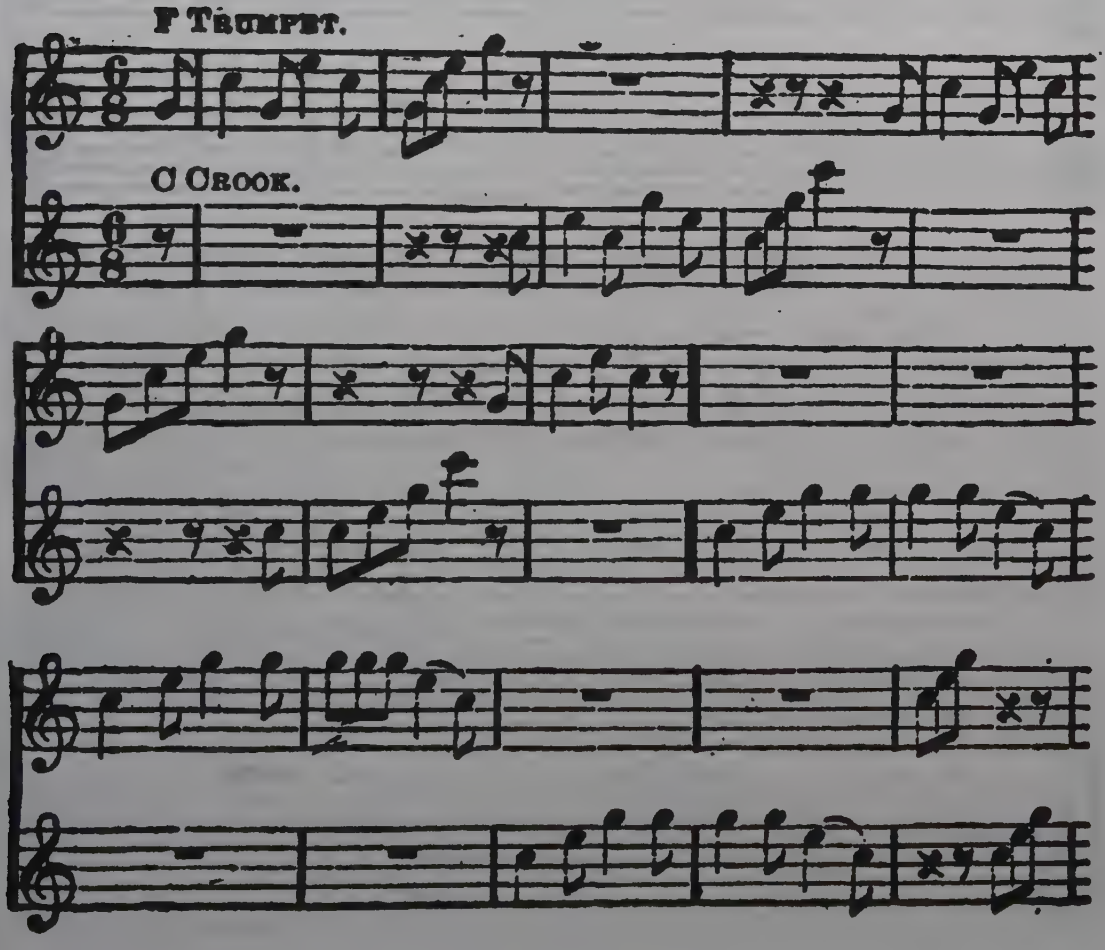
99. QUICKSTEP NO. 7.



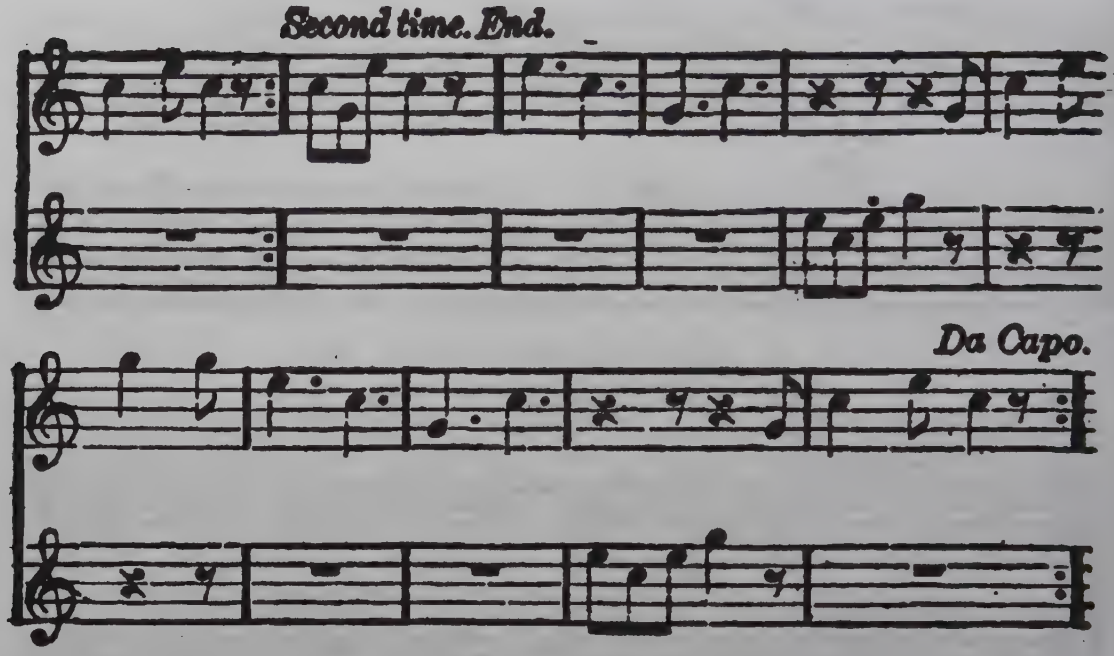
QUICKSTEP NO. 7—Continued.



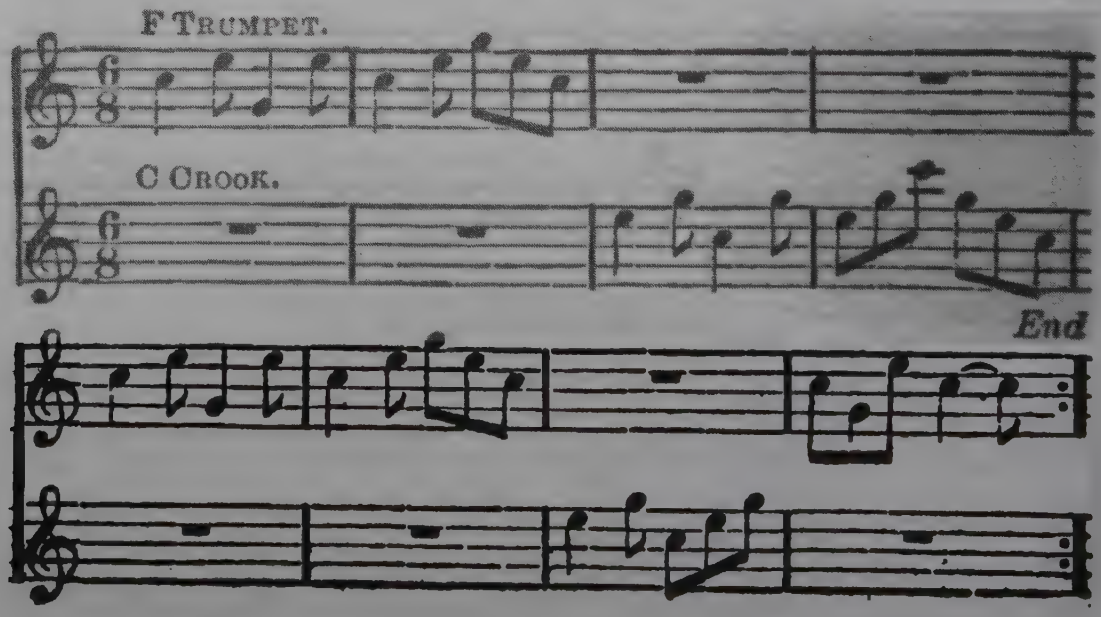
100. QUICKSTEP NO. 8.



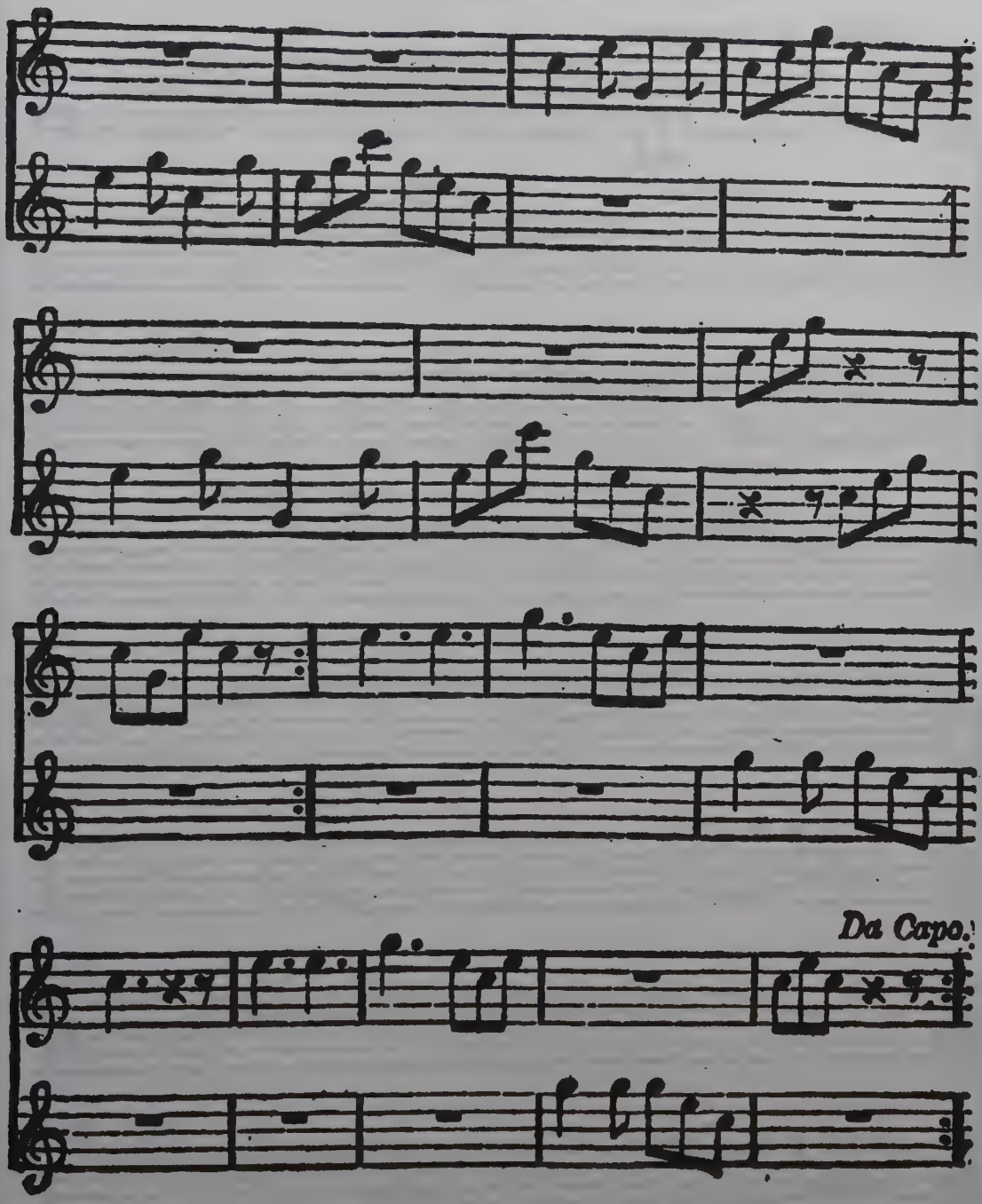
QUICKSTEP NO. 8—Continued.



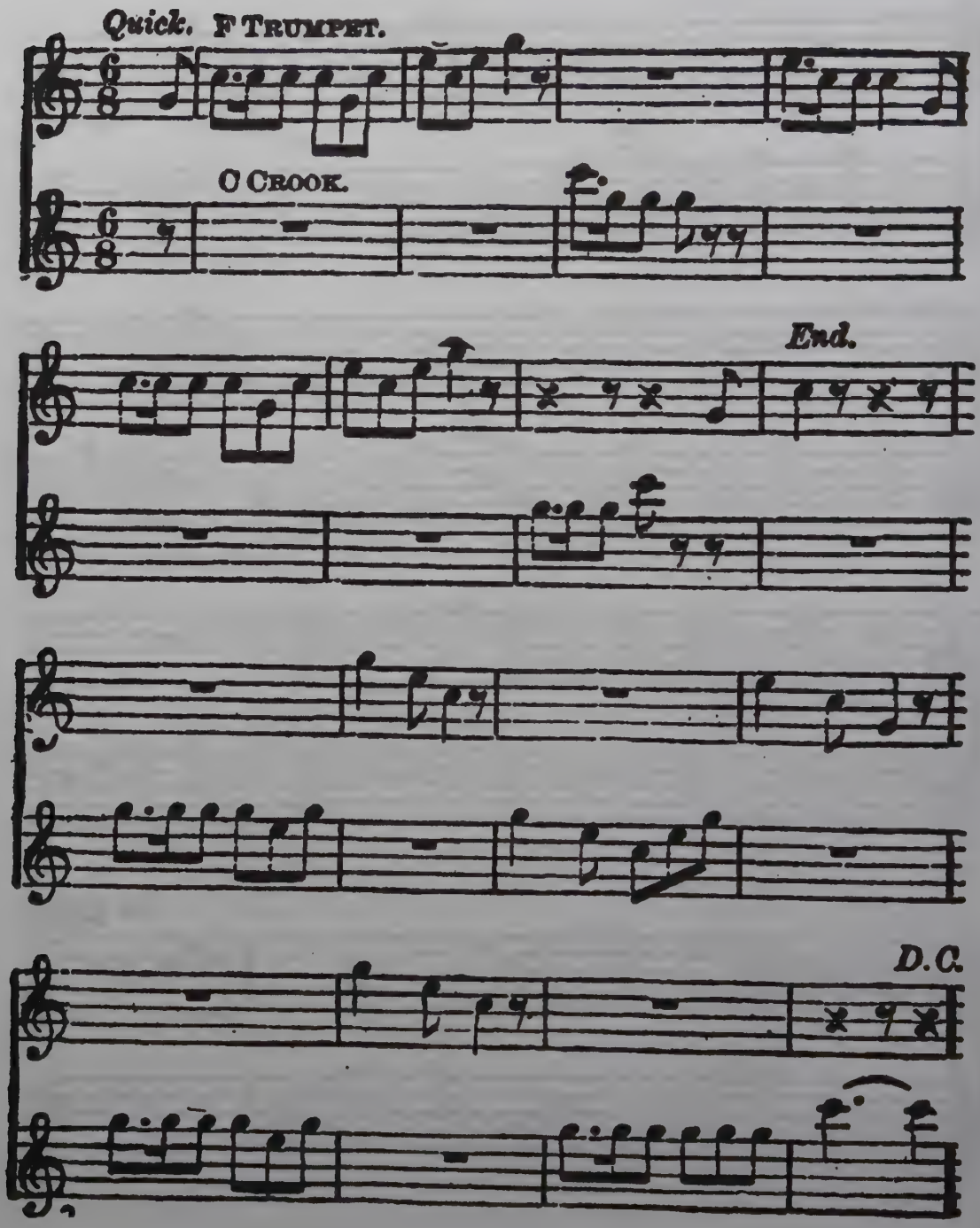
101. QUICKSTEP NO. 9.



QUICKSTEP NO. 9—Continued.



102. QUICKSTEP NO. 10.



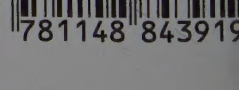
ADDITIONAL COPIES

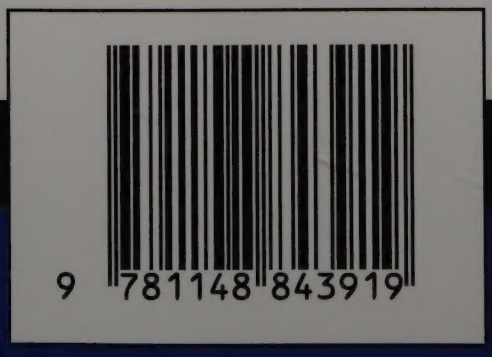
OF THIS PUBLICATION MAY BE PROCURED FROM
THE SUPERINTENDENT OF DOCUMENTS
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON, D. C.
AT

50 CENTS PER COPY

▽

CPSIA information can be obtained at www.ICGtesting.com
Printed in the USA
LVOW03s1321030615
441032LV00015B/293/P




9 781148 843919